

UC-NRLF

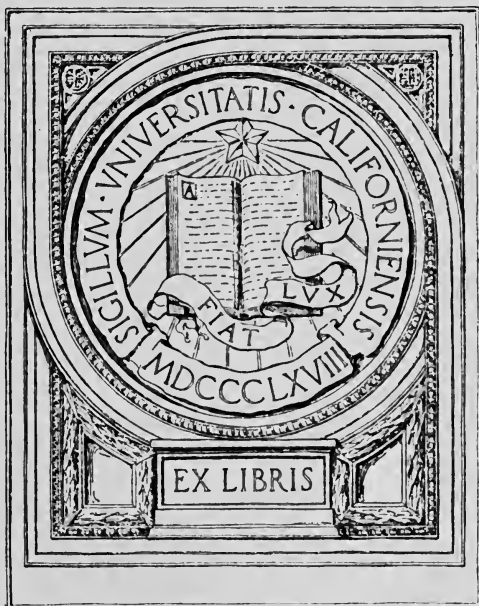


\$B 290 678

GIFT

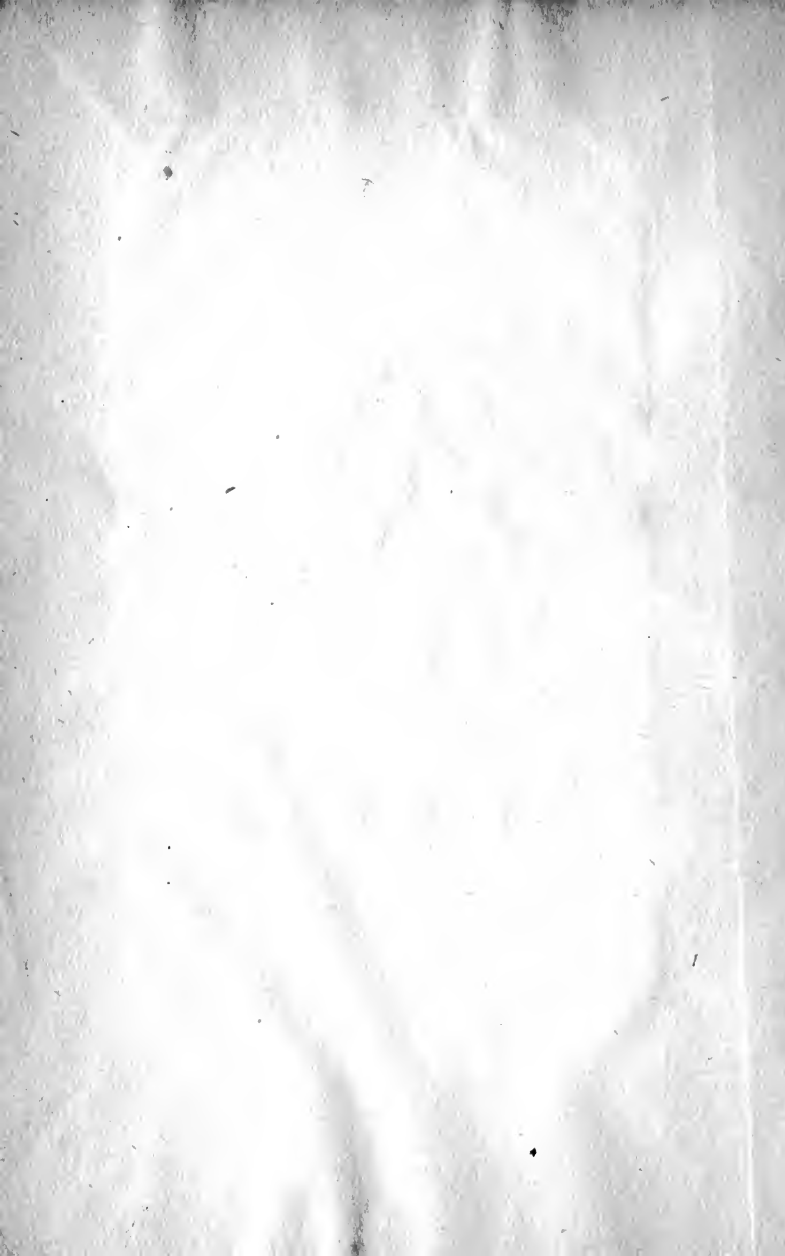
GIFT OF

*Benjamin Ide Wheeler*



760  
C771

1905





Benjamin W. Wheeler

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

MACMILLAN'S LATIN COURSE

SECOND PART



MACMILLAN'S  
LATIN COURSE  
SECOND PART

NEW AND ENLARGED EDITION

BY  
A. M. COOK, M.A.  
AND  
W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A.,  
ASSISTANT MASTERS IN ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

London  
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED  
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1905

*All rights reserved*

*First Edition printed 1890*  
*Reprinted with corrections and additions 1893, 1896, 1903, 1905*

GIFT

Prof. J. G. Thompson

TO THE  
LIBRARY OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF EDINBURGH

*Printed by R. & R. CLARK, LIMITED, Edinburgh.*

## PREFACE.

THE student of Latin has a threefold task to accomplish before he can read the Latin writers with any ease. In the first place, he must make himself familiar with the inflections. In the second place, he must acquire a considerable vocabulary. In both these respects Latin presents no serious difficulty; in both it is easier than Greek. The Greek irregular verb, with all its variety of forms for prose and poetry, taxes the strongest memory; the Latin irregular verb is easily acquired by any industrious student. With the vocabulary too there is much less labour involved; so many of the words wear a familiar aspect. But though the two first steps that have to be made by the student of Latin are not difficult, the third part of the task is by no means easy. The words taken singly are easily mastered, but it is nevertheless true that Latin is a peculiarly difficult language to read, that the relation of the words to one another is not easily detected without considerable practice. The reason of this is, no doubt, that many of the commonest Latin constructions have no counterpart in English. For example, in translating *Dixit se valere*,

we cannot use our infinitive; we cannot imitate the construction of the sentence *Oravit me ut venirem*. Where Latin uses a participle we more often prefer a separate clause. It is not necessary to multiply instances to show that in the construction of sentences—and, we might add, in the order of words—the Latin language is peculiarly unlike our own. Hence Latin sentences seem strange and difficult to us; and this strangeness only wears off when we have got thoroughly accustomed to the Latin constructions.

Our principal object in the present volume is to introduce the beginner to the commonest Latin constructions, and, by continual practice, to make him quite familiar with them. Our plan is to explain the Latin usage in as few words as possible, avoiding as far as we can technical terms, to which the young student necessarily attaches no definite meaning. We then give at least one Latin and one English exercise dealing chiefly with the point explained, and in subsequent exercises we never leave it out of sight for long. We have endeavoured to present each construction only in its simplest form, occasionally suggesting in a note that there is more to learn. Many of the books most commonly put into the hands of beginners seem to us more difficult than they need be, because they give too much information, so that even the most intelligent boys are puzzled with a mass of details, some of which do not concern the beginner at all, while the less intelligent become hopelessly confused and make no progress. It is our hope that by making each step forward a very small one we may



save the time of the intelligent boy, and make progress possible for all.

It may be well, as the Table of Contents will not make the matter clear, to give a list of the subjects to which we attach most importance, in which, therefore, the student will have most practice:—The participle (ablative absolute); *ut* and *ne*; the accusative and infinitive; the indirect question and the relative clause; commands and prohibitions; the difference between *Si* (or *cum*) *venit*, *veniet*, and *venerit*; the meaning of *cum* and of *si* with the subjunctive; the words “some” and “any”; the use of *qui* final, *quo*, *quominus*, *quin*, *dum*; reported statements, questions, and commands.

NOTE.—In the present enlarged edition “The Story of Joseph” has been removed to make room for more important material. In reply to a critic in the *Athenæum*, may I say that it was not my own attempt at imitating the Latin of Cicero, but that the story was taken, with slight alterations, from the Vulgate? A first Latin reading book of selections from the Vulgate was, I have been told, a book which Matthew Arnold was anxious to see, and I hope before long to compile such a selection. The pieces for translation in the present edition come almost entirely from easily recognisable sources, and in particular from Gellius. One has to go far afield to find anything that can be expected to interest young readers, and perhaps at this early stage it need hardly be feared that the pupil’s Latinity will be corrupted by reading portions of non-classical authors. In the exercises, on the other hand, it is hoped that nothing of importance will be found that has not the warrant of Cicero or Caesar.—A.M.C.



# CONTENTS.

| SECT. EXERCISES   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 1. [ 1 - 4.] IRREGULAR VERBS : First Conjugation . . .                        | 1    |
| 2. [ 5, 6.] IRREGULAR VERBS : Second Conjugation . . .                        | 4    |
| TRANSLATION I. Carneades . . . .  | 6    |
| II. Diogenes . . . .  | 6    |
| III. Xenocrates . . . .   | 6    |
| 3. [ 7, 8.] FORMATION OF VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGA-<br>TION . . . . .        | 7    |
| 4. [ 9, 10.] Do. do. . . .  | 9    |
| TRANSLATION IV. Philip . . . .  | 11   |
| V. Alexander . . . .  | 12   |
| VI. Alexander . . . .   | 12   |
| 5. [11, 12.] IRREGULAR VERBS : Fourth Conjugation . . .                       | 12   |
| 6. [13-20.] RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE FORMA-<br>TION OF VERBS . . . . . | 14   |
| TRANSLATION VII. Themistocles . . . .   | 19   |
| VIII. Iphicrates . . . .  | 19   |
| IX. Pyrrhus . . . .   | 20   |
| X. The Philosopher and his son  | 20   |
| XI. The Barber and his Customer   | 20   |
| 7. [21, 22.] IRREGULAR VERBS : <i>Possum, Volo, Nolo, Malo</i> .              | 21   |
| 8. [23-26.] Do. do. <i>Fero, Fio, Eo</i> . . . .                              | 23   |
| TRANSLATION XII. A few words with an Invalid                                  | 26   |
| 9. [27-30.] DEPONENT VERBS . . . . .  | 27   |



# CONTENTS

xiii

## SECT. EXERCISES

## PAGE

|                 |   |     |
|-----------------|---|-----|
| 67. [209, 210.] | Double Questions (Direct)   | 254 |
| 68. [211, 212.] | Do. do. (Indirect)  | 257 |
| 69. [213, 214.] | <i>Iamdiu</i> with the Present Tense  | 259 |
| 70. [215, 216.] | Some Verbs followed by <i>Ut</i>  | 261 |
| 71. [217, 218.] | Conditional Sentences referring vaguely to<br>Future Time                             | 264 |
| 72. [219, 220.] | Conditional Sentences: <i>Si adsit, laudemus</i><br>and <i>Si adesset, laudaremus</i> | 267 |
| 73. [221-229.]  | Summary of the Rules for Conditional Sen-<br>tences                                   | 269 |
|                 | RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES  | 270 |
|                 | TRANSLATION XXXIX. Killed by Joy.   |     |
|                 | A. Diagoras. B. After<br>Trasymene  | 279 |
|                 | XL. His Mother's Lament<br>over Euryalus  | 280 |
|                 | XLI. After Cannae   | 280 |
| 74. [230, 231.] | <i>Qui</i> introducing a Final Clause   | 281 |
| 75. [232, 233.] | <i>Quo</i> , Final  | 283 |
| 76. [234, 235.] | <i>Quidam</i>   | 286 |
|                 | TRANSLATION XLII. Strange Discovery of a<br>Murderer and Thief                        | 288 |
|                 | XLIII. Dionysius the Tyrant   | 289 |
|                 | XLIV. Damocles  | 290 |
| 77. [236, 237.] | <i>Quominus</i>   | 290 |
| 78. [238, 239.] | <i>Quin</i>   | 293 |
| 79. [240, 241.] | <i>Vereor ne</i> and <i>Vereor ut</i>   | 296 |
| 80. [242, 243.] | <i>Dum</i>  | 299 |
| 81. [244-255.]  | RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES  | 301 |
|                 | TRANSLATION XLV. A Trick  | 313 |
|                 | XLVI. The Boxing Match  | 314 |
| 82. [256-262.]  | <i>Oratio obliqua</i> . 1. Statements   | 316 |
| 83. [263, 264.] | 2. Questions and Commands   | 327 |
|                 | TRANSLATION XLVII. A True Dream   | 331 |
|                 | XLVIII. An Embassy to Caesar  | 332 |

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| The Conjugation of some Irregular Verbs—      |      |
| <i>Possum</i> . . . . .                       | 335  |
| <i>Capio</i> . . . . .                        | 336  |
| <i>Fero</i> . . . . .                         | 338  |
| <i>Volo</i> . . . . .                         | 340  |
| <i>Nolo</i> . . . . .                         | 341  |
| <i>Malo</i> . . . . .                         | 342  |
| <i>Fio</i> . . . . .                          | 343  |
| <i>Eo</i> . . . . .                           | 344  |
| Notes on the Pieces for Translation . . . . . | 346  |
| Latin-English Dictionary . . . . .            | 355  |
| English-Latin Dictionary . . . . .            | 401  |

# LATIN COURSE

## SECOND PART

### SECTION 1.

#### IRREGULAR VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION.

Of the irregular verbs of this conjugation the commonest are *sto*, “I stand,” perfect, *stēti*, supine, *statum*; and *do*, “I give,” perfect, *dēdi*, supine, *datum*.

Both verbs have many compounds. Among the compounds of *sto* are *praesto*, “I stand before,” i.e. “I am superior to,” and *circumstare*, “to surround.” Among the compounds of *do* the following belong to the third conjugation :—

1. *dēdo*, I give up, surrender; perf. *dedīdi*; perf. part. pass. *dedītus*.  
*reddo*, I give back, return; perf. *reddīdi*; perf. part. pass. *reddītus*.
2. *condo*, I put together; perf. *condīdi*; perf. part. pass. *condītus*.  
*perdo*, I make away with, I destroy; perf. *perdīdi*; perf. part. pass. *perdītus*.

## (1.)

1. Nautae navem solverunt ; amici in litore steterunt.
2. Mercator regi ingentem pecuniam dederat.
3. Pecunia servo, corona domino a rege data est.
4. Qui circumstabant milites nuntium audiverunt.
5. Praestat laudari a magistro quam puniri.
6. Ille vir ceteris in omnibus rebus praestitit.
7. Romani classem Carthaginiensibus dediderunt.
8. Redde mihi libros quos tibi heri dedi.
9. Romulus, primus illius gentis rex, urbem Romam condidit.
10. Hi pessimi homines civitatem perdiderunt.
11. Multos homines hae epistulae Ciceronis delectaverunt.
12. Milites trium legionum pro castris instructi sunt.

## (2.)

1. The sailors stood on the shore.
2. The king had given rewards to the soldiers.
3. The boy amuses the master.
4. To which of the (two) brothers have you given the book ?
5. It is better to praise than to blame.
6. The enemy gave themselves up to Caesar.
7. Where is your book ?—I gave it to my friend yesterday ; he has not returned it.
8. The Carthaginians surrendered their fleet and sailors to the Romans.
9. Those bad men have ruined the state.
10. The boy has composed a long poem.



## (3.)

1. Caesar militibus, qui fortissime pugnauerant, prae-  
mia dedit.
2. Amicus meus huic soli negotio die ac nocte  
deditus esse videtur.
3. Hic et pecuniam et tempus et vitam perdidit.
4. Hic homo omnium pessimus et perditissimus vino  
deditus est.
5. Nostri maiores virtute ceteris gentibus longe prae-  
stiterunt.
6. Hae aves totam noctem in uno pede steterunt.
7. Hic puer poema Latinum ducentorum versuum  
condiderat.
8. Pater meus totam orationem Latine reddiderat.
9. Fratres mihi quam debent pecuniam non reddi-  
derant.
10. Circumstabant milites cum telis; ducem fortissi-  
mum interficiunt.
11. Difficile est haec omnia Latine reddere.
12. Tu, omnium hominum perditissime, tu me, virum  
fortem, culpabis?

## (4.)

1. I give you this to-day : give it back to-morrow.
2. The poem is being turned into Latin by the boy.
3. Your brother is devoted to this business.
4. This man has wasted his time.
5. To whom did you give the book?—I gave it to  
my brother.
6. Caesar was superior to all leaders in diligence.

7. Will you not give me back my horse ?
8. The Gauls surrendered themselves and all their belongings to the Romans.
9. This abandoned man has given himself up to wine.
10. You will waste your time ; give me the book ; you will never understand it.

## SECTION 2.

### IRREGULAR VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION.

It will be remembered that the regular verbs of this conjugation form the perfect and perfect participle passive thus :—

moneo

monui

monitus

Among the irregular verbs are :—

doceo

docui

doctus

iubeo

iussi

iussus

maneo

mansi

(supine, mansum)

mōveo

mōvi

motus

vīdeo

vīdi

visus

(5.)

1. Magister puerum, novem annos natum, Graecas litteras docuit.
2. Illi pueri, quod optime a magistro docti erant, ceteris longe praestiterunt.
3. Nonne milites nuntium circumstare vidisti ?

4. Milites se hostibus dedere visi sunt: nuntius  
Caesarem de hac re certiores fecit.
5. Ego et tu semper in eadem sententia mansimus.
6. Oratio regis animos civium moverat; omnes tacuerunt.
7. Ille vir omnium Romanorum doctissimus esse habitus est.
8. Milites, quod nullam spem salutis viderunt, se hostibus dediderunt.
9. Pueri a magistro hos versus Latine reddere iussi sunt.
10. Hostes septimae milites legionis loco movere non potuerunt.
11. Frustra, magister, illos pueros docuisti; tempus perdidisti!
12. Nonne milites ducem circumstare et clamores tollere vidisti?

(6.)

1. The master told the boy to turn the verses into Latin.
2. A large sum of money was owed me by that person.
3. The soldiers of the ninth legion were ordered by Caesar to move their camp.
4. The tenth legion did not hold its ground, but surrendered to the enemy.
5. That learned man far surpassed all the rest.
6. Those boys have been often warned both by their father and their master.
7. The hearts of the citizens were moved by the king's speech.

8. Your father has not, has he, always maintained that opinion?
  9. The soldiers did not stir from the spot, because they had been ordered to remain.
  10. That boy has given the books to his sister; did you not tell him to give them to his mother?
  11. Caesar ordered the soldiers to build a large number of ships of war.
  12. Romulus, who founded the city of Rome, was the first king of the Romans.
- 

### I.

Carneādes usque ad extremam senectam nunquam cessavit a philosophiae studio. Saepe ei accidit, ut, cum cibi capiendi causa accubisset, cogitationibus inhaerens, manum ad cibos appositos porrigere oblivisceretur.

### II.

Diogēnes, philosophus, Myndum profectus, cum videret magnificas portas et urbem exiguam, Myndios monuit ut portas clauderent, ne urbs egrederetur.

### III.

Xenocrātes, philosophus, cum maledicorum quorundam sermoni interesset, nèque quidquam ipse loqueretur, interrogatus cur solus taceret, respondit: Quia dixisse me aliquando paenituit, tacuisse nunquam.

## SECTION 3.

## FORMATION OF VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

These verbs form their parts in many ways. Here, for instance, are specimens :—

| <i>Present Indicative.</i> | <i>Perfect.</i>    | <i>Past Part. Passive.</i> |
|----------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| dico                       | dixi               | dictus                     |
| facio                      | fecit              | factus                     |
| fallo                      | fefelli            | falsus                     |
| gero                       | gessi              | gestus                     |
| mitto                      | misi               | missus                     |
| nosco                      | novi               | notus                      |
| peto                       | petii (and petivi) | petitus                    |
| pono                       | posui              | positus                    |
| scribo                     | scripsi            | scriptus                   |
| solvo                      | solvi              | solutus                    |
| verto                      | verti              | versus                     |

(7.)

1. Caesar omnes res quae in Hispania gestae sunt cognovit.
2. Romani victi sunt, neque me mea opinio fefellit.
3. Haedui equitatum omnem auxilio Caesari miserant.
4. Quis tecum heri in horto fuit? non novi hominem.
5. Mores Germanorum omnibus hominibus noti sunt.
6. Fratrem tuum bene novi, te vero nunquam antea vidi.
7. Urbs Roma, ut supra scripsimus, a Romulo condita est.

8. Hostes se verterunt et fuga salutem petierunt.
9. Non fefellit Caesarem hostes fuga salutem petiisse.
10. Ii se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt.
11. Belgae, ut supra scriptum est, virtute omnibus Gallis praestiterunt.
12. Ii qui proximi steterant Caesarem de his rebus docuerunt.
13. His rebus gestis ipse cum quinque legionibus ad solis occasum naves solvit.
14. Duces Romani, ut ante dictum est, post mediam noctem naves solverunt.
15. Caesar Crassum cum una legione ad Venētos, populum Galliae maritimum, misit.
16. Melodūnum, ut ante diximus, est oppidum in insula fluminis Sequānae positum.

(8.)

1. Caesar carried on war with all the tribes of Gaul.
2. The soldiers of the fifth legion have been sent to the Parisii.
3. Caesar fixed his camp three miles (accus.) from their camp.
4. The Romans knew all the harbours of those parts.
5. The barbarians, as has been said above, asked for alliance from Caesar.
6. The Romans carried on war in the territory of the Germans.
7. The soldiers who stood nearest (adj.) informed Caesar.
8. The barbarians set sail a little after midnight.

9. The soldiers of that legion turned and sought safety in flight.
10. Who wrote the eighth book of the Gallic War?
11. The Roman leader restored all their hostages to the Haedui.
12. Money is now being paid; peace has at last been given to the world.

#### SECTION 4.

##### FORMATION OF VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION (*Continued*).

*Obs.*—Here all the verbs of this conjugation previously in use are introduced.

(9.)

1. Omnes naves quae mane solverant vespere terram ceperunt.
2. Militum alii gravia vulnera acceperunt, alii interfecti sunt.
3. Cur tu Caesarem de his rebus certiozem fecisti?
4. Nostri, vulneribus confecti, fuga salutem petere non possunt.
5. Labienus castra ad eam partem oppidi posuerat.
6. Pecunia semper ab hoc iudice iustitiae anteposita est.
7. Duae legiones in naves onerarias impositae erant.
8. Legi tuas epistulas, neque tamen omnia plane intellexi.
9. Capuae primum hostes se collegerunt.

10. Fortissimi milites e legionibus electi sunt.
11. Barbari undique in murum magnos lapides iecerunt.
12. Decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit.
13. Caesar quattuor secum legiones in hostium fines duxit.
14. Eae nationes quae trans Rhenum incoluerunt legatos miserunt.
15. Dux hostium cum equitatu agmen Caesaris carpsit.
16. Hi homines, quod vino somnoque dediti sunt, nihil conficere possunt.
17. Obsides omnes hostibus a Caesare redditi sunt.
18. Quis Carthaginem condidit? Nonne hunc librum legisti?
19. Hi senes memoriam perdiderunt.
20. Multae nationes populo Romano vectigalia pependerunt.
21. Ceterae civitates superiore bello cum Sertorio steterant.
22. Caesar se post mediam noctem cum Antonio coniunxit.
23. Barbari nostrorum paucitatem contempserunt.
24. Hi homines lacte atque pecore diu vixerunt.
25. Gravis pestilentia in urbem inciderat.
26. Vergilius cecinit pascua rura duces.
27. Homines mortui illis temporibus in urbe usti sunt.
28. Nequidquam lacrimas fuderunt, nequidquam a Caesare auxilium petierunt.
29. Nonne dixi Caesarem se cum Antonio coniunxisse? num me fefellit opinio mea?
30. Num omnes Ciceronis orationes legisti.—Legi neque tamen plane intellexi.



## (10.)

1. You have not, have you, read all Cicero's letters ?
  2. I did not understand what you wrote about these matters.
  3. Where did the enemy first rally ?
  4. Two hundred soldiers were chosen from the tenth legion.
  5. Did not the enemy's general receive a serious wound ?
  6. He had often informed Caius of these affairs.
  7. Did you not return thanks to that man ?
  8. His father sent Balbus and his brother to Rome.
  9. How often I have read that book !
  10. Caesar had already united himself with Labienus.
  11. He had sent his slave to the city ; he himself remained at home.
  12. He restored the enemy all their hostages which they had given.
  13. I have read three books of Virgil to-day.
  14. He had read all the letters, but many he had not understood.
  15. Only one state had stood on Caesar's side in the previous war.
- 

## IV.

Mulier quaedam, a Philippo, cum a convivio temulentus recederet, damnata, "A Philippo," inquit, "temulento ad Philippum sobrium provoco."

## V.

Alexander, Macedo, Philippi filius, cum puer a praeceptore suo audivisset innumerabiles mundos esse, "Heu! me miserum!" inquit, "qui non uno quidem adhuc potitus sum."

## VI.

Cum Alexander Graecis populis imperasset ut divinos ipsi honores decernerent, Lacedaemonii his verbis utebantur: "Quoniam Alexander deus esse voluit, esto deus," Laconica brevitate regis notantes vecordiam.

## SECTION 5.

## IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The regular formation is:—

|       |        |         |
|-------|--------|---------|
| audio | audivi | auditus |
|-------|--------|---------|

The following are therefore irregular:—

|         |         |               |
|---------|---------|---------------|
| aperio  | aperui  | apertus       |
| vincio  | vinxi   | vinctus       |
| sentio  | sensi   | (sup. sensum) |
| reperio | repperi | repertus      |
| vēnio   | vēni    | (sup. ventum) |

*Obs.* 1. To this conjugation may also be attached *eo*, which makes *ivi*, *itum*, though other parts of the verb are also irregular. These will be introduced later (p. 23).

2. Notice the difference between *vinco*, I conquer ; perf. *vici*, part. *victus*, and *vincio* above, I bind.
3. Notice that *vēnit* means "he comes" ; *vēnit*, "he has come," "he came." If the quantity is not marked, it is only the sense that will show which tense is meant.

## (11.)

1. Hic homo caecus non est ; varios rerum colores bene sentit.
2. Vestem non habui ; frigus sensi.
3. Ille senex moriens non sensit.
4. Fores aperiri sensi, sed neminem vidi.
5. Ne vos quidem qui circumstetistis rem sensistis.
6. Repperi esse vera quae mihi servus dixit.
7. Neque frumentum neque pecus in agris repperimus.
8. Captivos vinxit et ad Caesarem duxit.
9. Rex hostium vinctus ad Caesarem ductus est.
10. Hannibal magis ratione et consilio quam virtute vicit.
11. Neque virtute neque in acie vicerunt Romani.
12. Nota est illa vox Caesaris : Veni, vidi, vici.
13. Ivit foras capite aperto, neque imbrem sensit.
14. Sulmonenses, simul atque signa nostra viderunt, portas aperuerunt.
15. Eorum qui Romam venerunt repertus est numerus milium C et X.
16. Romam venimus ; forum Romanum vidimus ; mane Neapolim imus.

## (12.)

1. Neither my brother nor my sister felt the cold :  
they were at home.
2. He was not, was he, aware of the matter ? Was  
he not in the city ?
3. We found sweet water in the wood.
4. A great quantity of cattle were found by us there.
5. The barbarians, as soon as they saw the Romans,  
opened the gates.
6. They were brought bound to Caesar and all put to  
death.
7. The barbarians conquered not by their bravery but  
by their strategy.
8. Who is this who comes to me with his head  
uncovered ? I do not know the man.
9. We all came to you as soon as we heard.
10. He has gone to Rome ; his father told him to go.
11. We have discovered nothing about that tribe.
12. You have come, seen, and conquered.

## SECTION 6.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE FORMATION OF  
VERBS.

## (13.)

1. Diu te exspectavi, tandem venisti.
2. Captivi ab iis qui proximi steterant interfecti sunt.

3. Quis te aere alieno liberaverat? — Pater me liberavit.
4. Librum tibi, quod optimus puer fuisti, dedi.
5. Romani hostes, ut supra docuimus, fugaverunt.
6. Haec legio ceteris in bellis omnibus praestitit.
7. Pompeius, simul atque venit, castra hostium occupavit.
8. Belgae se, simul atque exercitus Caesaris venit, populo Romano dediderunt.
9. Milites qui in opere occupati sunt fuga salutem petiverunt.
10. Reddidi librum, qui mihi a fratre tuo datus erat.
11. Ceteri interfecti sunt, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat.
12. Ille vir multas urbes condidit, multas idem perdidit.

(14.)

1. To-day you have all come; yesterday no one came.
2. No one surpassed me in these matters.
3. Some surrendered themselves to Caesar, others to Pompeius.
4. Who gave you all the books which I saw in your house?
5. My brother came home at midnight.
6. Did you not stand next to him in the battle?
7. Some returned, others remained at Rome.
8. Did I not return you the twelve books yesterday?
9. As soon as the third legion came, Caesar moved his camp.
10. In vain did the soldiers seek safety in flight; the enemy stood round on every side.

## (15.)

1. Quis te istos mores docuit? pessimi sunt, mi puer!
2. Filius, a patre monitus, domum statim rediit.
3. Ille homo neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoria motus est.
4. Milites periculo mortis non sunt territi.
5. Ceteri qui domi manserunt optime valuerunt.
6. Non memoria tenuerant quae heri dixeram.
7. Pater iterum atque iterum puerum fenestram aperire iussit.
8. Cicero consulatum optime gessit.
9. Fratrem sororemque heri vidi, patrem cras videbo.
10. Genus hoc erat pugnae quo se Germani exercuerunt.
11. Non modo hoc, sed multa alia etiam, tibi iam dixeram.
12. Hic multa de omnibus rebus dixit, ille tacuit.

## (16.)

1. My sisters were taught by our mother.
2. Why did you not return home? Everybody was expecting you.
3. Some were moved by the orator's words, others by his tears.
4. Who told you to uncover your head?
5. You have not remembered what I have already told you.
6. Many wars were waged by the Romans.

7. He has seen me to-day ; he will see my brother to-morrow.
8. Why did you stay at home ? Did your father tell you to ?
9. The Germans practised themselves in this kind of battle.
10. Were you not well in the country ? You did not take exercise.

(17.)

1. Puerorum alterum Romam, alterum Neapolim misit.
2. Caesar castra posuit longe a Nicopoli circiter milia passuum VII.
3. Omnes milites decimae legionis in naves impositi sunt.
4. Alexander ego sum ! non nosti nomen meum ?
5. Pompeius maioribus itineribus Apolloniam petivit.
6. Nihil debet a iudicibus iustitiae anteponi.
7. Non fefelli opinionem tuam, barbaros vici.
8. Idem cotidie fecit ; mane epistulas scripsit, vesperi corpus exercuit.
9. Rempubicam summa sapientia triginta iam annos rexerat.
10. Legiones, ut supra docuimus, se coniunxerunt.
11. Veni ad me cum omnibus libris tuis !
12. Ad tempus non veni ; amicus iam ad urbem ierat.

(18.)

1. The soldiers pitched their camp far from the city.
2. Your hope deceives you ; no one has come.

3. He sent the sister home, the brother into the woods.
4. Only a few soldiers were embarked on the ships.
5. (It was) yesterday I went to the city—you know the rest.
6. We did the same thing every day: we read books.
7. I have already lived twenty years in this city.
8. (As) judges, we preferred nothing to justice.
9. We have conquered; many of the enemy we have slain, many we bring bound.
10. I sought the consulship in vain; I was not known to the people.

(19.)

1. I cito, Caesarem de hac re fac certiozem.
2. Hostes, ab equitibus fugati, statim terga verterunt.
3. Quid! nonne debitam pecuniam solvisti?
4. Quid! capite aperto es? nonne solem times?
5. Puer tandem in conclavi meo repertus est.
6. Omnes captivos vinxit, et ad imperatorem duxit.
7. Vicistisne, milites?—Vicimus, sed dux interfectus est.
8. Legi tuam epistolam; sensi te non valere.
9. Legistine librum? Intellexistine quae legisti?
10. Alii legerunt, alii scripserunt, alii corpus exercuerunt.
11. Quid fecisti?—Lapides in aquam ieci.
12. Nostri, simul atque vicerunt, firmissimum foedus cum hostibus fecerunt.



## (20.)

1. Some were found in the wood, others in the garden.
  2. Why do you stand bare-headed? Who told you (to)?
  3. Why have you opened the window? Do you not feel the cold?
  4. The barbarians threw themselves into the sea.
  5. I have read your letter, but I did not understand it all.
  6. The one was slain, the other found safety in flight.
  7. We shall not fear the enemy, whom we have often conquered.
  8. What shall I do? He has not paid the money.
  9. The tribunes of the soldiers informed Caesar of these matters.
  10. You, soldiers, why have you turned your backs? What do you fear? Have you not often conquered?
- 

## VII.

Themistocles interroganti utrum Achilles esse mallet an Homerus respondit: "Tu vero malleſne te in Olympico certamine victorem renuntiari, an praeco esse qui victorum nomina proclamat?"

## VIII.

Iphicrates, dux Atheniensium, cum praesidio teneret Corinthum et sub adventu hostium ipse vigilas

circumiret, vigilem quemdam dormientem invenerat. Hasta transfixit. Quod factum quibusdam ut saevum exprobrantibus, "Qualem inveni," inquit, "talem reliqui."

## IX.

Pyrrhus rex Epiri, cum in Italia esset, audivit Tarentinos quosdam iuvenes in convivio parum honorifice de se locutos esse. Eos igitur ad se arcessitos percunctatus est num dixissent ea quae ad aures suas pervenissent. Tum unus ex his "Nisi" inquit "vinum nobis defecisset multo etiam plura et graviora in te locuturi eramus." Haec criminis excusatio iram regis in risum convertit.

## X.

Philosophus quidam tantum studio deditus est ut cetera omnia prorsus ignoraret. Viso puero quodam, dum in via ambulat, quaesivisse dicitur: "Tu, parve puer, quod tibi nomen?" Respondit puer: "At, mi pater, filius tuus ego sum, nomine Octavus."

## XI.

Iam barbam cuiusdam raserat tonsor quaesiveratque num quid eorum quae in tonstrina essent desideraret; unguentorum enim atque optimorum quidem copiam esse maximam. Negavit tamen ille sibi quidquam opus esse, rogavitque: "Quantum tibi me dare oportet?" "Da modo, domine," inquit, "quidquid soles ei qui barbam totonderit." "Quid! tibi vulnus in utraque gena vis?" Scilicet suam ipse barbam tondere solitus est, neque novaculā scienter utebatur.

## SECTION 7.

IRREGULAR VERBS—(*Continued*).

Possum      Volo      Nolo      Malo

Some of the irregularities of *possum* will be explained by the fact that *possum* is a contraction for *potis-sum*. (*Potissum* is used in the oldest Latin.)

Parts of the present tense of the other three verbs—

|      |        |         |         |           |        |
|------|--------|---------|---------|-----------|--------|
| volo | vis    | vult    | volumus | vultis    | volunt |
| nolo | nonvis | nonvult | nolumus | nonvultis | nolunt |
| malo | mavis  | mavult  | malumus | mavultis  | malunt |

show that they are related to one another. *Nolo* is shortened for *ne-volo* (*ne* = *non*), and *malo* for *mage-volo*.

(21.)

1. Num potes, inquit, omnia quae te magister docuit memoria tenere?
2. Romam quam celerrime potui veni; Balbum videre volui.
3. Caesar quam proxime poterat hostium castris castra ponebat.
4. Neque in silva neque in horto illum florem reperire potuerant.
5. Quaesivit ex me "Gaiumne vidisti?" — Quid respondisti?—"Gaium non novi," respondi.

6. Visne mecum ad summum collem ire?—Claudus altero pede sum; non possum, Quinte.
7. Pater illum alterum filium qui mortuus est secum omni tempore volebat esse.
8. "Faciam quod vultis, ut potero," respondit Marcus.
9. Non patriae solum sed tua ipsius causa hoc velle debes.
10. Ille puer legere quam corpus exercere mavult.
11. Noli divitias sapientiae antepondere. Quid divitiis incertius esse potest?
12. Nolet mane venire, patrem exspectat.
13. Malent cum pauperibus quam cum divitibus vivere.
14. Tibi adesse, inquit, neque potero neque volam.
15. Verum audire volumus, inquit; legistine librum et intellexisti?

(22.)

1. Can you not, boys, remember the things which your father told you?
2. "We cannot come to Rome very quickly," he answered.
3. He was putting the flowers as near as he could to the tree.
4. They could not open the window.
5. Do you wish to come with us to the city?—I wish, but I am not able.
6. "We will do," he said, "what you wish, as far as we shall be able."
7. He will be unwilling to seek aid from Caesar.

8. Do not despise the poor: we ought to prefer wisdom to riches.
9. He will choose rather to go to the city than to remain at home.
10. He will neither be able nor willing to understand this book.
11. He inquired of me: "You have not seen Gaius?"  
"I have not seen him," I answered.
12. Do not, friends, blame the slave; he has been sufficiently punished already.

## SECTION 8.

### IRREGULAR VERBS—(*Continued*).

Fero

Fio

Eo

The words which act as perfect and supine of *fero* belong really to another verb.

The verb *fio* acts in some tenses as the passive of *facio*, but *facio* has a perfect passive of its own, *factus sum*.

(23.)

1. Hi homines non possunt dolorem patienter ferre.
2. Hostes ne unum quidem impetum nostrorum tulerunt.
3. Haec omnia et fert patienter et feret; vir fortis est.
4. Illi pueri in dies nobis molestiores fiunt; puniri debent.
5. Multae eruptiones ex oppido cotidie factae sunt.

6. Hic Londinium, ille Lutetiam it.
7. Dominus foras it, servus domum redit.
8. Cras ad urbem ibo: nonne tu mecum ibis?
9. Omnia iam vidimus, inquit; domum redeamus.
10. Ubi est frater tuus?—Abiit—Quando redibit?—  
Nescio.
11. Non poterat omnia secum ferre.
12. Multi volunt sapientes fieri, pauci fiunt.
13. Legati Romam ad Caesarem venerunt et pacem  
petierunt.
14. Quaesivit ex me: "Librine iam reperti sunt?"
15. Undique uno tempore in hostes impetus factus est.

(24.)

1. We are not able to bear such great sufferings  
patiently.
2. The Gauls did not endure even one charge of the  
Romans.
3. These things they are bearing, and will bear  
patiently.
4. That girl becomes more beautiful day by day.
5. Some go to Paris, others to London.
6. Who has been made consul?—I do not know.
7. In the winter he will go to the city, and in the  
spring he will return home.
8. Your brother will not carry everything with him.
9. In vain were many charges made on the enemy.
10. "It is already time to go away," he said; "let us go!"
11. Balbus is both now bearing these things patiently  
and will always.

12. You did not, did you, girls, carry these burdens with you to the city?

(25.)

1. "Quid fieri debet?" quaeris; nolo respondere.
2. Omnes, ut fit, una responderunt.
3. Mi frater, eamus statim ad urbem!—Fiat, ibo tecum.
4. Omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt.
5. Quid fiet illo homine? pecuniam non reddidit.
6. Quid illo puero fiet? pater rem graviter fert.
7. I, puer, fer haec ad matrem; redi celeriter.
8. Tantum laborem diutius ferre non potero.
9. Simul atque magister venit, pueri, ut fit, tacuerunt.
10. Tantum frigus ferre non potero; quid me fiet?
11. Aulus magnos lapides in aves iacit: idem hoc fit a ceteris.
12. Cur ad diem non venisti?—Volui, sed non potui.
13. Dominus a servis per oppidum latus est.
14. [Dixit Populum Romanum id factum non esse laturum.]

(26.)

1. All, as usual, wished to do the same things.
2. Brother, we will go home.—By all means, let us go at once.
3. Why has not this been done on the proper day, slaves?
4. What will become of your brother? he is never silent.
5. Every one was much distressed at this matter.

6. He never goes into the country in the winter; he fears the cold.
  7. This tree will become greater day by day.
  8. When will she return?—She will not return to-day.
  9. On the following day the whole army returned to the camp.
  10. Caesar has not been informed of this matter.
  11. The king was carried to the harbour by the citizens.
  12. This load had been carried by two slaves.
- 

## XII.

### *A Few Words with an Invalid.*

- A. Rectene vales?
- B. Sic ut antehac peius nunquam.
- A. Rem mihi quam acerbam narras! Bono sis animo oportet; multum iuvat animus in re mala bonus. Quid morbi est?
- B. Nescio et hoc laboro periculosius.
- A. Verum; nam ad sanitatem gradus est novisse morbum. Nullosne consulisti medicos?
- B. Et quidem permultos.
- A. Quid respondent?
- B. Ut fit, respondent. Alius negat, alius ait, alius deliberandum censet. In hoc consentiunt omnes—me miserum esse.
- A. Diu est, quod teneris isto morbo?
- B. Mihi quidem saeculum videtur quod aegrotare coepi.



- A. Opinor febris esse speciem, quae te tenet.  
 B. Verum, et ego credo.  
 A. Quoto die recurrit dolor ?  
 B. Quoto die ? rogas ; immo quotidie.  
 A. Papae ! malum abominandum ! Unde suspicaris  
     hoc esse collectum mali ?  
 B. Prorsus ignoro. Iam recurrit dolor. Me miserum !
- 

## SECTION 9.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

Some verbs in Latin are passive in form but active in meaning ; *sequor*, for instance, does not mean "I am followed," but "I follow."

(27.)

1. Multae res ad hoc cōsiliū Gallos hortabantur.
2. Caesar eodem die quo profectus erat ad castra rediit.
3. Pompeius Luceriā proficiscitur Canusium atque inde Brundisium.
4. Multum temporis, inquit, ab illis pueris perditum est.
5. Falsus es, nunquam ego talia locutus sum.
6. Quid tibi dixit ?—Multa verba locutus est, quorum maiorem partem non intellexi.
7. [Ea, quae secuta est, aestate Caesar et Pompeius consules facti sunt.]

8. "Quis mecum ad summum collem ibit?" dixi;  
pauci me sequi voluerunt.
9. Milites cladem graviter tulerunt; frustra imperator  
eos hortatus est.
10. Caesar, quod hoc factum graviter tulit, legatos ad  
se adire non est passus.
11. Multae civitates ea patiebantur quae passi erant  
Cordubenses.
12. Caesar eodem itinere quo superiore anno usus erat  
uti noluit.
13. His navibus multis annis non usi erant.
14. "Hostes victi sunt," respondit; "rex ad castra  
profectus est."
15. Quid te fiet, puer? frustra te magister hortatus  
est, frustra es a patre monitus.

(28.)

1. The general often encourages his soldiers.
2. He has spoken a great many words on this  
matter.
3. Pompeius set out to Dyrrhachium by a difficult  
route.
4. Caesar has set out to Apollonia with a part of his  
forces.
5. Many citizens were following the army.
6. "A few only," he said, "followed me."
7. I shall never suffer severer (trials).
8. He did not permit his slaves to approach him.
9. I shall not use the same route to-day.
10. I have not used this sword for many years.

## (29.)

1. Caesar ordered all the fleet to follow him.
2. The windows have been opened a long time.
3. I have never used a worse sword.
4. All the money has now been returned.
5. He spoke much ; nobody listened.
6. What was said to you by that person ?
7. We set out from the city at midnight.
8. That boy has not been found, has he ?
9. The slave was brought to his master.
10. You will never undergo severer trials, my friends.

## (30.)

1. The boys become lazier day by day.
2. Who allowed you to remain at home ?
3. Were you not sent to the city ? Why have you not set out ?
4. Our friend went into the country yesterday ; we shall follow to-morrow.
5. A few soldiers only were unwilling to set out.
6. The boy uses his hands very well ; he does not know (how) to use his eyes.
7. Many men have suffered the things which you now suffer.
8. The ambassadors were bound and led to Caesar.
9. No one wants to set out : the king exhorts the soldiers in vain.
10. Who was talking ?—I don't know, I was silent.

## SECTION 10.

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(31.)

1. Ego longum difficilemque laborem mox confecero.
2. Haec non debes graviter ferre; non possumus omnem dolorem vitare.
3. Quid de me locutus est?—Te etiam atque etiam laudavit.
4. Volucres, simul atque ver venit, in silvis canunt.
5. Germani ingenti magnitudine corporis esse dicebantur.
6. Sermo facetus illius iuvenis saepe risum movit.
7. Cotidie castra mota sunt; qua de causa nescio.
8. Vidimus Caesarem media nocte castris proficisci.
9. Cum omnibus fere nationibus bellum gestum est a Romanis.
10. Imperatorum Romanorum alter semper vicit, alter semper victus est.
11. Alios eodem loco manere, alios celeriter se sequi iussit.
12. Quis te istos mores docuit? statim fenestram aperi!
13. Castra defendamus! Quid! nonne praestat fuga salutem petere?
14. Quid de me fiet? libros meos reperire non possum.
15. Hic consul factus est; illum spes fefellit, rem graviter fert.

## (32.)

1. The ships were not able to reach the land.
2. Do not ask for help; you will be able to conquer (by) yourself.
3. The enemy's general encouraged his fellow-citizens in a long speech.
4. What will become of my son? he grows more idle day by day.
5. That tribe does not know (how) to use darts.
6. Some gave themselves up, others sought safety in flight.
7. The one read a book, the other wrote a letter.
8. At daybreak the soldiers launched the ships of war.
9. The prisoners were bound and led into the prison.
10. One of the slaves put the books on the table, the other slept.
11. The boy was not able to collect his thoughts.
12. The soldiers of the fifth legion were put on board ship.

## (33.)

1. Captivorum circiter viginti milia Haeduis Arvernisque reddidit.
2. Quis te, puer, docuit? neque Latine neque Graece scis.
3. Ad diem non venit; qua de causa nescio.
4. Vidimus ducem prima luce cum omnibus copiis proficisci.

5. Romani cum omnibus fere nationibus bellum  
mox gesserint.
6. Simul atque Caesar venit, celeriter ad suos quisque  
ordines rediit.
7. Tarsus oppidum fere totius Ciliciae nobilissimum  
fuit.
8. Ita milites hortatus est: "Et haec et maiora etiam  
mala passi sumus."
9. Non me fefellit dies; hodie profectus est Caesar.
10. Adventum eius non diutius exspectabo. Cur ad  
diem non venit?
11. Tres noctis horae militibus ad quietem datae sunt.
12. Copias omnes, quas pro oppido collocaverat, in  
castra reduxit.
13. Quid! fuga salutem petetis? Nonne est fuga tur-  
pissima?
14. Nemo, ut fit, respondere voluit; omnes tacuerunt.
15. Media nocte omnes domi manere quam foras  
exire malumus.

(34.)

1. These men have led a very disgraceful life.
2. That boy never has anything on his head.
3. These trees are being moved by the wind.
4. The boy's bones were found by the traveller on  
the top of the mountain.
5. The soldiers were not able to keep their ranks.
6. A large number of young men stood around.
7. They cannot support the burden of taxes.
8. Follow the ancient manners of your ancestors!

9. I want to sleep ; I am tired ; I shall not be able to go with you.
10. I have conquered, you have been conquered.
11. The king of the enemy has surrounded his camp with a long and broad rampart.
12. One followed, the other remained at home.

## (35.)

1. Nautae omnia litora illius maris optime noverunt.
2. Ad pontem venerunt, qui erat ab oppido milia passuum circiter III.
3. Eum omnium laborum finem fore putabant.
4. Haec graviter tuli ; multorum mensium labor perditus est.
5. Helvetii angustos se fines habere putaverunt.
6. Hannibal militibus, quod fessi erant, paucorum dierum quietem dedit.
7. Ego mei, vos vestri, inquit, similes fuistis.
8. Celeris Gallorum victoria nostram opinionem fefellit.
9. Germanos ingenti magnitudine corporis esse audivimus.
10. Reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque fugit.
11. Diebus XXV aggerem latum pedes CCCXXX, altum pedes LXXX, fecerunt.
12. Sermo facetus illius iuvenis saepe risum movet.
13. Hae gentes frumentum sub terra condebant.
14. Puer, i statim ad oppidum.—Non novi viam—Ego te docebo.
15. Cur huc venisti ? venire non iussi.—Pater me ad te misit.

(36.)

1. All the prisoners have been given back.
  2. No one has suffered greater evils than I.
  3. Only a short time was given me for rest.
  4. He prefers to start at once.
  5. Nobody spoke ; all waited.
  6. He did not know the way ; I showed him.
  7. " I know the man," I answered ; " I see him every day."
  8. He used his sword in vain.
  9. Give back the book ; I want to use it.
  10. Who inquired this of you ?
  11. What did your friend answer ?—He was silent.
  12. They have turned their back ; they have been conquered.
- 

## XIII.

*Asking for a Holiday.*SCENE I.—*The Schoolroom.*

*Puer I.* Iamdudum et animus et caelum et dies invitatur ad ludendum !

*Puer II.* Invitant quidem haec omnia, sed solus praeceptor non invitatur.

*Puer I.* Subornandus est orator quispiam qui veniam extorqueat.

*Puer II.* Apte quidem dictum "extorqueat;" nam citius clavam extorseris e manu Herculis, quam ab hoc ludendi veniam. At olim illo nemo fuit ludendi avidior.



*Puer I.* Verum ; sed iam olim ille oblitus est se fuisse puerum. Ad verbera facillimus est et liberalis, hic parcissimus idemque difficillimus.

*Puer II.* Attamen quis ad eum legatus ire vult ?

*Puer I.* Eat qui volet : ego carere malo quam rogare.

*Puer II.* Nemo magis accommodus est ad hanc legationem quam Cocles.

*Puer I.* Nemo profecto : I, Cocles, ab omnibus nobis magnam initurus gratiam.

*Cocles.* Equidem experiar : verum si non successerit, ne conferte culpam in oratorem vestrum !

*Pueri.* I modo ; si te satis novimus impetrabis.

## SCENE II.—*The Master's Study.*

*Cocles.* Salve, praeceptor !

*Paedagogus* (to himself). Quid sibi vult nugamentum hominis ?

*Coel.* Salve, praeceptor venerande !

*Paed.* (to himself). Insidiosa civitas ! (To the boy). Satis iam salveo ! Dic quid velis.

*Coel.* Totus discipulorum tuorum grex orat ludendi veniam.

*Paed.* Nihil aliud quam luditis etiam absque venia.

*Coel.* Scit tua prudentia vigorem ingeniorum excitari moderato lusu, quemadmodum nos docuisti ex scriptore Latino.

*Paed.* Sane ut istud tenes quod pro te facit ! Laxamento opus est iis, qui vehementer laborant ; vobis qui segniter studetis, et acriter luditis freno magis opus est quam laxatis habenis.

*Cocl.* Adnitimur pro viribus ; quod adhuc cessatum est,  
post diligentia sarcietur.

*Paed.* Scio quam non sit tutum tibi credere ; tamen hic  
periculum faciam quam sis bonae fidei. Et si de-  
deris verba, posthac nequidquam mecum egeris.

SCENE III.—*The Schoolroom.*

*Cocl.* Exoravi, quamquam aegre !

*Pueri.* O lepidum caput ! omnes amamus te plurimum !

---

SECTION 11.

PARTICIPLES.

THE PRESENT ACTIVE AND PAST PASSIVE.

Deponent verbs, being active in meaning, have a present participle of the active voice.

(37.)

1. Milites clamorem undique tollere iussit.
2. Ego, inquit, cum sola decima legione iturus sum.
3. T. Ampius pecuniam ex fano Dianae tollens " Deos  
non timeo " inquit.
4. Altera ex duabus legionibus ex castris Varronis  
signa sustulit.
5. Adventu Caesaris omnis timor sublatus est.
6. Frater, ad oppidum iens, amicum tuum redeuntem  
vidit.

7. Imperator, a nuntio certior factus, celeriter ad castra rediit.
8. Nauta, ancoram tollens, "Valete," dixit, "amici."
9. Magister pueros, conantes loqui, tacere iussit.
- > 10. Milites, redire iussi, ad castra profecti sunt.
11. Viatores, a rege moniti, alio itinere progrediebantur.
12. Segesta est oppidum in Sicilia, quod ab Aenea, fugiente a Troia atque in haec loca veniente, conditum est.
13. Germanos, per vim transire conantes, adoriebantur.
14. Equites contra hostes euntes vidimus.
15. Eum frustra loqui conantem servi, a domino iussi, vinxerunt.
16. Nos, contra regem bellum gerentes, multa mala passi sumus.
17. Puer, a patre missus, media nocte ad oppidum venit.
18. Propter ea quae ferebant onera|longius sequi non poterant.
19. Milites e castris proficiscentes hostes adorti sunt.
20. A flumine progredientes hostes adorti sumus.

(38.)

1. The citizens raised loud shouts.
2. (Some) money was removed by Titus Ampius from the shrine of Diana.
3. I saw the boy standing in the water.
4. We saw the slave escaping to the temple.
5. Seeking gold, we have found stones.
6. We heard the soldiers raising shouts.

7. The boy being unwilling to follow, remained at home.
8. Did you see my friend going to the city?
9. They attacked the soldiers returning to their camp.
10. The soldier returning to the camp saw nothing.

It will have been found, in translating sentence 6, for instance, of the preceding Latin exercise, No. 37, that it is better to say "As my brother was going to the town he saw your friend returning," than "My brother going to the town saw," etc. So in the following exercise such English phrases can be turned by the use of the present participle in Latin.

(39.)

1. The horseman, quickly following, came in time.
2. As my friend was going to Rome he saw you returning.
3. Segesta was founded by Aeneas as he was escaping from Troy.
4. He attacked the Gauls as they were trying to cross.
5. I saw the army as it was returning to the camp.
6. They bound him, vainly endeavouring (as he was) to answer.
7. We attacked the enemy as he was setting out from the camp.
8. While making war against the king we suffered many defeats.
9. We saw your sister as she was returning home with her mother.
10. Who can endure that man when speaking of virtue?

## (40.)

1. The soldiers, having been ordered to follow, set out.
2. The travellers, having been warned by their friend, returned by another route.
3. The enemy, having been conquered, asked for peace.
4. The boy came to us, sent by his father.
5. The soldiers as they were returning from the battle raised a shout.
6. The captives were sent bound to the king.
7. Having been conquered ourselves, we now are conquering others.
8. We shall attack the enemy as he is advancing to the river.
9. The general, having been informed of the enemy's march, advanced.
10. Did you not see the soldiers advancing to the enemy's camp?

## SECTION 12.

PARTICIPLES—(*Continued*).

## THE PAST PARTICIPLE DEPONENT AND PASSIVE.

There is an awkward want in Latin of a past participle of the active voice. "Having loved," for example, has no direct Latin equivalent, but must be turned in some round-about way. The passive voice, however, has this participle, "having *been* loved" is *amatus*.

Some few verbs, however, have this past participle active, namely, deponent verbs. "Having followed" is *secutus*.

"Having" or "having been" will not always be the most suitable English for the past participle deponent or passive. In the first sentence below say "after delaying;" and in the following, "though ordered," "because he delayed," "if she is ordered," "without awaiting," "which had been looked for," etc.

(41.)

1. Ibi diu morati tandem proficisci constituerunt.
2. Puer, proficisci iussus, domi moratus est.
3. Gaius, diu domi moratus, tempore non venit.
4. Iussa filia ad matrem ibit.
5. Frater me non exspectans domum iit.
6. Ille libros antea frustra quaesitos reperit.
7. Amici mei domum redeuntes a praedonibus capti sunt.
8. Captivos vinxit; vinctos ad regem duxit.
9. Castra hostium ante oppidum posita vidit.
10. Ea dies quam cum legatis constituerat venit.
11. Roma profecti post paucos dies Lutetiam venimus.
12. Adventus legionum, ut fere fit, omnem timorem sustulit.
13. Pueri et senes propter aetatem arma ferre non poterant.
14. Bellum interea contra Romanos gerere constituerant.
15. Hostes, ex finibus suis progressi, nostros adoriri voluerunt.
16. Galli Romanos post tergum adoriri conati sunt.

17. Eodem itinere usi celeriter ad urbem venimus.
18. Hunc loqui non passus, illum non patiar.
19. Equites omnes ante se misit, pedites sequi iussit.
20. Romae, ut constituerat, paucos dies moratus Brundisium profectus est.

## (42.)

1. Having set out in the morning, they returned home in the evening.
2. Having advanced for a long time, he came to a river.
3. Having attacked the Gauls, we went back to the camp.
4. Having encouraged his soldiers, he ordered (them) to set out.
5. Having been often deceived by that man, I cannot praise him.
6. Having been informed of the arrival of the legions, the general set out.
7. Having endured worse things, I can endure this.
8. Meanwhile, having delayed a long time at Rome, we determined to return.
9. Having tried in vain to advance, they determined to stay there.
10. The soldiers, having been put on board the ships, raised a shout.

## (43.)

1. *After delaying* (i.e. having delayed) a long while at Rome, they determined to return home.

2. *Though ordered* (i.e. having been ordered) to go, they delayed there.
3. Why have you come to me?—I come *because I was sent* (i.e. having been sent) by my mother.
4. *If ordered* (i.e. having been ordered), the slave will come to you at once.
5. Having attacked the enemy in the rear, they returned to their camp.
6. He sent one of the slaves before him, the other he ordered to follow.
7. *Because he had delayed* (i.e. having delayed) there a long time, he determined to return at once.
8. Meanwhile, *after attacking* (i.e. having attacked) the cavalry, they advanced to the town.
9. *As I have been ordered* (i.e. having been ordered) to see everything, I shall delay for a few days in this city.
10. *After encouraging* (i.e. having encouraged) the soldiers, he determined to advance.

(44.)

1. After advancing three miles we came to the enemy's camp.
2. Having in vain tried to understand the book, we came back.
3. We were not able to find the book, though we tried often.
4. After being conquered we have conquered.
5. We did not see the king, though we delayed in the city for many days.
6. Ordered to return, he immediately set out.



7. After their defeat<sup>1</sup> the Germans gave themselves up.
8. I did not understand though I tried.
9. We did not come in time, because we delayed<sup>2</sup> at Tarentum.
10. I cannot come to you because I have determined to return at once.

## XIV.

*Papyrus.*

In palustribus Aegypti regionibus papyrus nascitur. Radicibus incolae pro ligno utuntur; ex ipso autem papyro navigia texunt, e libro vela tegetes vestem ac funes. Succi causa etiam mandunt, modo crudum, modo decoctum. Praeparantur ex eo etiam chartae. Chartae ex papyro usus post Alexandri demum victorias repertus est. Primo enim scriptum est in palmarum foliis; deinde in libris quarundam arborum; postea publica monumenta plumbeis tabulis confici aut marmoribus mandari coepta sunt. Tandem aemulatio regum Ptolemaei et Eumēnis in bibliothecis condendis occasionem dedit membranas Pergami inveniendi. Ab eo tempore libri modo in charta ex papyro facta, modo in membranis scripti sunt.

## XV.

*The Crocodile.*

Nilus crocodilum alit beluam quadrupedem, in terra non minus quam in flumine hominibus infestam.

<sup>1</sup> *I.e.* having been conquered.

<sup>2</sup> Here the past participle; but in the next sentence *because* must be *quod*. Why?

Unum hoc animal terrestre linguae usu caret ; dentium plures habet ordines ; maxilla inferior est immobilis. Magnitudine excedit plerumque duodeviginti cubita. Parit ova anserinis non maiora. Unguibus etiam armatus est et cute contra omnes ictus invicta. Dies in terra agit, noctes in aqua. Cum satur est et in litore somnum capit, ore hiante, trochilus, parva avis, dentes ei faucesque purgat. Sed hiantem conspicatus ichneumon per easdem fauces ut telum aliquod immissus erodit alvum. Hebetes oculos dicitur habere in aqua, extra aquam acerrimos.

---

### SECTION 13.

#### THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The construction called "the Ablative Absolute" serves, to some extent, to make up for the want of a past participle of the active voice. The English, "Caesar, having settled this matter, returned to the camp," cannot go straight into Latin, because *constitutus*, the past participle of *constituo*, is passive, and means "having been settled." But it can be turned into Latin in this way, *Caesar hac re constituta ad castra rediit*—that is, "Caesar, this matter having been settled, returned to the camp."

(45.)

1. Romam venit : ibi de caede fratris cognoscit.
2. Pater, his rebus constitutis, non diutius moratus est.

3. His rebus cognitis hostes post tergum adorti sunt.
4. Haec res Caesari non minorem voluptatem quam ipsa victoria affert.
5. Amicus, hoc nuntio adlato, morari noluit et domum rediit.
6. Barbari sua omnia ex agris in oppida conferebant.
7. Consul, hac oratione habita, domum se contulit.
8. Hoc nuntio audito barbari castra in campo posuerunt.
9. Barbari, nostros frustra adorti, ad castra se contulerunt.
10. His rebus adductus imperator Romanus copias suas in campum deducit.
11. Mater, lecta filii epistula, rem graviter tulit.
12. Servi, opere confecto, domum redire constituerunt.
13. Gaius, servis sequi iussis, rus est profectus.
14. Postero die Romani, castris motis, hostes saepius adorti sunt.
15. Nostri sublatiis ancoris naves hostium celeriter secuti sunt.
16. Ea spe adducti barbari se in proximos colles contulerunt.
17. Illi, pecunia non reddita, in conspectum mercatoris venire timuerunt.
18. Quibus rebus cognitis in conspectum hostium celerius opinione eorum exercitum adduxit.

(46.)

1. This message having been brought, they moved their camp.

2. This matter having been settled, we were unwilling to set out.
3. Having learnt these facts, we did not delay (any) longer.
4. Having delivered this speech, Caesar returned home.
5. The father, having read his son's letter, did not delay.
6. Balbus, having ordered his slaves to follow, went away to the country.
7. The friends, having finished the task, wrote many letters.
8. The sailors having lifted their anchors, went away.
9. Not having given back the money, they did not want to come back.
10. Having ordered his slaves to stay, he set out with his sons.
11. Having moved their camp, they attacked the enemy.
12. Having done these things, I determined to return the money.
13. The soldiers, having raised a shout, departed.
14. Having put the soldiers on board ship, he could not attack the enemy.
15. Having bound all the prisoners, he ordered the soldiers to set out.

(47.)

1. Pueri, his rebus confectis, cursu se exercebant.
2. Barbari, urbe capta, ad proximos colles cucurrerunt.
3. Caesar, hoc nuntio adlato, naves omnes in unum locum cogit.

4. Frater meus, bello confecto, domum rediit.
5. Nostri, terga vertere coacti, ad castra se contulerunt.
6. Commisso praelio diutius nostrorum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt.
7. Caesar salutem suam Gallorum equitatui committere non audebat.
8. Eodem die legati, ab hostibus missi, ad Caesarem de pace venerunt.
9. Suevi, more suo concilio habito, nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt.
10. Imperator, dimissis Haeduorum copiis, praelium commisit.
11. Milites navi egredi et se barbaris committere non audebant.
12. Barbari, paene omnibus copiis amissis, in suos fines redire coacti sunt.

(48.)

1. When the war is finished we shall all return home.
2. Our men, after vainly attacking the enemy, ran to the ships.
3. When I have written the letter, I will go with you to the city.
4. The general, after encouraging his soldiers, ordered them to attack the enemy.
5. The barbarians, having held a council, determined to give battle.
6. The enemy, having been conquered in the battle, did not dare to return.

7. As we know these facts, let us weigh anchor and go.]
8. The barbarians, after having yesterday in vain tried to follow, will remain in their camp to-day.
9. As we have determined on war, why do we delay any longer?
10. Having advanced to the river, they attacked our men.
11. After sending messengers in all directions, they were advancing to the city.
12. After dismissing two legions, he gave battle with the rest.

## SECTION 14.

### THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE—(*Continued*).

The construction of the Ablative Absolute is used also with other participles, with adjectives, and with a few nouns. For instance : *illo absente* means "He being absent," i.e. "in his absence," "while he was away;" *patre vivo*, "my father being alive," "in my father's lifetime," "while my father was alive;" *te iudice*, "you being judge," "in your judgment."

(49.)

1. His rebus cognitis Caesar exercitum dimittere coactus est.
2. Te duce hostem non timebimus; omnia facere poterimus.

3. Me iudice illi pueri bene responderunt.
4. Amicum e conspectu amisi meo: num tu eum vidisti?
5. Me invito non poteris fenestram aperire.
6. Pueris nobis boni mores in honore erant.
7. His consulibus Romani ab Hannibale victi sunt.
8. Patre vivo Romae viximus.
9. Et me et te invitissimo hoc fiet.
10. Quem tecum adduxisti?—Gaius absente Balbum adduxi.
11. Milites, absente Caesare, castra in campo posuerunt.
12. Fratre absente constitui tamen ad te venire.
13. Matre invita Romae diutius manere non potui.
14. Invitus te fefelli. Nemo me de hac re certiore fecit.
15. Isti clamores mihi dolorem capitis attulerunt. Cur semper, magistro absente, clamatis?

(50.)

1. Under your leadership we have both conquered and been conquered.
2. In my judgment the slave answered very well.
3. If your father is unwilling you will not be able to go to the city.
4. The queen died when we were boys.
5. In our father's lifetime we were rich; we are now poor.
6. In the absence of their master the boys were never silent.

7. As our mother is unwilling we cannot come to-day.
8. As your brother is away, will you not come with us ?
9. When these men were consuls Carthage was taken by the Romans.
10. In his judgment your sister bore her pain patiently.
11. This thing was done in our absence.
12. As both father and mother are away I cannot answer ; I will write to-morrow.

### SECTION 15.

#### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE AND PARTICIPLES.

(51.)

1. Agris hostium vastatis ad castra rediimus.
2. Obsidibus inter se datis pacem fecerunt.
3. Die constituto omnes in unum locum convenimus.
4. Frustra conatus te sequi invitus redii.
5. Castris munitis Caesar nuntios in omnes partes misit.
6. Omnia uno tempore facere coacti sumus.
7. Duce graviter vulnerato milites terga verterunt.
8. Duo milia passuum progressi ad flumen venimus.
9. Te absente proficisci non possum ; redi statim.
10. Custodibus interfectis portas urbis aperuimus.
11. Te duce saepe vicimus, nunquam victi sumus.
12. Patre tuo vivo pecunia semper ad diem solvebatur.



13. Paucos dies Brundisii moratus Romam me contuli.
14. Primis captis ceteri terga verterunt.
15. Hos Conon adortus magno praelio fundit fugatque.

## (52.)

1. After wasting the lands they returned home.
2. On the appointed day we all went to the city.
3. After trying in vain to see you, we unwillingly came back.
4. In my absence you will not, will you, pay the money?
5. When their leader was taken the soldiers surrendered themselves.
6. Have we not always been conquered under your leadership?
7. After advancing a mile they came to the enemy's camp.
8. The money was paid in our presence.
9. If you are unwilling we will not go to-day.
10. After delaying a few days at Rome they came back home.

## (53.)

1. Barbari, hoc nuntio adlato, se Caesari dediderunt.
2. Quid ! nobis non sentientibus, te loco movisti ?
3. Puer ad me venit, a patre missus.
4. His rebus cognitis, alii manent, alii proficiscuntur.
5. Viis obsessis progredi non potuimus.
6. Porta frustra quaesita ibi manere coacti sumus.
7. Hi pueri, maiorem fratrem secuti, nunquam tempore veniebant.

8. Optimum est tacere ; secundum pauca loqui.
9. Iis petentibus obsides omnes redditi sunt.
10. Omnibus qui aderant sequentibus rex ex urbe profectus est.
11. Pecunia non soluta, quid de nobis fiet ?
12. Oculis usus haec reperire poteris.
13. Simul atque me viderunt, servum portam aperire iusserunt.
14. Ceteros abire passus, duces in carcerem duxit.
15. Faciam quod vultis : his litteris scriptis in hortum ibo.

(54.)

1. He opened the window without our noticing it.
2. The slave came to us, sent by his master.
3. The roads being blocked, we returned to the camp.
4. If the money is not paid, we shall not be able to set out.
5. The soldiers, following their leader, attacked the enemy.
6. Knowing this and you being absent, we did nothing.
7. I have come to you because I was sent by my master.
8. We will do what you wish ; while you are away we will open the window.
9. I gave him back his book, as he was asking for it.
10. The leader advanced, with all the soldiers following him.

## (55.)

1. Tempus perdis; me invito non poteris fenestram aperire.
2. Non possum, ut te saepe per litteras docui, fratre absente Romam ire.
3. Eae naves, quas heri in portu vidimus, iam sublatis ancoris domum redierunt.
4. Haec urbs, in altissimo monte posita, capi non poterat.
5. Meum ipsius librum reperire frustra conatus, tuo utar.
6. Ephesum ad consulem paucos post dies obsides ab rege adducti sunt.
7. Legati, nihil ad ea respondentem, templo egredi iussi sunt.
8. Anno urbis conditae CCCXLV reges expulsi sunt.
9. Quindecim milia talentorum dabit; quingenta praesentia, cetera per duodecim menses.
10. Territis omnibus ipse imperator solus non timuit.
11. Spes me fefellit; me vivo haec res non fiet.
12. Barbari, commoti quod castra capta sunt, domum redierunt.
13. Contemptis iam victis hostibus impetum fecerunt.
14. Tertio libro lecto, quartum etiam legere conabimur.
15. His litteris acceptis non sumus morati; statim ad te venimus.

## (56.)

1. After vainly trying to speak, the orator departed.
2. What! will you take my books against my will?  
You cannot.

3. As we have been told to read this book, shall we not read it ?
  4. After saying these words, he ordered the prisoners to be brought to him.
  5. After hearing these things, we were not able to answer.
  6. The ships, which were in the harbour yesterday, have now weighed anchor and gone.
  7. You will not be able to find your friends, ordered (as they have been) to depart.
  8. Do not go while my father is away! He will soon return.
  9. These matters being settled, we ran to the river.
  10. After advancing three miles we came to the mountain.
- 

## XVI.

### *Fables about India.*

Incolarum habitus moresque diversi. Quidam parentes et propinquos, priusquam annis et macie conficiantur, velut hostias caedunt eorumque visceribus epulantur. Ii qui sapientiam profitentur ab ortu solis ad occasum stare solent solem immobilibus oculis intuentes; ferventibus arenis toto die alternis pedibus insistent.

Maximos India elephantos gignit. Hoc animal cetera omnia docilitate superat. Discunt arma iacere, gladiatorum more congregi, saltare et per funes incedere. Narrat scriptor quidam Romae unum segnioris ingeni saepe castigatum esse verberibus, quia tardius accipiebat quae tradebantur; eundem repertum esse

noctu eadem meditantem. Elephanti gregatim semper ingrediuntur. Ducit agmen maximus natu, cogit is, qui aetate ei est proximus. Annem transitori minimos praemittunt. Capiuntur foveis. In has ubi elephas deciderit, ceteri ramos congerunt, aggeres construunt omnique vi conantur extrahere.

In India quoque serpentes perpetuum bellum cum elephantis gerunt. Ex arboribus se in praetereuntes praecipitant gressusque ligant nodis. Hos nodos elephanti manu resolvunt. At dracones in ipsas elephantorum nares caput condunt spiritumque praecludunt. Plerumque in illa dimicatione utrique commoriuntur; victus enim elephas corruens serpentem pondere suo elidit.

---

## SECTION 16.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: UT.

#### THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

Do ut des, *I give that you may give.*

Dedi ut dares, *I gave that you might give.*

*That*, when it means “in order that,” or, in other words, when it expresses a purpose, is translated by the conjunction *ut*, and the following verb is put in the subjunctive mood.

*Ut* may also be translated by “to.” “I came that I might help you” and “I came to help you” mean the same thing, and may be translated by *Veni ut te adiuverem*.

But in turning into Latin this "to" of the purpose, care must be taken as to the tense of the following verb in the subjunctive. "He sent the boys to see the city," that is, in other words, "that they *might* see;" so "Pueros misit, ut urbem *viderent*."

## (57.)

1. Venite statim, ut me in hac re adiuvetis.
2. Haec non dixi, cives, ut animos vestros ad bellum incitarem.
3. Ut valeret, corpus cotidie exercebat.
4. Nos ad urbem imus, ut vos domi maneatis.
5. Cur tibi hoc dixi? nonne dixi ut memoria semper teneres?
6. Navibus incensis, hostes a tergo adorti sumus.
7. Nostri crebras eruptiones faciunt, ut ordines hostium turbent.
8. Impedimentis in oppido relictis, in campum profecti sumus.
9. Nostri, incitatis equis, hostes impeditos adoriebantur.
10. Haec dixi, ut meis verbis pueri ad maiorem diligentiam incitarentur.
11. Omnia feci, ut frater aere alieno liberaretur.
12. Multa loquitur, ut tibi sapiens videatur.
13. Ego domi maneo, ut tu et tuus amicus in urbe moremini.
14. Haec oratio utilissima reipublicae semper putata est.
15. Castra cotidie moventur, ut milites in omni genere laborum exerceantur.

## (58a.)

1. Come, my brother, that you may help me !
2. I said this that I might incite the boy to greater diligence.
3. I came that I might set my friend free from debt.
4. I went to the camp that I might see my friends.
5. They are going out from the camp that they may seize the hill.
6. I came to you that you might help me in this matter.
7. What ! did you come that you might incite the minds of the citizens to war ?
8. That you may be well, take exercise every day.
9. I am going to the city that you may remain at home.
10. I told you this often that you might always retain it in your memory.
11. When we had set fire to the town we advanced, that we might lay waste the enemy's lands.
12. Having left the baggage in the camp, we set out, that we might take possession of the hill.

## (58b.)

1. He sent two legions in order that the city might be at once besieged.
2. He said this that he might be considered wise.
3. I said this to encourage the soldiers.
4. He has left a large part of the baggage in the camp.
5. He sent the slaves to tell their master.

6. We are advancing to the wood to attack the enemy from the rear.
7. He sent the cavalry that the city might be set free from its peril.
8. He burnt the ships that the enemy might be alarmed.
9. Having done these things, we set out to see the city.
10. While you were away we went to the city to give the book to Caius.
11. He did this that he might seem useful to the state.
12. He often moves his camp in order to exercise his soldiers in every kind of labour.

## SECTION 17.

UT, FINAL—(*Continued*).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD : THIRD CONJUGATION.

(59.)

1. Ad te scribo, ut omnem timorem tollam.
2. Veni ad te, ut pecuniam debitam solverem.
3. Haec ad te scripsi, ut omnes has res statim constitueres.
4. Quid venisti? ut a me auxilium peteres?
5. Quo ibis, mea soror?—Ibo ad hortum ut flores carpam.
6. Floribus carptis, ibo ad urbem, ut fratrem videam.
7. Ad litus iverunt, ut naves hostium incenderent.



8. His rebus cognitis statim redii, ut tecum loquerer.
9. Hodie tibi pecuniam dabo, ut prima luce progrediaris.
10. Nautae ancoras tollunt, ut naves solvantur.
11. Naves mox solventur, ut nautae hostes sequantur.
12. Impedimentis in proximum collem deductis, ipse  
ad flumen progressus est, ut pontem solveret.

(60.)

1. I am gathering flowers to send to my mother.
2. I came to give you back your book.
3. They are going to the harbour to set fire to all the  
enemies' ships.
4. The ships having been set fire to, they will return  
to burn the town.
5. I will give you the book to-day, that you may  
read it to-morrow.
6. They went to the shore to see the sailors and the  
ships.
7. What did you come to see?—I came to see you.
8. I wrote these words that you might understand  
the speech.
9. They went to the river to follow the others.
10. I did this that my words might be read by all.

---

## XVII.

### *A True Dream.*

Duo quidam familiares iter una faciebant; et, cum Megara venissent, alter ad cauponem, ad hospitem

alter, devertit. Qui cum cenati quiescerent, nocte media visus est in somno ei qui erat in hospitio ille alter orare, ut subveniret, quod sibi a caupone interitus pararetur. Primo perterritus somnio surrexit; dein, cum se collegisset idque visum pro nihilo habendum esse duxisset, recubuit. Tum ei dormienti idem ille visus est rogare his verbis: "Quoniam mihi vivo non subvenisti, mortem meam ne inultam esse passus sis. Interfectus in plastrum a caupone sum coniectus, et supra stercus iniectum; mane ad portam ades, priusquam ex oppido exeat." Hoc vero somnio commotus, mane bubulco praesto ad portam fuit: quaesivit ex eo quid esset in plaustro; ille perterritus fugit; mortuus erutus est; caupo, re patefacta, poenas dedit.

---

## SECTION 18.

UT, FINAL—(*Continued*).

THIRD CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

Certain verbs ending in *-io* form the infinitive present in *-ĕre* and imperfect subjunctive in *-ĕrem*. *Facio* is one of these. "To make" is *facĕre*; I might make, *facĕrem*. Others of these verbs are, the compounds of *facio*; *interficio*, *conficio*, *reficio*, etc.; *capio*, and its compounds, *accipio*, *decipio*, *incipio*, *recipio*; and *iacio*. The deponents *morior*, *patior*, *progredior*, in the same way form these tenses according to the third conjugation: *mori*, *morerer*; *pati*, *paterer*; *progredi*, *progrededer*. See p. ~~124~~ 336.

## (61.)

1. Nuntios miserunt, ut Caesarem de his rebus certiorerem facerent.
2. His rebus factis ad portum ibo, ut navem reficiam.
3. Non est verum ; hoc solum dixit, ut te deciperet.
4. Galli ad Caesarem iverunt, ut obsides reciperent.
5. Quid fugietis, milites ? Mori melius est quam turpiter vivere.
6. Impedimenta in castris reliquit, ut ad oppidum celeriter progredierentur.
7. Quid ! num oratorem culpas ? nonne populus vult decipi ?
8. Paucos milites in colle posuit, ut lapides in hostes iacerent.
9. Vive honeste, ut aequo animo moriaris.
10. Domi unum solum mensem moratus, ad urbem rediit, ut opus inceptum conficeret.
11. Non sum miles ; malo domi morari quam bellum gerere.
12. Vir bonus mavult pro patria mori quam victa patria turpiter vivere.

## (62a.)

1. We will send a messenger to inform the general of these matters.
2. The war having been finished, we will return home to see our friends.
3. Did you say that to deceive me and others ?
4. We will go to Caesar, to get back our hostages.

5. To die is better than to live.—You are not well.
6. A few soldiers were posted on the hills to throw stones on the enemy.
7. The good live virtuously, that they may die with resignation.
8. Some came to see the king, others to see the orator.
9. Why did you not come to mend the table?
10. I came to give you this little book.

(62*b*.)

1. They went into the wood to make a fire.
2. I write to you in order that I may receive a letter from you.
3. We remained at home the whole day to finish the work.
4. He spoke these words to deceive the soldiers.
5. The sailors are going to the harbour to mend their ships.
6. They set sail in the morning in order that they might reach land before night.
7. When we have finished the task we will go to the town to see the soldiers.
8. The ambassadors said this to deceive Caesar.
9. My brother, who came yesterday, will go to-morrow to Rome to see you.
10. Having heard the speech, they advanced to take the town.

## SECTION 19.

UT, FINAL—(*Continued*).

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD : FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Do not use *ut non*, but instead *ne*. Sò *Abiit ne videretur*, "He went away that he might not be seen ;" or, "not to be seen ;" or, "lest he should be seen."

(63.)

1. Ad urbem omnes venimus, ut oratorem audiremus.
2. Nocte e castris progressi sumus, ne hostes clamore sublato convenirent.
3. Legiones pro castris constituit, ne hostes subito adorirentur.
4. Fessus sum, amice ; domum redibo, ut dormiam.
5. Captivos omnes interfici iussit, ne in itinere impedirentur.
6. Pauci, relictis equis, fossam transire conati sunt, ut ceteros adiuvent.
7. Milites illius itineris laborem vix pati potuerunt.
8. Haec ad te scripsi, ne res urbanas nescires.
9. In hortum eo, ut librum reperiam.—Non reperies.
10. His cognitis milites ex urbe eduxit, ne omnes interficerentur.
11. Nuntios mitte, ut consul de his rebus certior fiat.
12. Rem non debes graviter ferre, ne omnibus decipi videaris.

(64*a*.)

1. We will all go into the woods to hear the birds.
2. We will not sleep, lest the enemy attack us.
3. They give back the captives, that they may not be impeded on the march.
4. They advanced to help the cavalry when they heard this.
5. I will write to you often, that you may not be in ignorance of the doings of the town.
6. I will go into the garden to find your friend.
7. They were reading books, that they might not seem to be doing nothing.
8. The soldiers returned to their camp, that they might not be taken by the enemy.
9. Having left their baggage in the camp, they set out to follow the cavalry.
10. They raised a shout, that they might be heard by the enemy.

(64*b*.)

1. If you are unwilling, I will not go to see the soldiers.
2. We followed the soldiers in order that we might be able to see the battle.
3. They were raising shouts in order that the words of the orator might not be heard.
4. I went to the city to inform the consul of the whole affair.
5. We will go ourselves to the camp, lest we be deceived.

6. They will leave their baggage in the camp, lest they be impeded on the march.
  7. He went into the woods, that he might not be sent into the city.
  8. They sent the slave to pay the money at once.
  9. We will not go into the camp, lest the soldiers throw their darts at us.
  10. I will follow the slave, whom I sent into the city, lest he deceive me.
- 

## XVIII.

*A Murder at an Inn.*

In itinere quidam proficiscentem ad mercatum quendam et secum aliquantum nummorum ferentem est consecutus. Cum hoc, ut fere fit, in via sermonem contulit: ex quo factum est, ut illud iter familiarius facere vellent. Qua re, cum in eandem tabernam devertissent, simul cenare et in eodem loco somnum capere voluerunt. Cenati discubuerunt ibidem; neque tamen uterque vivus surrexit. Quomodo perierit dicitur post inventum esse, cum in alio maleficio deprehensus esset caupo. Is enim noctu, postquam illos arctius iam, ut fit, ex lassitudine dormire sensit, accessit, et alterius eorum qui sine nummis erat gladium propter appositum e vagina eduxit, et illum alterum occidit; nummos abstulit, gladium cruentum in vaginam recondidit, ipse se in suum lectum recepit. Ille autem, cuius gladio occisio erat facta, multo ante lucem surrexit; comitem illum suum inclamavit semel et saepius.

Illum somno impeditum non respondere existimavit: ipse gladium et cetera quae secum attulerat sustulit; solus profectus est. Caupo non multo post conclamat hominem esse occisum, et cum quibusdam deversoribus illum qui ante exierat consequitur in itinere. Hominem comprehendit; gladium eius e vagina educit; reperit cruentum. Homo in urbem ab illis deducitur ac reus fit.

---

## SECTION 20.

### THE ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

It has been seen that the word *that* is translated into Latin by *ut*, when the *that* means *in order that*. In such a sentence as "He said that his mother was not well," it is plain that *that* does not mean *in order that*; and it is differently turned in Latin. The "that" has no Latin word, the following noun is put into the accusative case, and the following verb into the infinitive mood. The Latin, then, will be *Dixit matrem non valere*. In the following sentence both kinds of "that" occur. "He said that he was not well, that he might not be sent into the city," *that he* will be *se*, *that . . . not* will be *ne*.

(65.)

1. Scio eum navem suam iam refecisse.
2. Dixit patrem suum et matrem mortuos esse.



3. Nego te a me deceptum esse : spes tua te fefellit.
4. Promittit se tempore rediturum esse.
5. Negat se me invito epistulam scripturum.
6. Constat Romulum primum populi Romani regem fuisse.
7. Alii dicunt, alii negant, nostros vicisse.
8. Spero te patre invito non venturum.
9. Dixit se non valere, ne ad urbem mitteretur.
10. Scio te inimico in me animo esse.
11. Cur simulas te inimicos amare ?
12. Audivi te dolorem aequo animo pati.
13. Scio illum hominem inimicum omnium bonorum esse.
14. Certiorem me fecerunt nostros ab hostibus victos esse.
15. Spero eum reperturum esse quae amisit.
16. His quaerentibus respondi me nihil repperisse.
17. Promittit se me non sentiente dentem extracturum esse.
18. Respondit se nolle hodie pecuniam solvere.
19. Graviter fero te a me non auxilium petiisse.
20. Scio illum hominem domi manere, ne mihi in conspectum veniat.

(66a.)

1. I know that he is writing a letter.
2. They said that they had already answered.
3. He promises that he will give back the book.
4. I hope that you will set out to-morrow.
5. He pretends that he is teaching his brother.

6. He said that he had often heard the orator.
7. It is well known that the queen is dead.
8. He denied that he had received your letter.
9. It is not true that I give nothing to the poor.
10. I was ignorant that Caius was an enemy of yours.
11. They deny that they have seen the soldiers.
12. They pretend that they are unwilling.

The English sentence "He said that he saw the house" may mean two things. It may mean that he said "I see the house" or "I saw the house" some time in the past. If it means "I see," the Latin should be *videre*; if "I saw," *vidisse*.

(66b.)

1. He pretended that he was often in Rome.
2. He said that he wrote five letters yesterday.
3. He said that he put everything on the table.
4. They denied that they had been deceived.
5. He pretended that he was following the army.
6. He said that he had deceived his enemy.
7. The general pretended that he had conquered the enemy.
8. They said that they saw your brother yesterday.
9. We all hope that you will come to us.
10. He said that he knew everything.
11. He said that he conquered the enemy in Gaul.
12. Do you promise that you will inform me of everything?

## SECTION 21.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Some verbs have lost their present tense and tenses formed from it, and have only the perfect and tenses formed from the perfect. *E.g. coepi*, I began; *odi*, I hate; *memini*, I remember.

Notice also that the two latter verbs have present meanings with the perfect form.

(67.)

1. *Memini me promisisse*; ad diem veniam.
2. Interea, ceteris tacentibus, Gaius dicere coepit.
3. Quis mecum Londinium ibit? non novi viam.
4. Quis tecum loquebatur?—Non novi nomen eius.
5. Scio Gallos saepe a Romanis victos esse.
6. Pater meus negavit se illam rem meminisse.
7. Dixit se neque hunc hominem neque illum odisse.
8. Ille puer dixit se iam Latine scire.
9. Novi hominem et scio eum pessimum civem semper fuisse.
10. Tui nunquam obliviscar; semper meminero te me in illa re adiuvasse.
11. Num tu mei oblitus es? Cur nunquam ad meas epistulas respondes?
12. Illi nautae coeperunt reficere naves, ut domum redirent.
13. Ne inimicos tui quidem odisse debes, sed omnes homines amare.

14. Hanc totam orationem Latine redde; reddita ad me veni.
15. Spero te invito me, qui tibi saepe adfui, non haec conaturum esse.

(68a.)

1. Then his brother began to say that he was unwilling.
2. I remember that he died on that day.
3. I do not know your friend. What is his name?
4. I shall never forget that day; we were all conquered.
5. Do you not remember that I hate that man?
6. I say that he does not know Latin.
7. I promise that I will remain there all day.
8. He pretends that he has already answered.
9. Do you not hope that the Romans have already conquered?
10. He does not know that we made the same requests.

(68b.)

1. When you have done this, remember that I shall be in the garden.
2. He said that he had forgotten. Do you think that he spoke the truth?
3. I have often turned that passage into Latin.
4. I said this that he should not think me unwilling.
5. That boy, when ordered to turn this into Latin, said that he did not know Latin.
6. He began to write in order that having finished the work he might go into the woods.

7. I was aware that you were pretending in his presence.
8. Knowing this, I said that I should not be absent.
9. Why did you pretend that you were not well?  
You did not hope that you would deceive me?

## SECTION 22.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Many verbs are used only in the third person singular (and in the infinitive and gerund). *Pluit*, it rains; *licet mihi ire*, it is permitted me to go, *i.e.* I may go; *oportet me ire*, it behoves me to go, *i.e.* I ought to go.

(69.)

1. *Pluit, Balbe; neque hodie ad urbem ire poterimus.*
2. *Ubi est frater meus?—Te oportet hoc scire.*
3. *Sanguinem pluisse Romae creditum est.*
4. *Opere facto licebit tibi in hortum ire.*
5. *Credo te fratrem meum novisse?—Et novi et amo tuum fratrem.*
6. *Neque possum tecum ire, neque (mihi crede) me oportet.*
7. *Nonne mihi licet inimicos odisse?*
8. *Ne inimicos quidem (mihi crede) odisse debemus.*
9. *Nonne nos oportet patrem de his rebus certiore facere?*
10. *Nonne mihi licet in hortum ire, ut flores carpam?*

11. Promisisti te me adiuturum: nonne te oportet promissa praestare?
12. Ille puer coepit omnibus molestus esse: semper de se et de suis rebus loquebatur.

(70.)

1. Why does it always rain? I shall not be able to go into the garden to-day.
2. You ought to remember this: I was not present.
3. We ought to inform Caesar of all matters.
4. You may go to Rome: return to-morrow.
5. Why may I not see this house?
6. Hewillreturn,Ibelieve,thatthemayreceivethemoney.
7. I believe that he knows Latin.
8. We ought to remember these matters.
9. May I not tell my father these things?
10. Neither the elder nor the younger brother (believe me) knows Latin.
11. He said that he did not know all the citizens.
12. You may not go, lest you fall into the water.

---

## XIX.

### *Alexander's Speech to his Soldiers*

(in which he vainly endeavours to urge them to follow him into India).

Alexander, cum ad Hypasin fluvium processisset, non modo transire voluit, sed ad Gangen, maximum totius Indiae flumen, pergere; postremo totius orbis imperium appetere. Sed, veritus ut longius progredi vellent, vocatis militibus, ad hunc modum disseruit: "Non

ignoro, milites, multa quae terrere vos possent ab incolis Indiae per hos dies de industria esse iactata. Sed omnia fama tradit maiora vero, neque nos fabulae detertere possunt. Quamdiu vobiscum in acie stabo, nec mei nec hostium exercitus numero. Vos modo animos mihi plenos alacritatis ac fiduciae adhibete. Non in limine operum laborumque nostrorum, sed in exitu, stamus. Pervenimus ad solis ortum et Oceanum; inde victores perdomito fine terrarum revertemur in patriam. Maiora sunt periculis praemia; dives eadem et inbellis regio est. Itaque non tam ad gloriam vos duco quam ad praedam. Per vos gloriamque vestram oro quaesoque, ne humanarum rerum terminos adeuntem alunnum commilitonemque vestrum, ne dicam regem, deseratis. Date hoc precibus meis et tandem obstinatum silentium rumpite. Ubi est ille clamor, alacritatis vestrae index? ubi ille meorum Macedonum vultus? Non agnosco vos, milites; nec agnosci videor a vobis. Surdas iamdudum aures pulso; aversos animos et infractos excitare conor." Cumque illi in terram demissis capitibus tacere perseverarent, "Nescio quid" inquit "in vos imprudens deliqui, quod me ne intueri quidem vultis. In solitudine mihi videor esse desertus; destitutus sum; hostibus deditus. Sed solus quoque ire perseverabo. Scythae Bactrianique erunt mecum, hostes paulo ante nunc milites nostri. Mori praestat quam precario imperatorem esse. Ite reduces domos; ite deserto rege ovantes!"

Ne sic quidem ulli militum vox exprimi potuit. Stabant oribus in terram defixis lacrimisque manantibus. Rex tandem, victus a militibus, redire constituit.

## SECTION 23.

## UT, EXPRESSING A RESULT.

Besides translating "that" when it expresses a purpose, *ut* will also translate it when it expresses a *result*. In other words, *ut* means not only "in order that," but also "so that."

When a "not" followed *ut* meaning "in order that," *ut non* was not to be put, but *ne*. But when *ut* means "so that," *ne* is not used, but *ut non*.

Observe therefore that the English word "that," according to its different meanings, will want different Latin. Of course when "that" is a pronoun, *ille* is the Latin; *ille puer* is "that boy." But besides this the conjunction "that" may in different senses either require the accusative with infinitive, or *ut*, or *ne*.

*Dixit se Gaium vidisse*, He said that he saw Caius (*i.e.* he said, "I saw Caius.")

*Abiit ne Gaium videret*, He went away that he might not see Caius.

*Abiit tam mane ut Gaium non videret*, He went away so early in the morning that he did not see Caius.

(71.)

1. Tanta fuit eius diligentia, ut totum opus brevi tempore confecerit.
2. Non sum tam ignarus, ut nesciam Romam a Romulo conditam esse.



3. Dixit se tot tamque pulchros flores nunquam antea vidisse.
4. Tantus fuit hostium timor, ut tantis copiis tam exiguum manum adoriri non auderent.
5. Casu accidit ut nominis tui interdum obliviscar.
6. Ita factum est, ut non possem tale consilium capere.
7. Qui fit ut totum opus nondum confectum sit?
8. Tantus est numerus librorum vitæque tam brevis est, ut paucos solum legere possimus.
9. Tali consilio capto, cum duabus legionibus statim est profectus.
10. Non te oportet Gaium odisse; tibi enim tot in rebus adfuit.
11. Tecum ibimus ut tantum oratorem audiamus.
12. Romam ivit ut libros manu scriptos videret. Ita fit ut domi non sit.

(72*a*.)

1. I am going that I may see the soldiers and sailors.
2. That is how it comes about that I see neither soldiers nor sailors.
3. He said that he had never seen so many soldiers before.
4. No one is so ignorant that he does not know that the Germans have conquered.
5. The number of the enemy is so great that we cannot conquer.
6. You ought to go that you may not be blamed.
7. It happens by chance that I have not the book.
8. The plan is of such a kind that I cannot praise it.

9. How does it happen that your father is not present?
10. So great is the pain of the wound that he cannot speak.
11. They are reading the book with such diligence that they cannot hear us.
12. They are reading the book with such diligence that they may be praised.

(72b.)

1. So great was his pain that he could not speak.
2. That is how it happened that I determined to return.
3. No one is so ignorant that he believes you.
4. How does it happen that I am not allowed to return home?
5. The life of men is so short that they cannot finish many things.
6. I set out in the morning that I might return in the evening.
7. That is how it happened that you came in my absence.
8. So great was the fear of all that no one dared to speak.
9. These books are of such a kind that I cannot understand them.
10. So great was the number of the boys that the master could not teach all.
11. Nobody is so foolish that he can understand nothing.
12. It happened by chance that nobody opened the windows while you were present.

## SECTION 24.

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(73.)

1. Constat iudicem in ea re deceptum esse.
2. Ego te non novi neque novisse volo.
3. Nonne promisisti te omnia facturum ut tempore venires?
4. Tantus fuit navium numerus, ut adoriri non auderemus.
5. Ne me monueris; novi ego officium meum.
6. Semper sensi filio meo te esse amicum et illum intellexi tibi.
7. Nonne te ire oportuit, ut amicum in hac re adiuveres?
8. Quid ego ex te audio?—Hoc quod res est.
9. Malus bonum malum esse vult, ut sit sui similis.
10. Hominem hominis similiorem nunquam vidi ego alterum.

(74.)

1. It is well known that the judges were deceived.
2. You ought to go at once, that you may come in time.
3. I saw so many boys that I forget their names.
4. I believe that you know your duty.
5. I have always been aware that you were a friend to me.

6. He pretended to understand the book, that he might not be thought foolish.
7. That is how it happened that I did not see your friend.
8. I wish you to be good, that you may be like your father.
9. Why do you pretend that you are foolish? I see that you understand very well.
10. Why did you go to London?—I went to receive the money.

(75.)

1. Ita a pueritia vixi, ut boni me laudarent, culparent mali.
2. Pluit; non tibi hodie licebit in silvas ire; domi manere oportet.
3. Noli patre invito longius progredi.
4. Gravius tuum erit unum verbum quam centum mea.
5. His rebus factis Romam proficiscar ut pecuniam accipiam.
6. Hoc frustra saepe conatus, tam sum fessus ut longius progredi non possim.
7. Me consule vicistis Gallos, cives; illis consulibus victi estis!
8. Dixit puerum non plus sapientiae habere quam lapidem.
9. Quod tuum est meum est, omne meum autem tuum est.
10. Cur negasti te promisisse? non sum tam stultus ut tibi credam.

(76.)

1. When you have done your work, you will be allowed to go into the garden.
2. Where are you going?—I am going to the city to pay the money.
3. They were running to the woods to pick flowers.
4. It is well known that the consul has not conquered.
5. I will bring the boy to you that you may see him.
6. After saying these words he went away to find the book.
7. Some affirm, others deny, that the judge is dead.
8. There are so many boys that the master does not know the names of all.
9. I am not so stupid as to go away in your absence.
10. When I heard this I ran to the harbour to see the ships.

(77.)

1. I remember that you paid all the money.
2. The sailors came back to the harbour to refit their ships.
3. That is how it came about that the soldiers were dismissed.
4. I forgot that you were a boy in my father's lifetime.
5. Having encouraged his soldiers, he ordered them to advance to the mountain.

6. There were so many ships in the harbour that I could not see them all.
7. What will become of me? he has come to bring me bound to Caesar.
8. I was not so foolish as to tell him everything.
9. Why did you pretend that you were not well?—That I might not be punished.
10. What did he say?—He answered that he didn't wish.

(78.)

1. Am I not allowed to send the slave to Rome?
2. I sent the slaves to inform the consul of this matter.
3. You are not allowed to go into the garden with nothing on your head.
4. Ought I not to send the slave to follow the boy?
5. He promised that he would send all the books at once.
6. I will go at once, that I may finish the work.
7. When this news was brought, I ran at once to the camp to tell the soldiers.
8. When does your brother go?—He has determined, I believe, to go to-morrow.
9. After following them for three miles, I came back to the camp.
10. Let us go to his house, lest we may seem to be pretending.

## XX.

*The Death of Alexander.*

Milites, sollicitudine desiderioque eius anxii, quamquam obtestantibus ducibus ne valetudinem regis onerarent, expresserunt ut in conspectum eius admitterentur. Admissi lectum circumstabant fundebantque lacrimas. Rex, cubito innixus et se ad amicos vertens: "Invenietis," inquit, "cum excessero dignum talibus viris regem?" Exercitu dimisso, velut omni vitae debito liberatus, fatigata membra reiecit. Propius adire iussis amicis—nam et vox deficere iam coeperat—detractum anulum digito Perdiccae tradidit, adiectis mandatis ut corpus suum ad Hammonem ferri iuberent. Quaerentibusque his cui relinqueret regnum respondit ei qui esset optimus. Rursus, Perdicca interrogante quando caelestes honores haberi sibi vellet, dixit tum velle cum ipsi felices essent. Suprema haec vox fuit regis et paulo post extinguitur.

## SECTION 25.

## THE INDIRECT QUESTION.

1. Quid est? *What is it?*

Dic quid sit, *Tell me what it is.*

Rogavit quid esset, *He asked what it was.*

Notice that the effect of putting the *dic* and *rogavit* before the question, is to turn the *est* into the subjunctive mood.

2. Num fessus es, *You are not tired, are you?*

Rogavit num fessus essem, *He asked me whether I was tired.*

Notice here that in the second sentence, which is called an indirect question, *num* merely means "whether," and does not, as in real questions, suggest the answer "No."

3. Rogat num heri fessus fuerim, *He asks me whether I was tired yesterday.*

*Fuerim*, not *essem*. The perfect subjunctive (not the imperfect) is used after a present indicative or imperative to translate an English past tense.

(79.)

1. Dic, puer, quot sitis.—Septem sumus.
2. Heus tu, quid agis?—Rogasne quid agam? Nihil ago.
3. Quid! nonne statim abire iussi? satis est verborum, abi.
4. Rogavit me quot flores emissem, quot vendidissem.
5. Haec epistula ita scripta est, ut legere non possem.
6. Ex eo quaesivi quanti haec vendidisset; respondere noluit.
7. Quis tibi hoc dixit?—Ille servus quem ad me misisti.
8. Rogo te quid fuerit officium meum me facere.
9. Quae neque fuerunt neque sunt, illi sciunt.
10. Nescio quid fiat illo puero, nunquam tempore venit.
11. Nonne promisisti te amicum adiuturum?—Promisi, sed nulla mihi occasio data est.
12. Ex eo quaero quoties hoc idem promiserit.



13. Cupit scire num sui oblitus sim ; dixit enim me neque scribere neque ipsum venire.
14. Non possum respondere ad ea quae tu a me quaesivisti.
15. Quid tibi dixit ?—Rogavit me, “ Tune heri Romae fuisti ? ”
16. Non possum tibi dicere quae ipse nescio.
17. Titus, quem heri vidisti, me rogavit num tibi frater maior esset.
18. Hi dicunt quod illi negant ; neque possum tibi scribere quid in illa re factum sit.

(80.)

1. How many are you ? You cannot all go with me.
2. For how much did you buy these things ? — I would rather not say.
3. Tell me how often you have gone to Rome.
4. I ask you whether you sold my property in my absence.
5. He often asked me whether you were well.
6. What did you answer ?—That you were very well.
7. What is it, Titus ?—I ask you where you have put my book.
8. I desire to know whether you have finished the task.
9. I do not know what is to be done with you ; it is not enough to warn you.
10. He asked me whether I had sold all my books.
11. I ask you whether the task has been finished.
12. Tell me how many letters you wrote yesterday.

## (81.)

1. In your absence I don't know what I ought to do.
2. Nobody knows for how much I bought these things.
3. You who were present can say whether he is well.
4. I do not know whether I may sell these things.
5. My brother, who will soon come, will tell you how many there were.
6. Inquire of the general himself whether he has conquered the enemy.
7. He makes the same inquiries as you.
8. Did he not ask whether I were well?
9. You did not answer, did you, that I was well?
10. You surely have not written the letter so that you cannot read it?
11. I asked the boy whether he had ever before seen so big a tree.
12. Then the judge asked, "What is your name?"

## (82.)

1. He inquired of me why I had delayed there.
2. He said that he would not come if I were unwilling.
3. I ask you whether you were distressed at this matter.
4. I answered that I had already given everything back.

5. You surely went away when this news was brought?
6. They asked me what leader I followed.
7. Those boys whom I was following have fled into the woods.
8. The judge asked who I was, where I had come from, and what I had seen.
9. What I have seen I will tell you; what happened in my absence I cannot tell you.
10. Tell me what has happened.
11. He inquired of me why I wrote so many letters.
12. I cannot read all the letters which you wrote to me.

## SECTION 26.

### THE SUPINES.

The two supines in *-um* and *-u* are really verbal nouns of the fourth declension.

1. The supine in *-um* is used after verbs of motion, *eo, venio, mitto*, etc., to express purpose, *e.g. cubitum eo, I go to lie down.*

This supine is so far a verb that, like a verb, it can govern a case: *Eo auxilium oratum, I go to ask help.*

2. The supine in *-u* is used after certain adjectives only; *res foeda visu, a thing shocking to see.*

## (83.)

1. Alii dormitum eunt, alii opus conficiunt.
2. Optimum factu putant dormitum ire.
3. Quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes mittit.
4. Duces hostium ad Caesarem gratulatum venerunt.
5. Mercator dicit omne argentum mihi redditum iri.
6. Num facillimum factu credis milites Romanos vincere ?
7. Ex eo quaesivi num facillimum factu crederet Romanos vincere.
8. Rogavit cur ad eum questum venissent.
9. Haec res non modo visu sed etiam auditu foeda est.
10. Servi veniunt oratum ut liceat sibi dormitum ire.
11. Optimum factu putavi legatos ad Caesarem mittere auxilium rogatum.
12. Maiores natu ad Caesarem legatos miserunt oratum ne se in hostium numero duceret.
13. Spero barbaros a Romanis victum iri.
14. Omnes nescivimus quid optimum factu esset.
15. Alii dicunt, alii negant, Caesarem a Gallis victum iri.

## (84.)

1. I shall go to sleep soon.
2. They ask what is best to be done.
3. He sends one legion to get corn.
4. The boys are coming to offer their congratulations.
5. I hope that the money will be given back.

6. I do not think it a very easy thing to do to conquer the enemy.
  7. Why have you come to me to complain?
  8. The battle was shocking both to hear of and to see.
  9. Ambassadors come to me to ask for help.
  10. I ask you whether you have come to complain.
  11. I did not know what was the best thing to do.
  12. They come to Caesar to beg that he will send help.
- 

## XXI.

*Proverbial Sayings.*

1. Audentes fortuna iuvat. 2. Noli equi dentes inspicere donati. 3. Flamma fumo est proxima. 4. Dum vivis sperare licet. 5. Qualis dominus, talis est servus. 6. Nimia familiaritas parit contemptum. 7. Faber est quisque fortunae suae. 8. Pares cum paribus facillime congregantur. 9. Male parta male dilabuntur. 10. Summum ius summa iniuria. 11. Nemo scit praeter me ubi me soccus premat. 12. Formosa facies muta commendatio est. 13. Ubicunque dulce est et acidum invenies. 14. Ego spem pretio non emo. 15. Ne supra crepidam sutor iudicet. 16. Tunica propior pallio est. 17. Suus rex reginae placet. 18. Turbari sine ventis non solet aequor. 19. Altissima quaeque flumina minimo sono labuntur. 20. Non convalescit planta quae saepe transfertur. 21. Qui edere vult nucleum frangat nucem. 22. Non terrae ferre omnes omnia possunt. 23. Navem perforas in qua ipse navigas.

24. Labor omnia vincit. 25. Si vis amari ama.  
26. Discipulus est prioris posterior dies. 27. Nullus  
agenti dies longus est. 28. Quod in iuventute non  
discitur in matura aetate nescitur. 29. Amicus certus  
in re incerta cernitur. 30. Deligere oportet quem  
velis diligere. 31. Proba merx facile emptorem  
reperit. 32. Quod non opus est asse carum est. 33.  
Quod tibi deerit a te ipse mutuare. 34. Pluris est  
oculatus testis unus quam auriti decem.

35. Stultum facit fortuna quem vult perdere. 36.  
Quem di diligunt adulescens moritur. 37. Ignis  
aurum probat, miseria fortes viros. 38. Ingenium  
mala saepe movent. 39. Insperata accidunt magis  
saepe quam quae speres. 40. Semper bonus homo  
tiro est.

41. Quantum habes tantus eris; habes, habeberis.  
42. Nulli nisi ex alterius damno quaestus est. 43.  
Dives aut iniquus aut iniqui heres. 44. Vestis virum  
reddit. 45. Plus oportet servum scire quam loqui.  
46. Magister erat artis venter. 47. Pecuniam in loco  
negligere maximum interdum est lucrum. 48. Fis-  
tula dulce canit volucrum dum decipit auceps. 49.  
Ubi amici ibidem sunt opes. 50. Obsequium amicos,  
veritas odium, parit. 51. Ita amicum habeas, posse ut  
facile fieri hunc inimicum putes. 52. Di nos quasi  
pilas homines habent.

## SECTION 27.

## THE GERUND.

Gen. Amandi, *of loving*.

Dat. and Abl. Amando, *for, or, by loving*.

Acc. Amandum, *loving*.

The gerund, like the supine, is a verbal noun ; that is to say, is partly a noun, partly a verb. As noun it depends on another noun : Ars scribendi, *the art of writing* ; as verb it governs a case : Ars scribendi epistulam, *the art of writing a letter*.

The nominative of this noun is supplied by the infinitive : Scribere est difficile, *writing is difficult*. The dative is used after certain adjectives mainly ; the accusative is used only with prepositions, chiefly *ad*.

(85.)

1. Milites frumentandi causa in fines hostium missi sunt.
2. Frustra hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit.
3. Quaesivit num legatos mittendi potestatem fecisset.
4. Non oratum sed querendi causa venimus.
5. Dic mihi num tempestas ad navigandum sit idonea.
6. Nulla hostibus arma capiendi occasio data est.
7. Alii gratulatum, alii questum, venerunt.
8. Duae legiones Rhenum transierunt ut in his locis hiemarent.

9. Unam legionem in his locis hiemandi causa collocavit.
10. Haec atque alia talia locutus finem orandi fecit.
11. Quaero num finem orandi facturi sint.
12. Naves ad navigandum tam inutiles sunt ut transire non possimus.
13. Barbari Rhenum transierunt. Causa transeundi fuit quod ab hostibus premebantur.
14. Reperiebat in quaerendo initium fugae a militibus tertiae legionis factum esse.
15. Loco castris idoneo capto, milites duarum legionum frumentandi causa in fines hostium mittit.

(86a.)

1. The soldiers went for the sake of getting corn.
2. I have often offered the enemy battle.
3. The weather was not suitable for sailing.
4. We have come to complain, and not for the purpose of making a request.
5. I will give them permission to send ambassadors.
6. The ships were unfit for sailing.
7. I will ask them whether they have come for the purpose of passing the winter.
8. He asked what was the cause of the sending.
9. Is no opportunity given of taking arms?
10. Of the ships, some are ready, others are useless for sailing.

(86b.)

1. Caesar had made a beginning of dismissing the soldiers.



2. Did you not go to Rome for the sake of paying the money?
3. When will you make an end of waging war, soldiers?
4. They say that the weather is suitable for sailing.
5. Ask whether they have come to complain.
6. No opportunity was given me of finishing the work.
7. When will you make an end of talking?
8. The third legion started the rout.
9. They have gone to the plain for the sake of wintering there.
10. We did not give the enemy a chance of taking arms.

## SECTION 28.

### THE GERUNDIVE FOR THE GERUND.

Instead of writing—

Labor opus conficiendi, *the toil of finishing the work*, it is more usual to write—

Labor operis conficiendi, with the same meaning; that is to say, the adjective, called the gerundive, is used in the place of the noun, called the gerund, when the verb governs the accusative.

(87.)

1. Consilium urbem capiendi inibimus.
2. His rebus factis consilium urbis capiendae ineunt.
3. Te duce parati sumus ad arma capienda.

4. Hoc consilio inito nihil spatii hostibus ad arma capienda dedimus.
5. Ille dies flumini transeundo dictus est.
6. Non inutilem ad opus conficiendum hanc tempestatem puto.
7. Neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatium datum est.
8. Nullum spatium ad se colligendos armandosque Romanis dabatur.
9. Ventus idoneus est; optima navigandi occasio datur.
10. Neque lignandi neque aquandi neque naves ad terram religandi potestas fiebat.
11. Initio belli gerendi facto non nos oportet legatos pacis orandae causa mittere.
12. Gratulatum venimus.—Gratias ago, sed non novi qui sitis.

(88a.)

1. Will you adopt a resolution of taking the city?
2. I will give you an opportunity of finishing the work.
3. The ship is ready for sailing and the wind is suitable.
4. We gave the enemy no time for taking arms.
5. Who told you that a bridge had been made?
6. Having adopted this resolution, they crossed the river.
7. No time was given us for sending ambassadors.
8. That day has been appointed for going.
9. They will have made a beginning of pitching a camp.
10. I will ask them whether they have come for the purpose of making a bridge.

(88b.)

1. We are ready for reading the book.
2. They promise that they will be ready for taking up arms.
3. They have formed the resolution of taking the city.
4. The sailors have come to the harbour for the sake of refitting their ships.
5. Having left their baggage, they advanced for the sake of taking the camp.
6. I had forgotten that you came for the sake of seeing the city.
7. At last they make an end of asking for peace.
8. I came to London for the sake of buying books.
9. How many books have you bought?—I have bought two to give my brother.
10. They have formed the plan of crossing the river in order to attack the enemy in the rear.

## SECTION 29

## THE GERUNDIVE.

Besides doing duty for the gerund, the gerundive has another use. It is passive, and expresses that something *should* or *must* be done.

Pecunia reddenda est, *The money must be returned.*

Notice that with the gerundive the dative is used

generally instead of the ablative, with *ab*, to express the agent: *Hoc mihi faciendum est*, *This must be done by me*; *I must do this*. (The dative should be avoided if its use would make the meaning doubtful. In "*pecunia mihi reddenda est*," does the *mihi* mean *to me* or *by me*? If the latter say rather *a me*.)

## (89.)

1. Nonne saepe iam dixi haec cras reddenda esse?
2. Pueri saepe ad maiorem diligentiam incitandi sunt.
3. Dumnorix summam in spem venerat regni obtinendi.
4. Dumnorix putavit regnum sibi obtinendum esse.
5. Nihil est homini tam timendum quam invidia.
6. Quot epistolae mihi scribendae sint nescio.
7. Intellegimus naves nobis reficiendas esse.
8. Accidit ut omnes naves nobis reficiendae essent.
9. Domus mihi relinquenda est quam ipse tanta cura tanto sumptu aedificavi.
10. Magnam in spem venerat naves sine sumptu reficiendi.
11. Hostes vobis neque sine causa timendi neque sine causa contemnendi sunt.
12. Quid tibi a me dicendum sit nescio.
13. Bellum ita gerendum est ut hostes intellegant se victos esse.
14. Tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt quantum fuit diei spatium.
15. Naves reficiendas curat ut sine periculo navigent.

## (90a.)

1. The money must be given back to-day.
2. The house must be built at small cost.
3. The books should be put on the table.
4. I must write this letter at once.
5. You must repair your ship with very great care.
6. I have great hopes of seeing you soon.
7. The prisoners must be bound and sent to Caesar.
8. You must move nothing against my will.
9. Justice ought to be preferred by everybody to money.
10. The soldiers must be put on board ship.

## (90b.)

1. You must return the book to-morrow.
2. We must buy some books to give the slaves.
3. We must leave our house and sell everything.
4. Why did you form the resolve of selling your house ?
5. We must conquer the enemy in one battle.
6. Pain must be borne patiently by us all.
7. You must find the book which you have lost.
8. Shouts should be raised. We have conquered !
9. May I not go into the garden for the sake of seeing the flowers ?
10. The weather is suitable for sailing. The ships must be brought down to the shore.

## SECTION 30.

THE GERUNDIVE—(*Continued*).

Verbs which govern a dative only are used impersonally in the passive—

Credo tibi, *I believe you.*

Tibi a me creditur, *You are believed by me.*

This of course also applies to the gerundive—

Tibi non est credendum, *One must not believe you.*

(91.)

1. Cur ei credidisti? talibus hominibus non est credendum.
2. Milites non poterant adduci ut hostibus parcerent.
3. Quis nescit hostibus parcendum esse?
4. Respondetur mihi ne infantibus quidem parcendum esse.
5. Quid ei rescripsisti?—Me ei semper fauturum esse.
6. Dixit orator rebus Caesaris ab omnibus bonis favendum esse.
7. Ad urbem eundum est, ut hos libros emamus, illos vendamus.
8. Adeundae Syriae consilium deposuimus.
9. Pontem in Rheno faciendum curavit ut omnis exercitus transiret.
10. Omnia militibus in castris relinquenda sunt ne in itinere impediantur.
11. Alii Pompeio, Caesari alii, favendum esse dicunt.

12. Ducentas naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curaverat.
13. Dixit hoc facile factu esse : ei non est credendum.
14. Hostibus parcendum est, ne ab omnibus bonis culpemur.
15. Neque mihi neque tibi a iudicibus favendum est.
16. Tanto itinere paucis diebus confecto fessi sumus.
17. Non modo mulieribus sed ne infantibus quidem a vobis, milites, parcendum est.
18. Rogavit num omnes copiae in campum deducendae essent.

(92.)

1. One must not believe everybody.
2. One must spare the soldiers.
3. Cicero favoured the cause of Pompeius.
4. We must go to the harbour to see the ships.
5. Have you given up the idea of going to Italy ?
6. Judges should favour nobody.
7. Everybody says that the baggage ought to be left in the camp.
8. Do you ask whether Caesar ought to be believed ?
9. You must go to Rome to see the books.
10. Neither Caesar nor Pompeius should be believed. .
11. I must favour neither you nor your friends.
12. The general said that we must spare neither old men nor young children.

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(93.)

1. Non tibi licet patre invito diutius in urbe morari.
2. Non me fefellit opinio mea; Caesar Pompeium vicit.
3. Ex servo quaeram num domi sit mater tua.
4. Fenestra aperta, hos libros in mensam impone.
5. Hunc tibi librum do ut mei semper memineris.
6. Ego illud nomen ante hunc diem nunquam audiui.
7. Duos pontes in flumine faciendos curaverat.
8. Non possumus hodie ad te venire, nam pluit: cras veniemus.
9. Tantam navem ego hodie in portu vidi quantam antea nunquam videram.
10. His dictis ex me quaesivit num opus confectum esset.
11. Librorum legendorum causa te in hortum ire iussi.
12. Quaerenti mihi num pater rediisset respondit eum cras venturum esse.
13. Quis crederet eum aurum odisse?—Num ita dicit?
14. Omnes, ut fit, negaverunt se victos esse.
15. Quid me fiet? Tantum dolorem non possum ferre.

(94.)

1. They went to London in the morning and returned in the evening.
2. I do not know how many books there are on the table.
3. When you have done this, you ought to help your friend.



4. He promises that he will come every day.
5. It so came about that the enemy did not attack us.
6. He went away to inform the consuls of these matters.
7. Did you not promise?—You ask whether I promised; I promised nothing.
8. Do you not remember that I often warned you?—I had forgotten.
9. An opportunity having been given them, they set out for the country.
10. The rest complained that no opportunity was given them.
11. The weather is such that the ships cannot put out.
12. You are not allowed to go to the city in the absence of your father.

(95.)

1. Quanti domum vendidisti?—Non tanti quanti emi.
2. Germanico bello confecto multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum.
3. Intellexerunt Germani et posse et audere populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire.
4. His rebus cognitis a captivis Caesar praemisso equitatu legiones sequi iussit.
5. Non novi viam.—Docebo, tribus horis poteris Londinium venire.
6. Ad vastandos hostium fines profectus intellegit iam vastatos esse.
7. Me iudice non est idonea ad navigandum tempestas.

8. Die constituto omnes venerunt, ne se absentibus concilium haberetur.
9. Nulla nobis proficiscendi occasio data est.
10. Consulum alter ab hostibus interfectus est, alter captus est.
11. Unam legionem ad Rhenum misit, ne se invito Germani transire conarentur.
12. Tantus fuit timor omnium ut non auderent longius progredi.
13. Quaerentibus nobis num Galli victi essent respondit eos neque vicisse neque victos esse.
14. Ita factum est ut nobis non sentientibus hostes transirent.
15. Abeuntibus pueris pecuniam dedit pater, ut libros emerent.

(96.)

1. For how much will you sell that book?—For as much as I bought it.
2. I determined for many reasons that I must cross the river.
3. When I heard these facts from you, I started for London at once.
4. The ships, I believe, are not ready for sailing.
5. Why do you ask me whether all things are ready?
6. If you are unwilling I will not go to-day.
7. That is how it happened that I forgot.
8. So great was his fear that he did not dare to answer.
9. When the war was finished all the soldiers were dismissed.

10. They said that the labour of making the bridge was very great.
11. Who asked you whether I were well?—All your friends asked me.
12. The river must be crossed at once, lest the enemy attack us.

(97.)

1. Satis verborum est : cura quae iussi atque abi.
2. Habe modo bonum animum ; mater mox redibit.
3. Moneo saepius te ut memineris : semper oblivisceris.
4. Veni huc, nam sunt quae ego ex te solo quaerere volo.
5. Est Deus qui quae nos gerimus auditque et videt.
6. Optimum atque acquissimum oras, optimusque hominum es homo.
7. Pater (scio) faciet quae illum facere oportet omnia.
8. Iste eum esse ait qui non est et esse qui vero est negat.
9. Ego tam sum servus quam tu, etsi ego domi liber fui.
10. Memini te id nolle fieri.—Te meminisse id gratum est mihi.
11. Iube ingentem ignem fieri.—Ut vis fiat.
12. Sed dic, oro te, pater meus tune es?—Ego sum, nate mi.
13. Illum puerum e conspectu abducite. Faciam ut huius diei locique meique semper meminerit.
14. Captivus avis ferae similis est ; semel fugiendi si data est occasio | satis est.
15. Tum denique homines nostra intellegimus bona, cum quae in potestate habuimus ea amisimus.

## (98.)

1. Have you seen my brother? He promised that he would come to-day.
2. He inquired of me whether I had seen his brother. I answered that I had not seen him.
3. Let us now return home, lest our friends come in our absence.
4. The queen went away so quickly that we could not see her.
5. Having left our baggage at Rome, we came to Naples.
6. The Germans, after attacking our men, returned to the camp.
7. May I open the window, father?
8. Will the boy do all the things he ought to?
9. These matters are not to be entrusted to boys.
10. Do you not remember that you promised this yesterday?
11. In my judgment this money ought to be paid to-day.
12. Not by Caesar only, but by Pompeius also should their armies be dismissed.

## (99.)

1. "Shut your gates," said Diogenes to the Myndians, "lest your city go out of them."
2. When asked why I alone was silent, I answered that I was absorbed in my thoughts.
3. When I had been shaved I asked the barber how much I ought to give him.

4. He asked me whether I had seen the orator in the city.
5. Have you forgotten that you were once a boy?
6. Alarmed by the dream I got up. I saw nothing.
7. I asked him what he had in the waggon.
8. On the way, as generally happens, they got into conversation.
9. The landlord called out that a man had been murdered.
10. I do not recognise you, my soldiers; nor do I seem to be recognised by you.
11. They asked to whom he left the kingdom.
12. After dismissing the army he bade his friends come nearer.

(100.)

1. Alas! miserable man that I am, I cannot pay.
2. You do nothing but play all day.
3. He asked me whether I was in good health. I answered, "While there is life there is hope."
4. He said that labour conquers everything.
5. And so it happened that I was not present.
6. Not all lands can bear everything.
7. When I asked when he wished to return he replied, "Never."
8. A slave ought to know more than he says.
9. A man was murdered in an inn by the landlord.
10. Having murdered the man, the landlord accused another.
11. Necessity is the mother of invention.
12. There is no rose without a thorn.

## XXII.

*Paedagogus—Puer.*

*Paed.* Puerum ingenuum decent ingenui mores. Quoties adloquitur te quispiam cui debes honorem, aperi caput, sint oculi intenti in eum cui loqueris, iuncti pedes, quietae manus. Nunc age specimen aliquod huius rei nobis praebe. Quantum temporis afuisti a maternis aedibus?

*Puer.* Iam sex ferme menses.

*Paed.* Addendum erat "domine."

*Puer.* Iam sex ferme menses, domine.

*Paed.* Nonne cupis matrem revisere?

*Puer.* Cupio, domine, si id pace liceat tua.

*Paed.* Nunc flectendum erat genu. Bene habet. In convivio autem postremus omnium admoveto manum patinae. Si quid datur lautius, recusato modeste; si instabitur, accipe, et adde gratias. Si non sitis, tamen admoveto cyathum labiis. Arride loquentibus; ipse ne quid locutus sis nisi rogatus. Si videris convivium esse prolixius, precatus veniam ac salutatis convivis, subducito te a mensa. Vide ut horum memineris.

*Puer.* Dabitur opera, mi praeceptor. Num quid aliud vis?

*Paed.* Adito nunc libros tuos.

*Puer.* Fiet.

## XXIII.

*An Adventure.*

Balbus et Gaius, qui, pueri pessimi et audaces, mane aufugerant domo, nocte in deversorio rustico dormiebant. Media autem nocte in cubiculo proximo magnum audiverunt sonitum hominis in terram graviter cadentis gemitusque, et fragorem vitreorum fractorum. Pueri (neque mirandum!) multum timebant. At mox sub foribus, quae inter duo cubicula erant, rubrum aliquid lente adfluere viderunt, luna enim clara fuit, vestemque, quam (ut faciunt pueri) temere humi huc illuc deiecerunt, iam attingere. "Sanguis hic est," dixit Balbus, "manifestum est occisum esse hominem." "Quis dubitare potest?" respondit Gaius, "sed nos, pueri miserrimi, cur domo aufugimus? Quid nobis nunc faciendum est? Si enim hic manserimus, ipsi huius facti rei erimus. Quid! nonne vestis sanguine illius hominis maculata est? Prima utique luce hinc quam celerrime, pecunia soluta, properandum est, si modo fieri potest."

Mane tamen, dum pecuniam solvunt, venit servus nuntiatque cauponi decidisse noctu de lecto eum qui in illo cubiculo dormiebat amphoramque rubri plenam medicamenti fregisse. Pueri fugitivi, magno liberati timore, domum redeunt, veniam precaturi.

## SECTION 31.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

We saw (on p. 56) that in translating such a sentence as "He sent them to see the city," care must be taken to use the right tense of the subjunctive. One must write "*Misit eos ut urbem viderent*," just as one would say in English "He sent them that they *might* see the city," not "that they *may* see the city." In sentences like this, that is to say, in sentences which express a purpose, the English will guide you. But in many sentences the English will not show you which tense of the subjunctive to use. Take as an instance, "I ask who was the general"; if we write "*Rogo quis esset imperator*," we write a sentence which, though intelligible, would have sounded strange to Roman ears. A Roman would have written "*Rogo quis fuerit imperator*." The following table shows how the tenses of the subjunctive were generally used in Latin:—

|                     |   |       |   |                      |
|---------------------|---|-------|---|----------------------|
| After an indicative | } | write | { | either               |
| present             |   |       |   | present subjunctive  |
| or                  |   |       |   | or                   |
| future              |   |       |   | perfect subjunctive. |

(The sense will show whether the present or the perfect subjunctive is the right tense : compare examples 1 and 2.)

|                         |   |       |   |                         |
|-------------------------|---|-------|---|-------------------------|
| After any               | } | write | { | either                  |
| past tense of the       |   |       |   | imperfect subjunctive   |
| indicative <sup>1</sup> |   |       |   | or                      |
|                         |   |       |   | pluperfect subjunctive. |

---

<sup>1</sup> The past tenses of the indicative are the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. The perfect when translated "I *have* sent" (not "I



(The sense will show whether the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is the right tense : compare examples 6 and 7.)

Examples :—

1. Rogo quis sis, *I ask who you are.*
2. Rogo quid feceris, *I ask what you have done, or, what you did.*
3. Rogabo quis fuerit, *I will ask who it was.*
4. Tanta erat multitudo hostium, ut nostri pugnare non auderent, *So great was the number of the enemy that our men did not dare to fight.*
5. Haec dixit ne stultus videretur, *He said this that he might not seem foolish.*
6. Rogaverat quid faceres, *He had asked what you were doing.*
7. Rogabat quid fecissem, *He was asking me what I had done.*

#### COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS.

1. Commands may be rendered in Latin as in English by the imperative mood.

*Tell me, Dic mihi.*

*Write the letter, Scribe epistulam.*

sent") is really a present tense, for it means "I have *now* done it." When it has this meaning it may be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive : for instance, *Misi eos ut urbem videant*, "I have sent them that they *may* see the city." But as the imperfect subjunctive is usually employed even in such sentences, we may treat the perfect as if it were always a past tense.

2. Prohibitions.—“Don’t write” is [*not* “Ne scribe,” but] either (1) “Noli scribere” (*noli*, imperative of *nolo*), or (2) “Ne scripseris” (perf. subj.)

## (101.)

1. Redeundum est ut ad tempus veniamus.
2. Oportuit nos abire ne ab hostibus caperemur.
3. Me iudice, non rogandus est num in Gallia vixerit.
4. Me absente, rogatus est num Lutetiae vixisset.
5. Rogabimus hominem num navem incenderit.
6. Scire volumus num orator esses.
7. Rogabimus quot homines occisi sint.
8. His rebus cognitis rogavimus num in eadem sententia maneret.
9. Flumen transiit ut imperatorem de fuga Gallorum certiore faceret.
10. Gallis pugnandi potestatem faciemus ne flumen transire possint.
11. Aperienda est fenestra ut imperatorem videamus.
12. Dic mihi num domi heri manseris. Noli simulare te oblitum esse.
13. Simulaverunt se valere ut matrem deciperent.
14. Pauperes venerunt petitum cibum, quem promiseramus.
15. Obsides dabimus ut domum redeamus. Obsidibus datis, licebit omnibus abire.

## (102.)

1. I stayed at home to finish my letter.

2. Having finished my letter I went into the garden to gather flowers.
3. I will ask him whether he paid the money.
4. The weather was such that I could not sleep.
5. In my father's absence I went to London to buy the book.
6. Tell me who bought the house.—I could not sell it.
7. All the men were so poor that they could not buy wine.
8. I want to know who opened the window. Don't pretend that you don't know.
9. Having set out at daybreak, he returned in the evening to inform the king that the army was conquered.
10. Tell me whether you are allowed to come with us.
11. I preferred to ask him whether he had answered.
12. Having advanced into the territory of the enemy, he pitched his camp.
13. I desire to know which of the (two) brothers you saw.
14. They are so lazy that they have not finished their verses.
15. May I ask him how many soldiers he has ?

(103.)

1. Clamores sustulimus, ut vos adiuuaremus.
2. Cives clamores tollunt ut regem terreant.
3. Rogo te quis sis, cur in nostram urbem veneris.
4. Scire volumus num imperator valeret, num Haeduos vicisset.

5. Tantum est frigus in hoc monte ut nulli flores crescere possint.
6. Tantus erat noster exercitus ut hostes venirent petitem pacem.
7. Quinta hora abiit ut patrem videret.
8. Opere confecto in urbem ibimus ut amicos videamus.
9. Noli pigram vitam agere, ne cives te contemnant.
10. Rogavit milites cur Gallos timerent.
11. Prima luce proficiscendum est, ut ad flumen vesperi perveniamus.
12. Num rogas cur te absente proelium commiserim ?
13. Speravi milites me duce victuros esse.
14. Hoc feci ut a civibus laudarer.
15. Ut a militibus ametur, laudat hominem quem odit.
16. Rogabo eum num mei meminerit.

(104.)

1. I want to know who fled to the hills.
2. He pretended that he was leading an honourable life that he might be praised.
3. I asked him whether the weather was fit for sailing.
4. He said that he did not know whether it was raining.
5. We will open the window that we may see the ships.
6. We went into the garden to pick the flowers.
7. The flowers are so beautiful that I am unwilling to pick them.

8. May I ask the king how many soldiers are besieging the town ?
9. Tell me whom you are expecting.
10. I am asking every one who has lost this sum of money.
11. I will ask them when they set out.
12. Having set out to lay waste the country they were slain by the enemy.
13. I want to know whether you recognised the king.
14. We have not seen<sup>1</sup> the man who promised that he would pay us.
15. Tell me who promised money to you.—The general promised, whom you saw in the camp.

(105.)

1. You must spare the captives that they may give you information about the affairs of the enemy.
2. The orator said that all men preferred money to virtue.
3. The letter should be written now that you may be allowed to depart in the evening.
4. Having pitched his camp he sent a messenger to the town to ask for corn.
5. Having advanced three miles the messenger was bound by the enemy.
6. That the enemy might offer us battle we pretended that we had no horses.
7. Tell me what you said. Did you not promise help ?

<sup>1</sup> For "the man who" write *cum qui* (= "him who").

8. I followed that I might hear the conversation of the men.
9. Having lost my baggage I crossed the river for the purpose of buying food.
10. The men who ruled the land asked me who I was, what I desired.
11. We wish to know why you set out alone.
12. The shouts were so great that I could not hear your voice.
13. We will go away at daybreak that we may not lose the opportunity of sailing.

(106.)

1. Do you ask me what I wish to do in the city ?
2. I want to know where she was killed.
3. Tell me why you set out in the evening.
4. Did you ask the general what was to be done ?
5. I will ask the man why he hates me.
6. The messengers crossed the river that they might inform the Haedui of Caesar's arrival.
7. Tell me what you wrote in your letter.
8. In the letter, which you lost, I said that my sister was well.
9. He asked me whether I wished to read the book.
10. I want to know where your friend lives.
11. He lives in the city which we saw yesterday.
12. The river was so big that we could not cross it.
13. I came to seek the book which my father gave me.

14. Have you not seen it?—I do not know where it is.
15. He is so lazy that he never takes exercise.
16. Having vainly tried to escape, he was taken by the cavalry of the enemy.

## SECTION 32.

### THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE: TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE.

1. *He promises to come*, Promittit se venturum (esse<sup>1</sup>).
2. *I hope to remain at Rome*, Spero me Romae mansurum (esse<sup>1</sup>).
3. *I hope that the queen will believe you*, Spero reginam tibi credituram (esse<sup>1</sup>).

*Promitto*, "I promise," as it refers to future time, is always followed by the future infinitive in Latin. *Spero*, "I hope," is followed by the future infinitive when it refers to the future.<sup>2</sup>

The subject to the infinitive must always be expressed

---

<sup>1</sup> *Esse* may be omitted.

<sup>2</sup> But, of course, one may write *Spero te domi esse*, "I hope you are at home (now)," for the sense is "I hope that you are *at this moment* at home." Compare with this sentence 2 above—"I hope to remain at Rome," which means "I hope that I shall *in the time that is coming* remain at Rome." *Spero* may also be followed by a perfect infinitive if the sense requires it: "I hope that you have now returned," *Spero te iam rediisse*.

in the Latin: do not write *Promitto venturum* for "I promise to come," but *Promitto me venturum*, "I promise that I am about to come." The participle agrees with its subject: "She promises to come," *Promittit se venturam esse*. "The girls promise to come," *Puellae promittunt se venturas esse*.

(107.)

1. *Promittit se in Galliam profecturum: sperat se Haeduos victurum.*
2. *Promittisne te facturum esse ea quae ego iubeo? Faciam si potero.*
3. *Victus promisit se ab urbe abiturum, neque unquam rediturum.*
4. *Num speras nos tibi credituros?*
5. *Regina sperat se hostes victuram.*
6. *Exercitu victo, dux hostium promisit se viginti obsides daturum.*
7. *Spero me fratrem tuum adiuturum.*
8. *Si me rogabis quid sperem, respondebo me sperare Gallos victum iri.*
9. *His de rebus certior factus, promisit se celeriter profecturum.*
10. *Rogo te nonne promiseris te longam epistulam scripturum?*
11. *Dux speravit se hostes vincere posse.*<sup>1</sup>
12. *Rogatus num iudicem novisset, nihil respondit.*

<sup>1</sup> Note that the present infin. of *possum* is used because there is no future infinitive.



(108.)

1. I hope to come to Rome to-morrow that I may see you.
2. Did you promise to stay at home?
3. I hope that you will soon see your father: your brothers say that the old man is well.
4. In my absence Labienus promised to lead the tenth legion to Rome.
5. I hope that he will conquer. I think that he will be conquered.
6. What do you hope to see in London?
7. I hope to see the queen, whom my brother saw yesterday.
8. My brother has promised to write a poem: my sister has promised to read the book.
9. Tell me whom you expect.—I have promised to say nothing. I am not allowed to tell you the name.
10. <sup>1</sup> Did you hope that the king would believe you? Did you think that the queen would give you money?
11. Ought we to believe the messenger? Do you think that the prisoner ought to be bound?
12. I hope to be able<sup>2</sup> to repair your ship.
13. Why do you ask me what I am doing?

<sup>1</sup> Use *num* in a question whenever the answer "No" seems to be expected.

<sup>2</sup> *Possum* has no fut. inf.: see note to last exercise.

## SECTION 33.

## THE FUTURE INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

1. Spero te hos libros lecturum esse, *I hope that you will read these books.*
2. Spero fore (or futurum esse) ut multa discas, *I hope that you will learn much.*

The future infinitive active is generally made up, as in sentence 1 above, of the future participle and the infinitive of the verb *sum*. Some verbs, however, have no future participle, and then the future infinitive must be made up in the way shown in sentence 2: this sentence might be translated literally, "I hope that it will happen that you learn much." *Futurum esse* is impersonal, and will not change in gender or number:—

*I hope that we shall learn much, Spero futurum esse ut multa discamus.*

In doing the exercises use this second form of the future infinitive with verbs that have no future participle; and use the more common form of the future infinitive (shown in sentence 1 above) with other verbs.<sup>1</sup>

(109.)

1. Pater speravit fore ut multa discerem.

<sup>1</sup> The more advanced student should, however, note that, even when a verb has a future participle, *fore ut* with subjunctive is often used. Sentence 1 above might be rendered *Spero fore ut hos libros legas.*

2. Nuntiatum est Caesari futurum esse ut Galli pacem poscerent.
3. Promitto me tuos libros cras redditurum.
4. Nonne filius dixit se hodie redditurum? Num rediit?
5. Medicus dicit futurum esse ut ex morbo convalescam.
6. Gaius, puer audacissimus, negat fore ut canem timeat.
7. Rogavit me nonne promissem me servos liberaturum.
8. Dicit futurum esse ut Caesar in Hispania hiemare velit.
9. Speramus milites, bello ante hiemem confecto, reddituros.
10. Sperabam fore ut mihi liceret ad captivum adire.
11. Spero fore ut tuum librum legere<sup>1</sup> possim.
12. Promitto me milites summa diligentia hortaturum ut fortiter pugnent.
13. Nonne omnibus moriendum est? Num putas te nunquam moriturum? Non puto fore ut convalescas.

(110.)

The following verbs have no future participle: *convalesco*, "I recover"; *volo*; *nolo*; *possum*; *disco*, "I learn."

1. He told me that the boy would recover.
2. The prisoner informed us that the Gauls would be willing to fight.

<sup>1</sup> We have seen (p. 114, note) that the present infinitive of *possum* is often used instead of the future. If, however, *posse* would not make the meaning clear *fore ut* is used.

3. He does not hope, does he, that he will receive a large sum of money?
4. The general says that he will lay waste the territory of the enemy.
5. Will you not promise to be a friend to me?
6. They say that he will be unwilling to pay the money.
7. You say that you cannot come to-day. I hope that you will be able to come to-morrow.
8. We hope to learn much from<sup>1</sup> the philosopher.
9. Have you asked him whether he has promised to help the citizens?
10. Now<sup>2</sup> that hostages have been given, Caesar ought to spare the citizens.
11. He has received a severe wound. I do not think he will recover.
12. He says he has no money. I hope that he will soon be able to pay.
13. The soldier hopes that the enemy will be unwilling to give battle.

## SECTION 34.

### THE FUTURE INFINITIVE PASSIVE.

*He said that hostages would be given back, (1) Dixit fore (or futurum esse) ut obsides redderentur, or (2) Dixit obsides redditum iri.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Use the preposition *a*.

<sup>2</sup> Omit "now": use a participle.

There are two ways of forming a future infinitive passive: (1) is the commoner, but (2) is also often used.

(1) if translated literally means, "He said that it would happen that hostages should be given."

(2) The meaning of *redditum iri* is a little more difficult to understand. *Redditum* is the supine. This supine in *-um* is used (as we saw, p. 85) after verbs of motion to express purpose. For instance, *Imus redditum obsides* means "We go to return the hostages." The verb *eo* is used impersonally in the passive; *itur* means "It is being gone," "A journey is being made," "People are going." Therefore *Itur redditum obsides* means "People are going to return the hostages." This may be put into the infinitive:—

Dixit iri redditum obsides, *He said that people were going to return the hostages*, or, *He said that the hostages would be returned.*

Remember that *redditum* is the supine, not the perfect participle, and never changes.

(111.)

1. Nonne legati ad castra eunt rogatum pacem?
2. Itur ad urbem Haeduorum rogatum pacem.
- 3a. Dux hostium dixit pacem rogatum iri.
- 3b. Dux hostium dixit fore ut pax rogaretur.
- 4a. Putasne fore ut incendatur oppidum?
- 4b. Putasne oppidum incensum iri?
5. Ventum erat<sup>1</sup> ad urbem quaesitum iudicem.
- 6a. Certior factus sum iudicem quaesitum iri.

<sup>1</sup> *Ventum erat*, impersonal; literally, "It had been come," "People had come."

- 6b. Certior factus sum fore ut iudex quaereretur.  
7a. Spero me ab amicis adiutum iri.  
7b. Spero fore ut ab amicis adiuver.  
8a. Orator dixit fore ut omnes Romani ex Galliae finibus pellerentur.  
8b. Orator dixit omnes Romanos ex Galliae finibus pulsum iri.  
9a. Quis putavit me accusatum iri ?  
9b. Quis putavit fore ut ego accusarer ?  
10a. Rogavi imperatorem num putaret Gallos facile victum iri.  
10b. Rogavi imperatorem num putaret futurum esse ut Galli facile vincerentur.  
11a. Rogo te nonne putaveris obsides redditum iri.  
11b. Rogo te nonne putaveris futurum esse ut obsides reddantur.  
12a. Nauta me certiozem fecit cras solutum iri navem.  
12b. Nauta me certiozem fecit fore ut navis cras solveretur.

(112.)

(In this exercise each sentence is to be done in two different ways, as in the last exercise.)

1. The king said that the enemy would be driven out of the land.
2. He thinks that Carthage will be besieged by the Romans.
3. The soldiers hoped that they would be led by Caesar.

4. He said that, when the king was dead,<sup>1</sup> cries would be raised by all the citizens.
5. He said that the captives would be bound in order that they might be led to the general.
6. I hope that the town will be taken to-morrow.
7. All men believe that you will be put to death.
8. I was informed that the book would be turned into Latin by a very learned man.
9. I asked him whether he thought that the slaves would be set free.
10. Do you think that we shall be informed of the king's plans?
11. You did not think, did you, that the hill would be seized by the Haedui?
12. Do you think that you will be understood by your friends?

## SECTION 35.

### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

*Notes.*—In the nine following exercises pay special attention to the following points:—

1. Put the subjunctive in the indirect question.
2. When using the accusative and infinitive, put the right tense of the infinitive:

(a) *Caius said that he was reading the book.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Abl. abs.

Gaius dixit se librum lēgere (present infin.)

[Caius said, Lēgo librum, *I am reading the book.*]

(b) *Caius said that he had read the book.*

Gaius dixit se librum lēgisse (perfect infin.)

[Caius said, Lēgi librum, *I have read the book.*]

3. Be careful about the *case* of the relative pronoun :

(a) *The book, which Caius wrote, will please you.*

Liber, quem Gaius scripsit, te delectabit.

(b) *The book, which pleased you, pleases me.*

Liber, qui te delectavit, me delectat.

Observe that in an English relative sentence the subject always comes next to the verb: thus in (a) "Caius" is subject, in (b) "which" is subject.

(113.)

1. He said that he was well. We said that we did not believe him.
2. The judge said that he did not favour the rich.
3. I know that he promised to help the king.
4. He said that he could not see the sun.
5. In order that I might go home I started at day-break.
6. The cold was so great that I could not sleep.
7. Don't be lazy lest men think you foolish.
8. What are you writing?—Why do you ask me what I am writing?
9. He informed me that the general was besieging Carthage.



10. Having pitched his camp, he became aware that the enemy were not far away.
11. That they might not fly, he posted his cavalry on the hill.
12. I cannot come to-day ; I promise to come to-morrow.
13. The boy hoped to understand everything.
14. Don't you think that this soldier will be despised ?
15. I think that I shall be able to come. I promise to write a letter to you, to inform you of my affairs.

(114.)

1. When the war is finished I hope to return to you.
2. When the Gauls are conquered I hope that my fields will be returned to me.
3. They have set out to besiege the town which their ancestors built.
4. I asked the man whether he could repair my ship.
5. He answered that he was not well, *and* that<sup>1</sup> he could do nothing before the summer.
6. On being asked whether he knew the judge, he answered that he had seen him.
7. The soldier's mother hopes that the city will soon be taken.
8. She thinks that her son will soon return.
9. She does not know that he has been wounded by the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> (He answered) "that he could . . ." still the accusative and infinitive : "*and*" is printed in italics because it is not to be translated.

10. The doctor does not think that he will recover.
11. I told her that her son was well; I did not dare to say that he was about to die.
12. We promised to stay three days in this town.
13. I hope to find the book which you gave me.
14. Ask him whether he has seen the man.

(115.)

1. He said that he expected his son every day.
2. I do not know why he has not come; don't ask me.
3. I promise to encourage the soldiers: when they see me they will fight bravely.
4. He said that he was going to London to hear the wise judge.
5. You ought to sleep in order that you may recover.
6. The king promised to give battle; but the soldiers were unwilling.
7. He pretended to love his father, that he might not be blamed.
8. Don't you hope that the business will soon be finished?
9. Having taken possession of the hill, he pitched his camp.
10. I asked him whether he had been informed that the soldiers would be led by me.
11. We hope that he will not die.
12. You must not fear: I do not think that we shall be killed.
13. He told me that I was like my mother.

14. I don't think he will be willing to follow you.
15. We hoped to learn much : he seemed to excel all men in wisdom.

(116.)

1. He promised to build the house : *and* having received the money he went away.
2. I have asked all my friends whether they have seen the man.
3. I thought that he was leading an idle life at Capua.
4. Do you think that my money will be returned ?
5. He said that he maintained his opinion, *namely*, that Carthage ought to be burned by the general.
6. I thought that you despised me.
7. I hope that I shall be sent to Gaul.
8. I hope that you do not believe this man.
9. I have been informed that a council will be held.
10. He told me that in his father's absence he could not help me.
11. I thought that such things were very difficult to do.
12. The boy whom I praised excelled all the rest in valour.
13. The man who praised me is like Caius.
14. The poet says that his book will not be understood by the foolish
15. The verses which he has written are very difficult.
16. I hope to write a letter to you to-morrow.

*Note.*—How to distinguish the relative from the interrogative.

1. *I will do what you bid me.*

(that is, “ I will do that which,” or “ the things which, you shall bid me ”).

(*Relative clause*) *Ea quae iubebis, faciam.*

2. *I don't know what he has bidden us to do.*

(*Indirect question*) *Quid nos facere iusserit, nescio.*

We use the words “ what,” “ who,” “ which ” (and some other words) both as interrogatives and as relatives; hence it is sometimes difficult to distinguish an indirect question from a relative sentence. Observe that in an English relative sentence we can put “ that which ” or “ the things which ” instead of “ what,” without making any change in the sense. In an indirect question this is impossible. For instance, if we put “ that which ” for “ what ” in sentence 2 above, we change the sense.

(117.)

1. *Rogavi eum quid scripsisset.*
2. *Ea quae scripsisti difficillima sunt intellectu.*
3. *Spero fore ut perficere possim ea quae promisi me facturum.*
4. *Rogavi eum quid facere deberet. Homo stultissimus negavit se scire quid esset faciendum.*
5. *Nonne id dixi quod mihi dicendum erat ?*
6. *Scire volo quis tecum profecturus sit.*
7. *Me consule occisus est homo turpissimus, qui consilium inierat perdendae civitatis.*

8. Hoc facto, rogavi eum uter nostrum captivis pepercisset.
9. Mihi roganti respondit se regem interficere voluisse, me noluisse.
10. Num putas eum vera dixisse? Nonne mihi credis?
11. Utri sit credendum, nescimus.
12. Ea quae monuisti fecimus: scire volumus quid praemii daturus sis.
13. Dic mihi quis fenestram aperuerit.
14. Qui fenestram aperuit tempestatem talem esse dixit ut laborare non posset.

(118.)

1. I have done what you ordered.
2. He asked me what I had ordered them to do.
3. I wish to know who informed you that the city would be taken.
4. Have you seen the temple which we have built?
5. Don't you think that you will be able to come?
6. He asked me what I was writing: I gave him the letter which I had written.
7. We do not know what is best to do; we hope to learn from you.
8. We told him that we had seen an island in the midst of the sea; he did not seem to believe us.
9. May I ask you what answer you gave when this news was brought?

10. I told them that we should not be able to return to Rome to-morrow.
11. The doctor says that you must stay in the country in order that you may recover.
12. The cold is so great that I do not wish to stay here; may I not go to the city, which is not far away?
13. Have you read the book which I gave you?—I have not read it; I gave it to Caius, who said that he wanted to read something.
14. I hope I shall see what you saw at Capua.
15. He asked me what I had seen in Sicily.

(119.)

1. Tell me whom you saw in the city.—I saw the man who promised to give you that beautiful dog.
2. I asked him whether he had forgotten you.
3. He answered that he hoped to come soon to see you.
4. Do you know the man who made the long speech? He seems very wise.
5. Miserable man that I am! I have lost the book which she gave me.
6. Can you not inform me who built the temple which we saw yesterday?
7. The girl who was speaking with me<sup>1</sup> could not remember the name.

<sup>1</sup> "With me," *mecum*, not *cum me*.

8. I think I know<sup>1</sup> the man who is standing next to you.
9. I hope your property will be restored by the judge.
10. I do not think that you will be willing to favour the Greeks.
11. He pretended that he had read a book which I had written.
12. I asked him whether he lived at Paris.
13. He ran to the harbour to put his property on board ship.
14. He hoped to be able to set sail on the following day.
15. This he did that he might not be seen by the soldiers, who had been ordered to bind him.

(120.)

1. Have you seen the man who promised to repair the ships?
2. The man whom I saw yesterday in the city has set out.
3. Is not the girl who wrote that letter very like her mother?
4. Having burnt the city we will lay waste the fields of the enemy who killed the hostages.
5. We will not spare the poet who wrote these verses.
6. Don't you think that he ought to be blamed?
7. I have bought the book which you wrote; I do not promise to read it.

<sup>1</sup> "I think *that* I know," accusative and infinitive. Observe that the conjunction "that" may often be omitted in English.

8. Don't you hope that the soldier who has been wounded will recover?
9. Do not despise those who think that wisdom is to-be-desired.<sup>1</sup>
10. I hope that the camp will be pitched in a suitable place, that the enemy may not attack us in the night.
11. I seized the hill which you ordered me to seize: I defeated the cavalry which you saw not far from the river.
12. Ask him what he has bought.—I have bought what you wished me to buy.
13. The bridge which we made was burned by the enemy, that our *men* might not be able to cross the river.
14. I want to know who started the rout.

#### NOTE ON THE USE OF "SE."

The rule is that *se* refers back to the subject of the sentence.

1. Caesar dixit *se* vicisse Gallos, *Caesar said that he* (i.e. *Caesar*) *had conquered the Gauls.*  
(Caesar is the subject; *se* means Caesar; he said, *Ego vici Gallos*, "*I have conquered the Gauls.*")
2. Caesar dixit eum victum esse, *Caesar said that he* (not *Caesar*) *had been beaten.*  
(He said, *Victus est*, not *Ego sum victus.*)

---

<sup>1</sup> Gerundive.



A few more instances may make the distinction clearer. Remember that *se* may be singular or plural, and of either gender.

3. Balbus dixit *se* suos libros perdidisse et illius epistulam, *Balbus said that he had lost his (Balbus') books, and his (Caius') letter.*

This is the reported form of—

Ego meos libros perdidi et illius epistulam, *I have lost my books and his letter.*

4. Negaverunt sibi redeundum esse: eum emisse domum suam, *They said that they ought not to return: that he had bought their house.*

The actual words of the speakers were—

Non redeundum est nobis: is emit domum nostram, *We ought not to return: he has bought our house.*

What is the difference between—

Puella dixit *se* ei credituram esse, *and*  
Puella dixit eum sibi crediturum esse?

(121a.)

1. Certior factus sum eum epistulam scripsisse.
2. Negavit *se* eum vidisse.
3. Dixerunt eum sibi credidisse.
4. Nonne inimici simulaverunt eum victum esse?
5. Negavit *se* scire quot libri sibi legendi essent.
6. Uxor imperatoris sperat eum, hostibus victis, mox rediturum.
7. Imperator sperat *se* eam visurum.
8. Puella negavit eum sibi cibum dedisse.

9. Pessimus homo simulavit se ei multa dedisse.
10. Speraverunt se opus suum mox confecturos ut eius carmina legerent.
11. Noli credere homini qui amicos suos semper decipit.
12. Omnes putaverunt eius consilium sapientissimum esse: promiserunt se ei subventuros.
13. Dixit se epistulam ab eo accepisse: eum vulneratum esse.
14. Qui se laudat, non est sapiens.
15. Qui eum laudat, est deceptus.

(121*b*.)

1. I have not seen my son: the doctor says that he is recovering.
2. The general said that he had ordered fifty men to go into the territory of the Haedui to get corn.
3. The soldiers denied that he had given this order.
4. On being asked whether her father had set out she answered that he was not well.
5. We thought that he would not understand us.
6. He said that he would go to the fields to take exercise.
7. She said that he had deceived her; *and* that she was very miserable.
8. Cicero thought that he had saved his country: we thought that he had wasted time.
9. They did not think that we should return the books to them.

10. I hope that he will winter in Rome: he told me that he ought not to stay in this island.
  11. Being asked what his brother had written, he said that he had written a few verses.
  12. My brother said that he did not wish to write letters.
  13. We thought that he was not far away: a messenger said that he had seen the camp.
- 

## XXIV.

*An Ingenious Lunatic.*

Medicus, ut solebat, insanos suos visebat. Cum autem insanum quemdam rogasset "Rectene vales, amice?" respondit ille alter "Optime quidem valeo; sed tu, qui me amicum appellare audes, nescis profecto quis sim. Alexander ego Magnus sum." "Nesciebam, fateor; laetor tamen me posse cum tanto viro colloqui. Sed hoc solum mirari licet; nonne tu mihi heri dixisti te Mosem esse?" "Et hoc quidem verum," respondit; "Moses enim alia matre sum."

## XXV.

*His Mother's Appeal to Coriolanus.*

Sine, priusquam complexum accipio, sciam ad hostem an ad filium venerim, captiva materne in castris tuis

sim. In hoc me longa vita et infelix senecta traxit ut exulem primum te, deinde hostem, viderem ! Potuisti populari hanc terram quae te genuit et aluit ? Non tibi, quamvis infesto animo et minaci perveneras, ingredienti fines ira cecidit ? Non, cum in conspectu Roma fuit, succurrit ? “ Intra illa moenia domus et Penates mei sunt, mater coniunx liberique.”

## XXVI.

### *A Proud Defence.*

M. Aemilius Scaurus, a Vario accusatus, quod ab rege Mithridate ob rem publicam prodendam pecuniam accepisset, causam suam ita egit : “ Varius Scaurum regia mercede corruptum imperium populi Romani prodidisse ait ; Scaurus huic se adfinem esse culpae negat ; utri creditis ? ” cuius vocis admiratione populus commotus Varium ab illa actione pertinaci clamore depulit.

## XXVII.

### *The Fox and the Crow.*

Qui se laudari gaudet verbis subdolis,  
Sera dat poenas turpes paenitentia.

Cum de fenestra corvus raptum caseum  
Comesse vellet, celsa residens arbore,  
Vulpes hunc vidit, deinde sic coepit loqui :  
“ O qui tuarum, corve, pennarum est nitor !

Quantum decoris corpore et vultu geris !  
 Si vocem haberes, nulla prior ales foret."  
 At ille stultus dum vult vocem ostendere,  
 Emisit ore caseum, quem celeriter  
 Dolosa vulpes avidis rapuit dentibus.

## SECTION 36.

## APPOSITION.

1. Alexander, rex noster, maximum regnum habet, *Our King Alexander has a very large kingdom.*
2. Vidistine Alexandrum, regem nostrum ? *Have you seen our King Alexander ?*

When two substantives are put side by side, the one giving a description of the other, they always agree in case, and if possible in gender and number.<sup>1</sup> In the first sentence *rex* is nominative because *Alexander* is nominative, but in the second sentence we must have *regem* to agree with *Alexandrum*.

3. *The city of Rome*, Urbs Roma.

Do not translate "of," but put the two substantives in apposition.

4. Romam ad urbem redeo, *I return to the city of Rome.*

<sup>1</sup> It is not always possible for them to agree in gender and number : for instance, *Londinium* (neut.) *urbs* (fem.) *maxima*, "London, a great city." *Veii* (plural masc.), *urbs* (singular fem.) *Etruriae*, "Veii, a city of Etruria."

Be careful not to omit the preposition with *urbem*.

5. *The wise Tullius*, Tullius vir sapiens (*or sapientissimus*).<sup>1</sup>

In Latin an adjective must not be put with a proper name: instead of "the wise Tullius" write "Tullius the wise man."

(122.)

1. Gaius, filius meus, ad Italiam ire vult.
2. Novistine Tullium, amicum meum?
3. Spero me Romam, pulcherrimam illam urbem, visurum.
4. Hannibal, Carthaginiensium imperator, Capuam ad urbem totius Campaniae maximam rediit.
5. Titus, magister optimus, multa me docuit.
6. Nonne vidisti Tulliam, uxorem meam, in agros euntem?
7. Spero fore ut Lutetiam, in urbem Gallorum, ire possim.
8. Cur in Galliam ire vis?—Lutetiam eo ut Gallice loqui discam.
9. Gaius, puer stultissimus, me rogavit cur in Galliam ire vellem.
10. Respondi me sperare fore ut multa discerem.
11. Tullius, vir sapientissimus, multos libros scripsit.
12. Alexander, Macedonum rex, plurimas gentes vicit.
13. Rus abire volo operis conficiendi causa.
14. Dixit Labienum, Caesaris legatum, venisse me visum.

<sup>1</sup> Latin often uses a superlative where we should not do so.

15. Urbe hostium capta domum redire licebit.
16. Spero fore ut Corinthum ire possitis.
17. Dixit Ciceronem consulem urbem servavisse.
18. Romani septem reges habuerunt : regibus expulsis consules creati sunt.

(123.)

1. I will give this book to my daughter Julia.
2. Have you read the speech of my friend Tullius ?
3. I asked the boy whether he had read the speech of Tullius.
4. He promised to come to London to help me.
5. Scipio, the general of the Roman army, took the city of Carthage.
6. I have seen the sword of Ariovistus, the king of the Germans.
7. The learned Titus went to Egypt to see the river Nile.
8. They set out for the city of Capua, but on the third day they returned home.
9. The cold is so great that I dare not go to Gaul.
10. For the purpose of encouraging the soldiers the queen came to the camp.
11. She said that she had sent twenty horsemen into the territory of the Haedui for the purpose of getting corn.
12. She promised that she would soon make an end of the war.
13. Having raised a shout the soldiers promised to follow her to the great city of Rome.

## SECTION 37.

“TE DUCEM FACIMUS.”

In the following sentences notice the case of *dux* :—

1. Te ducem facimus, *We make you (our) leader.*
2. Ego dux factus sum, *I have been made leader.*

Take care not to write “factus sum *ducem*.” The passive verb cannot govern an accusative, but *dux* will be in the same case as *ego*.

(124.)

1. Ciceronem et Antonium consules fecimus.
2. Spero fore ut consul fias, ut Catilinam, hominem pessimum, ex civitate pellas.
3. Iste homo turpissimus rex a militibus factus est.
4. Ego sapiens vocor, tu stultus haberis.
5. Ne turpem me vocaveris, ne ipse turpis videaris.
6. Nonne audivisti Quintum Fabium nominatum esse dictatorem ut bellum conficiat?
7. Urbem condidit, quam e suo nomine Romam iussit nominari.
8. Cicero habitus est orator magnus: Catilina interfecto Pater patriae est nominatus.
9. Spero me, patre mortuo, regem factum iri.
10. Certior factus sum tantam esse hostium multitudinem ut nostri pugnare non audeant.
11. Philosophus negabat fore ut pecunia nos divites faceret.



12. Caesare adveniente milites fortiores fiunt.
13. Rogatus quid esset faciendum, respondit nos id facere oportere quod Caesar iusserat.
14. Si mihi abire licebit, nunquam redibo ad urbem Corinthum.

(125.)

1. He named the city, which he had founded, Rome.
2. The general sent the legion which is called the tenth to seize the hill.
3. Do not go away to the country lest you be considered a friend of the base Catiline.
4. You will be considered a lazy boy, and you will make your mother most miserable.
5. The soldier thought that the river ought to be crossed in order that Caesar might be informed of the approach of the enemy.
6. I asked which of the (two) brothers was named Quintus.
7. Do not seek money but wisdom ; the philosophers deny that money makes a man rich.
8. All men say that Caesar will be nominated dictator, in order that he may save the state.
9. My friend Scipio often said that the city of Carthage ought to be burned.
10. Having learnt these facts the soldiers made me leader.
11. The flower which I gathered is considered very beautiful.
12. Shall we call Alexander, who conquered the Persians, a god ?

13. He asked me what I had bought.—I have bought what my mother ordered me to buy.
14. He says that he will send his verses to Queen Victoria. Do you think that she will read them ?

### SECTION 38.

“PUTATUR SAPIENS FUISSE.”

1. Cicero putatur sapiens, *Cicero is thought wise.*
2. Cicero putatur sapiens fuisse, *Cicero is thought to have been wise,*

or (as we commonly say, using the impersonal construction),

*It is thought that Cicero was wise.*

Notice that the introduction of an infinitive, dependent on *putatur*, will not make *sapiens* accusative. Contrast

Putamus Ciceronem sapientem fuisse,

in which we have the active voice of *puto*.

In translating into English use, as a rule, the impersonal construction, but take care not to use it in Latin.<sup>1</sup> Besides *putor*, the following verbs have this construction: *dicor*, *existimor*, *videor*; *trador* (“It is related that I . . .”), *nuntior* (“News is brought that I . . .”)

---

<sup>1</sup> But the more advanced student should note that the impersonal construction is better in the perfect and pluperfect passive: compare *Adesse Galli nuntiabantur*, “News was brought that the Gauls were near”; *Nuntiatum est adesse Haeduos*, “News was brought that the Haedui were near.”

Accusative of duration of time :—

(1) *Totum diem*, “The whole day long”; (2) *Tres dies Corinthi fui*, “I was at Corinth for three days”; (3) *Totam noctem dormii*, “I slept the whole night through.” The accusative case is used to express the duration of time. Notice that this accusative is translated into English in various ways. Contrast the ablative of time, which tells when an act was done, not how long it lasted—*Tertio die abiit*, “He went away on the third day.”

(126.)

1. Cives dicunt me sapientem esse.
2. Si Balbo pugnandi potestatem facies, fortis esse existimaberis.
3. Legati ad Caesarem venisse dicuntur, oratum pacem.
4. Traditur Caesar Gallis victis in Britanniam venisse.
5. Gaius, amicus meus, tres annos Athenis vixisse dicitur.
6. Romani nostram insulam multos annos incoluisse traduntur.
7. Aristides, Themistoclis inimicus, omnium iustissimus fuisse traditur.
8. Germani summam scientiam rei militaris habere existimantur.
9. Equitatu pulso, Galli victi videbantur.
10. Imperatori nuntiatum est hostium copias flumen transiisse et iam adesse.
11. Urbe capta, omnes pacem cupere videmini.

12. Ea ars in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur.
13. Subito exercitus regis Capuam ad urbem venire nuntiatur.
14. Victus statuisse dicebatur nunquam in conspectum Romani militis venire.

(127.)

1. It is thought that he returned to Gaul on the fifth day (*say*, He is thought to have returned . . .)
2. It was thought that you would cross the river.
3. This horse seems to be unfit for<sup>1</sup> war.
4. It is said that the wicked Tullius lived two years in Spain.
5. We ordered the man, who seemed to be the leader, to surrender.
6. It is related that the general promised to give ten hostages.
7. It is thought that he has gone into the country for the purpose of finishing his work.
8. It is said that he answered that he would start at midnight, and that he would be away for five days.
9. I have lived ten years in this town, but I have never heard the great orator speaking.
10. News was brought to the general that the cavalry had offered battle to the Haedui.
11. He told me that he was going to write the doings of the town to his mother.

<sup>1</sup> *ad.*

12. They taught him for three years: he seemed to be an idle man.
13. I hope that the flowers which I have lost will be found: I promised to give them to your mother.
14. News is always being brought that the queen will come to the city of London. But she seems to me to love the country.

## SECTION 39.

### THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Notice that many intransitive verbs become transitive<sup>1</sup> when compounded with prepositions: thus—From *eo* comes *ineo*: *Portam in eo*, “I enter the gate”; from *eo* also comes *transeo*: *Flumen transeo*, “I cross the river”; from *orior* (“I rise”) comes *adorior*, “I rise up against, I attack;” *Hostes adorior*, “I attack the enemy.”

*Transportare* takes two accusatives: “He put his army over the Rhine,” *Exercitum Rhenum transportavit*. The sentence is equivalent to *Exercitum trans Rhenum portavit*.

The verb *doceo*, “I teach,” takes two accusatives: *Doceo puerum artem scribendi*, “I teach the boy the art of writing.”

The verb *rogo*, “I ask,” takes two accusatives in the phrase *Rogare hominem sententiam*, “To ask a man for his opinion or vote.” This phrase is often used in describing the proceedings of the Roman Senate.

---

<sup>1</sup> A transitive verb is one that governs an accusative.

When the verb is in the passive, *sententiam* remains in the accusative, while the person asked changes to the nominative. *Cato rogatus est sententiam*, "Cato was asked for his opinion."

There is great freedom in the use of many neuter pronouns (such as *id*, *hoc*, *idem*), and a few neuter adjectives (such as *unum*, *multa*, *omnia*) in the accusative case. Thus, though *gaudeo* is not a transitive verb, one may say, *Hoc gaudeo*, "I rejoice at this." *Rogo* is not used with two accusatives (except in the phrase *Rogare hominem sententiam*), but *Multa me rogavit*, "He put me many questions," is correct. Similarly, *Hoc unum me monuit*, "He gave me this one piece of advice"; *Idem servum iussit*, "He gave the slave the same order."

(128.)

1. Quid tu puerum docuisti?—Artem belli gerendi eum docui, ut patriam defendere posset.
2. His rebus auditis, me sententiam rogavit.
3. Sententiam rogatus non morandum esse dixi, Caesarem faciendum esse imperatorem, bellum cum Gallis gerendum.
4. Ego per agros ibo, tu flumen transibis, urbem inibis.
5. Quid tu milites iussisti?—Labienum, legatum meum, exercitum flumen Rhenum transportare iussi, ut Germanos dormientes adoriāmur.
6. Ne multa me rogaveris; omnibus de rebus mox certior fies.
7. Quid gaudes?—Hoc gaudeo, te consilium iniisse adiuvandi patris.

8. Hoc unum te moneo, ne patre absente navem solvas.
9. Hoc enim spero, me urbem duos iam annos obsessam capturum.
10. Belgas adorti multa milia passuum secuti sumus.
11. Puellam rogavi quis flores carpsisset.
12. Ad Italiam navigans de nostris moribus multa rogatus sum.
13. Tullius, vir optimus, civitatem servavisse dicitur.

## (129.)

1. He attacked the Haedui in the rear as they were crossing the river.
2. Your friends will ask you who has taught you German manners.
3. I give you this one piece of advice, not to<sup>1</sup> send the tenth legion to get corn in the absence of the general.
4. He asked me as I was entering the house whether I had seen a traveller in the wood.
5. On being asked his opinion, he answered that two legions ought to be sent to Gaul.
6. He put his army over the river in the evening, that he might attack the barbarians at day-break.
7. I rejoice at this, that you have promised to remain at home in your brother's absence.
8. He made the same inquiry of my mother: she said that she had never seen the great Scipio.

<sup>1</sup> *Ne* with subjunctive: compare sentence 8 of the last exercise.

9. I will teach you the art of opening the window.
10. It is said that while crossing the river he fell into the water.
11. It is said that the general Caesar will conquer the Belgae.
12. He asked us many questions: we said that Cicero would be nominated dictator.

## SECTION 40.

### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(130.)

1. Alexander, Macedonum imperator, barbaros scientiam rei militaris docuit.
2. Ne locutus sis, ne unum quidem verbum audire volo.
3. Agrum tanti emi ut nullam pecuniam haberem.
4. Illud autem gaudeo, te in eadem sententia manere.
5. Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar putavit adiuvandum esse equitatum.
6. Milites semper faciunt ea quae imperator iubet.
7. Si istam navem tanti vendideris, divitissimus fies.
8. Hic canis timidus esse videtur, ille fortis esse dicitur.
9. Spero fore ut ea, quae scripsi, intellegere possis.
10. Marcus, vir summae honestatis, obses factus esse dicitur.
11. Rogavi puerum cur nihil responderet.



12. Dixit se Londinium in urbem ire velle ut multa emeret.
13. Nonne speras omnes servos liberatum iri ?
14. Gaius, imperator fortis et bonus, sperat se victis hostibus domum ad matrem rediturum.
15. Rogatus sententiam dixit se ante decimum diem bellum conficere posse.

(131.)

1. He leads so base a life that no one believes him.
2. Having seized the hill we ordered Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, to surrender.
3. It is said that my sister Julia is about to go to Asia to see the great city of Troy.
4. He asked me whether I hated my father. I said that I loved him.
5. After trying to make a bridge the soldiers returned to the camp.
6. When their leader had been put to death, they were allowed to set sail.
7. I hope that you are not leading a lazy life.
8. When he had taken Carthage, Scipio was considered a good general.
9. It is related that the wicked Catiline resolved to burn the city of Rome.
10. I hope to sell my horse to the rich Balbus.
11. The sailor said that the weather was such that he could not set sail.
12. Do not pretend to be a good man. I have been informed that you slew your mother.

13. He was made consul that he might conquer the Britons, by whom our hostages had been killed.

(132.)

1. Dicunt fore ut Ariovistus, Germanorum rex, interficiatur.
2. Non omnia fecimus quae facere voluimus.
3. In hac insula tantum est frigus ut nostri hiemare non possint.
4. Ventum erat ad urbem totius Italiae pulcherrimam.
5. Dux hostium respondit obsides redditum iri.
6. Pater moriturus dixit se sperare filium creatum iri consulem.
7. Spero te intellegere ea quae dixi.
8. Victi ad Caesarem venerunt rogatum pacem.
9. Sensi equum esse moriturum.
10. Captivus promisit se facilius iter reperturum.
11. Spero me tantam pecuniam habiturum ut in Italiam ire possim.
12. Mater in hortum ivit ut flores carperet, quos se ad filium missuram promiserat.
13. Spero librum, quem amisisti, repertum iri.
14. In Gallia mansit belli conficiendi causa.
15. Omnes speramus bellum confectum iri.
16. Milites negant fore ut bellum conficiatur.

(133.)

1. Raising a shout they sought safety *in* flight.
2. As they fled they saw the cavalry which the general had sent to take the town.

3. Our *soldiers* followed quickly that they might kill the men, who had dared to come into our territory.
4. The enemy cried out that they would go away at once, that they would restore our towns, that they would give us a large sum of money.
5. They promised to make an end of laying waste our lands.
6. Being informed of this, the general ordered our men to return to the camp.
7. He said that he was willing to spare the soldiers, but that the leader must be put to death.
8. As your army has been conquered I will spare you, if you go away (fut.)
9. Will you promise that you will put all your property on board ship, that you will cross the sea to that great island, that you will never return?
10. Miserable man that I am, I must promise all that you ask.
11. I hope that you will do all that you have promised.
12. When they reached the land they burned their ships.

(134.)

1. Alii dicunt, alii negant Germanos victum iri.
2. Te magistro, spero fore ut multa discam.
3. Dixit se pessimum illum hominem novisse.
4. Tam turpis est homo ut matrem morientem adiuuvare nolit.

5. Ne dixeris te venturum esse. Omnes dicunt tibi non esse credendum.
6. Victis omnia sunt aequo animo ferenda.
7. In nostros agros frumentatum venistis: filiam meam abstulistis.
8. Ne putaveris fore ut talibus hominibus parcam.
9. Quibus rebus cognitis hostibus pugnandi potestatem se facturum esse dixit.
10. Ego dormitum eo, tu confectum opus.
11. Mihi roganti respondit res urbanas ab homine docto scriptum iri.
12. Tot servos habet ut nihil sibi faciendum putet.
13. Speravistis vos urbe expugnata sumptu nostro victuros.
14. Sed spes vos fefellit: quae facere conati estis, ea non fecistis.
15. Caesar, dux optimus, nobis auxilio venit: exercitum vestrum fudit fugavitque.

(135.)

1. Have you found the horses which you lost?
2. I asked him whether he had not promised to set sail to-day.
3. He replied that he would give me back the money, that he must repair his ship, that he could not sail.
4. The slave told me that the flowers must not be picked, lest the queen might be distressed.
5. I asked him what he thought; he answered that he maintained his opinion.

6. He promised to return the book on the proper day.
  7. Having advanced five miles he pitched his camp.
  8. Under your leadership we hope to conquer all our enemies.
  9. I hope you do not favour the rich.
  10. Having at last reached the land they founded a city which now rules the world.
  11. The sailor tells me that this ship is going to be repaired.
  12. I have come to make the same request as I made yesterday.
  13. I asked the boy whether he had thrown a stone into the window.
  14. He said that he did not know.
  15. He said that he was going to London to see my father.
- 

## XXVIII.

### *Croesus' Son.*

Filius Croesi regis, cum iam fari per aetatem posset, infans erat, et, cum iam multum adolevisset, item nihil fari poterat. Mutus adeo et elinguis diu habitus est. Cum in patrem eius hostis gladio deducto regem esse ignorans invaderet, diduxit adulescens os, clamare nitens, eoque nisu atque impetu spiritus vitium nodumque linguae rupit. Plane enim et articulate elocutus est,

clamans in hostem ne rex Croesus occideretur. Tum et hostis gladium reduxit, et rex vita donatus est, et adolescens loqui deinceps incepit.

## XXIX.

### *Bucephalas.*

Equus Alexandri regis, nomine Bucephalas, ubi ornatus erat armatusque ad praelium, haud unquam inscendi se ab alio nisi ab rege patiebatur. Id etiam de isto equo memoratum est. Insidens in eo, Alexander, bello Indico, et fortiter pugnans, in hostium cuneum, non satis cautus, se immiserat. Collectis undique in Alexandrum telis, vulneribus altis in ceruice atque in latere equus perfossus est. Moribundus tamen ac prope iam exsanguis e mediis hostibus regem vivacissimo cursu retulit. Cum eum extra tela extulisset ilico concidit et, domini iam superstitis securus, animam exspiravit. Tum rex Alexander, parta eius belli victoria, oppidum in isdem locis condidit, quod ob equi honores Bucephalon appellavit.

## XXX.

### *Gyges' Ring.*

Gyges, cum terra discessisset magnis quibusdam imbribus, descendit in illum hiatus, aeneumque equum, ut ferunt fabulae, animadvertit, cuius in lateribus fores

erant : quibus apertis, hominis mortui vidit corpus magnitudine inusitata, anulumque aureum in digito : detractum ipse induit. Tum in concilium se pastorum (erat autem regius pastor) recepit. Ibi, cum palam eius anuli ad palmam converterat, a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat ; idem rursus videbatur, cum in locum anulum inverterat. Itaque, hac opportunitate anuli usus, regem dominum interemit, sustulitque quos obstare arbitrabatur : nec in his eum facinoribus ququam potuit videre. Sic repente anuli beneficio rex exortus est Lydiae.

### XXXI.

#### *The Purchase of the Sibylline Books.*

In antiquis annalibus memoria de libris Sibyllinis haec prodita est. Anus, hospita atque incognita, ad Tarquinium Superbum regem adiit, novem libros ferens, quos esse dicebat divina oracula ; eos velle dixit vendare. Tarquinius pretium percontatus est. Mulier nimium atque immensum poposcit ; rex, quasi anus aetate desiperet, derisit. Tum illa foculum coram cum igni apponit, tres libros ex novem deurit, et ecquid reliquos sex eodem pretio emere vellet, regem interrogavit. Sed Tarquinius id multo risit magis, dixitque anum iam procul dubio delirare. Mulier ibidem statim tres alios libros exussit, atque id ipsum denuo placide rogat, ut tres reliquos eodem illo pretio emat. Tarquinius ore iam serio atque attentiore fit ; eam constantiam confidentiamque non insuper habendam intel-

git; libros tres reliquos mercatur nihilo minore pretio quam quod erat petatum pro omnibus. Sed eam mulierem tunc a Tarquinio digressam postea nusquam visam constitit. Libri tres, in sacrarium conditi, Sibyllini appellati. Ad eos, quasi ad oraculum, quindecimviri adeunt, cum di immortales publice consulendi sunt.

---

## SECTION 41.

### GENITIVE CASE.

A substantive depending on another substantive is put in the genitive case. Thus: "love *for* one's father" is *amor patris*, not *amor patri*. It will often be unsatisfactory, and sometimes impossible, to translate the Latin genitive into English by the help of the preposition "of." *Hostium iniuriæ amici nostri*, "the unjust acts done *by* the enemy to our friend"; *inimicitiae Pompeii*, "unfriendly feeling towards Pompeius"; *dolor amissi patris*, "grief *for* the loss of his father" (literally, "grief for his lost father"); *avidus vini*, "greedy or eager *for* wine."

*Timor Gallorum* means either (1) "the Gauls' fear," that is, "the fear which the Gauls feel (of their enemy)"; or (2) "the fear (which the enemy feel) of the Gauls." Note the order of words in the following phrases in which these two meanings of the genitive are combined:—

Gallorum timor Caesaris, *The Gauls' fear of Caesar.*

Caesaris timor Gallorum, *Caesar's fear of the Gauls.*



The adjective *similis* takes the genitive of the person :  
“The boy is like his mother,” *Puer similis est matris* ;  
“The boy is like me,” *Similis est mei*.

(136.)

1. Dolor amissae uxoris Gaium omnium miserrimum fecit.
2. Nonne amore patriae et odio hostium moveris ?
3. Catonem veteres inimicitiae Caesaris incitant et dolor victi exercitus.
4. Cicero dicitur hoc fecisse odio Caesaris et amore Pompeii.
5. Helvetiorum iniuriae populi Romani tantae sunt ut ex Gallia expelli debeant.
6. De Haeduum fuga certior factus castra statim movit.
7. Si tibi, amore tuae sororis motus, pepercero, ne putaveris fore ut iterum parcam.
8. Promisit se Lutetiam, urbem totius Galliae pulcherrimam, capturum.
9. Nonne odio nostri haec patri nuntiavisti ?—Non odio vestri sed amore patris ea, quae fecistis, nuntiavi.
10. Socrates, vir summae sapientiae, se nihil scire simulabat.
11. Imperator, gloriae cupidus, sperat se victorem Romam in urbem rediturum.
12. Miles iuvenis sperat fore ut similis Caesaris fiat.
13. Renuntiatum est urbem esse plenam barbarorum.
14. Filius mei simillimus esse existimatur.

(137.)

1. It is said that the king died through<sup>1</sup> grief at the capture of the city.
2. Through<sup>1</sup> love for his mother he wished to return home.
3. So great is the general's fear of the enemy that he dare not cross the river.
4. It is related that Caesar's hatred of Pompeius was the cause of war.
5. Socrates has been called the wisest of the Greeks, but to many people he seemed to be foolish.
6. So great is the people's hatred of Balbus that he has never been made consul.
7. On being asked his opinion, he said that the plan seemed full of danger.
8. Some say that the boy is like his father, others that he is like me.
9. *Being* greedy for gold, Caius has gone to the city of London. He hopes to return home a rich man.
10. *Being* desirous of hearing the orator, we started from home in the middle of the night.
11. Don't you think that that boy is like my son Balbus? He seems to be very eager for money. He isn't desirous of wisdom, is he?
12. Full of hope he started for the city of Athens, that he might see the philosophers.

<sup>1</sup> Use the ablative without a preposition. Compare sentence 4 of last exercise.

## SECTION 42.

## “ALIQUID CIBI.”

Certain adjectives and pronouns are used in the neuter singular with a dependent genitive. For instance, “some food” is *aliquid cibi* (something in the way of food); “what news?” *quid novi?* “how much money?” *quantum pecunie?* “nothing good,” *nihil boni*; “much pleasure,” *multum voluptatis*; “more grief,” *plus doloris*; “less wine,” *minus vini*; “if there is any money in the city,” *si quid pecunie in urbe est*.

These neuter adjectives and pronouns are only used thus in the nominative and accusative. The ablative of *aliquid cibi* is not *aliquo cibi*, but *aliquo cibo*.

Adjectives which make their genitive in *-is* are not used in the genitive in the manner noticed above; though we write *aliquid boni*, “something good,” we must not write *aliquid melioris*, “something better,” but *aliquid melius*. “Nothing sad” is *nihil triste* (not *nihil tristis*).

Notice that the genitive is *not* used in Latin in such phrases as the following:—

The top of the oak, *Summa quercus*.

The middle of the night, *Media nox*.

The foot of the mountain, *Imus mons* (*infimus* or *imus* = lowest).

The island of Britain, *Insula Britannia*.

The city of Capua, *Urbs Capua*.

*Quis, quid*, following *num, ne, or si*,<sup>1</sup> mean "any," "any one," "anything."

Otherwise, *quis, quid* are interrogative.

*Quis fecit? Who did it?*

*Num quis fecit? Did any one do it?*

*Quid dicit? What does he say?*

*Si quid dicit, If he says anything.*

Again, in indirect questions—

*Rogo quis loquatur, I ask who is speaking.*

*Rogo num quis loquatur, I ask whether any one is speaking.*

(138.)

1. Nihil boni fecit, nihil iusti, nihil philosopho dignum.<sup>2</sup>
2. Noli putare te Socratis similem esse.
3. Fessus ab urbe Londinio rediit: dixit se aliquid cibi cupere, nihil vini.
4. Quis negat plus voluptatis in militis vita esse quam in philosophi (vita)?
5. Milites, multo vino reperto, finem fecerunt incendendae urbis.
6. Rogasne quid mihi sit morbi?—Nihil est morbi, doloris multum.
7. Nonne speras te aliquid boni facturum?
8. Si quid triste audiisti, ne locutus sis.

<sup>1</sup> Also *cum* ("when") and *nisi*.\*

<sup>2</sup> Notice that *dignum* is not put in the genitive like *boni* and *iusti*, because it has a word (*philosopho*) depending on it.

9. Dux captivum rogavit num quid periculi esset.  
Respondit omnia<sup>1</sup> plena esse hostium.
10. Si quid praemii ab isto turpissimo petiveris, irascetur.
11. In foro tantum erat civium ut oratorem audire non possem.
12. Cupidus gloriae promisit se plus pecuniae militibus daturum.
13. Dixit se aliquid negotii habere ; negotio confecto in hortum se venturum. Spero eum mox venire posse.

## (139.)

1. If you have heard any news don't be silent.
2. I asked Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, how much corn he could give us.
3. He answered that he had much corn, *but* no wine.
4. When his army was conquered Cato thought nothing better than death.
5. Through hatred of the Roman people and love for his country he promised to give a considerable sum of money to the leader of the Belgae.
6. At the foot of the mountain is a city, which is called Geneva.
7. We have promised the Helvetii,<sup>2</sup> the enemy of the Roman people, to give no corn to Caesar.
8. He said that he saw something beautiful yesterday in the city.

<sup>1</sup> Say “ the whole countryside.”

<sup>2</sup> Say “ We have promised *to* the Helvetii.”

9. There is nothing more beautiful in the whole world than the city of Naples.
10. *Being* greedy for money he did not give the wine, which he had promised to give, to the soldiers.
11. If you give<sup>1</sup> less corn to your horse it will die.
12. If you drink<sup>1</sup> less wine you will have more pleasure.

### SECTION 43.

#### VERBS MEANING TO REMEMBER, ACCUSE, ETC.

Vivorum meminī, nec tamen Epicuri licet oblivisci, *I remember the living, but still I must not forget Epicurus.*

Memor pueri rediit, *Remembering the boy she returned.*

*Memini*,<sup>2</sup> "I remember" (perfect with present meaning), and *obliviscor*, "I forget," govern a genitive. So do the adjectives *memor* and *immemor*.

Note the use of the genitive in the following sentences :—

Hominem furti accusabo, *I will accuse the fellow of theft.*

Iudex eum capitis condemnabit, *The judge will condemn him to death.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Future tense.

<sup>2</sup> *Memini* and *obliviscor* may also be followed by the accusative of the thing (not the person) remembered or forgotten. *Hanc rem meminī* and *Huius rei meminī* are both good Latin.

Proditionis me absolverunt, *They acquitted me of treason.*

Capitis accuso hominem, *I bring a capital charge against a man.*

Capitis absolvo hominem, *I acquit a man on a capital charge.*

Condemno militem furti, *I condemn the soldier for theft.*

*Condemno capitis* means literally "I condemn a man on a charge concerning his *life*." Compare the phrases *Capitis res est*, "It is a matter of life or death"; *Capitis periculum adire*, "To risk one's life." Hence our expression "*capital* punishment."

(140.)

1. Meministine eorum verborum quae te docui ?
2. Si id feceris, furti accusaberis.
3. Hac re nuntiata iudex hominem capitis absolvit.
4. Habetis ducem memorem vestri, oblitum sui.
5. Senex, capitis condemnatus, a militibus vinciebatur.
6. Earum rerum meministi quarum oblivisci volo.
7. Si inimicum meum capitis condemnaveris, aliquantum pecuniae tibi dabo.
8. Qui honestam vitam aget, non condemnabitur.
9. Hannibal, imperatoris filius, promisit se Romanorum iniurias Carthaginiensium nunquam obliturum.
10. Milites, mementote vos, me duce, saepe vicisse, victos esse nunquam !
11. Beneficiorum meorum oblitus consilium iniit adiuvandi inimicos meos.

12. Ne talia a me petiveris. Homo turpissimus esse diceris. Spero te condemnatum iri.
13. Dicunt fore ut Balbus, inimicus meus, proditionis accusatus e civitate pellatur.

## (141.)

1. Do you remember the man who sells books at Capua?
2. Shall we be able to forget the girl whom we saw on the top of the mountain?
3. The base Catiline will be condemned for treason.
4. I promise never to forget this day.
5. Being condemned for theft he hoped to be able to escape from the prison.
6. I cannot remember your name. It seems to me that you are very like your mother.
7. Being accused of treason he said to the judge that he had tried to free the state from peril.
8. Forgetful of his duty the judge condemned to death a man who had done no evil.
9. If I bring<sup>1</sup> a capital charge against the man he will be acquitted: if you accuse<sup>1</sup> him of theft he will be condemned and banished from the city.
10. Will the Roman people forget the general who conquered the Germans? Will they banish such a man? Will they not make him rich?

<sup>1</sup> Use the future perfect.



11. The mother said to her son as he was going away,  
 "Remember me ; do not forget your father."  
 12. This makes me most miserable. Can you not  
 teach me the art of forgetting ?

## SECTION 44.

## PRICE.

1. The genitive of Price :—

(a) Pluris, *At a higher price, for more.* Minoris, *At a lower price, for less.*

Quanti? *At what price?*

Tanti . . . quanti, *At so high a price, for the same price, as . . .*

These four adjectives are always used in the genitive to indicate price or value. The word for price (*pretium*) is not often expressed in the Latin.

(b) Magni, *At a high price.* Parvi, *At a low price.*

Plurimi, *At a very high price.* Minimi, *At a very low price.*

Nihili, *For nothing.*

These words are also used in the genitive to indicate price, but only with certain verbs, namely, with verbs meaning "to value," and with the verb "to be."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> With other verbs, as we shall see in Section 62, the ablative is used.

Magno (*not magni*) haec emi, *I bought this at a high price.*

Quanti equum vendidisti? Parvo, *For what did you sell your horse? For little.*

Plurimi te facio, *I value you very highly* (literally, *I value you at a very high price*).

Nihili libros facit, *He thinks nothing of books* (literally, *He values books at nothing*).

Frumentum est magni, *Corn is dear*.

Minimi hoc habeo (or facio), *I think this worth very little*.

2. The ablative of Price :—

*All substantives* (except *pretium*<sup>1</sup>) are put in the ablative to indicate price.

Duobus talentis vendidit, *He sold it for two talents*.

Magna pecunia hortos emit, *He bought the gardens for a large sum*.

(142.)

1. Vendo meum frumentum non pluris quam ceteri, fortasse etiam minoris.
2. Cicero, vir sapiens, dicit philosophum nihili facere dolorem.
3. Quanti hunc librum emisti?—Parva pecunia, sed pluris vendere volo. //
4. Patrem tuum plurimi feci: qua de causa tibi parcere volo.
5. Caius, imperator fortis et bonus, nihili mortem facit.
6. Si minoris quam ceteri vendere potero, omnes ad me emptum venient: cito dives fiam.
7. Qui amicos parvi facit, miseram vitam agit.
8. Quantum pecuniae turpissimo illi debes? Equos omnes tribus talentis vendidi, sed aere alieno me liberare non possum.

<sup>1</sup> *Pretium* is used in genitive or ablative.

9. Num amorem matris nihili facis ?
10. Illud me monuisti, ut servum pluris venderem.
11. Tullius, vir summae honestatis, domum meam emere vult. Spero eum tanti empturum, quanti ego emi.
12. Servum liberavi quem magna pecunia emi.
13. Si hortos pluris vendere potero, promitto me ad urbem venturum ut te videam. Hodie non satis pecuniae habeo ad iter faciendum.

(143.)

1. I hope to sell my horse at a higher price.
2. Have you forgotten your master, Balbus, who taught you the art of writing? Your father valued him very highly.
3. I want to sell my house for the same price as I bought *at*.
4. So great is the soldiers' fear of Caesar that they think nothing of danger.
5. We will ask the wise Tullius his opinion: he will say that peace ought not to be bought at so high a price.
6. If you are unwilling<sup>1</sup> to sell this to me at a lower price I will accuse you of theft.
7. If you sell<sup>2</sup> your garden at so high a price you will become very rich, and we shall consider you very clever.
8. At what price do you value this field? My

<sup>1</sup> In Latin "If you shall be unwilling."

<sup>2</sup> In Latin "If you shall have sold."

father bought the field for two talents ; I am not willing to sell it for less.

9. I bought this book at Rome for a small sum, but I value it very highly.
10. I value the slave so highly that I am unwilling to set him free.
11. *There* is not much corn in the camp : food will be dear to-morrow.
12. I have sold my sheep at so high a price that I am very rich. I hope that the money will be given to me to-morrow.
- 

## XXXII.

### *The Generosity of the Romans to Pyrrhus.*

Cum Pyrrhus rex in terra Italia esset, et unam atque alteram pugnas prospere pugnasset, satisque agerent Romani et pleraque Italia ad regem descivisset, tum Timochăres quidam, regis Pyrrhi amicus, ad C. Fabricium consulem furtim venit ac praemium petivit, et, si de praemio conveniret, promisit se regem venenis necaturum ; “ Id facile factu est,” inquit, “ nam filius meus pocula in convivio regi ministrat.” Fabricius autem literas ad regem Pyrrhum hoc exemplo misit.

*Consules Romani salutem dicunt Pyrrho regi.*

Nos pro tuis iniuriis continuis animo inimicissimo tecum bellare studemus. Sed communis exempli et fidei

ergo, te salvum esse volumus; sit quem armis vincere possimus. Ad nos venit Timochares, familiaris tuus, qui sibi praemium a nobis peteret, si te clam interfecisset. Id nos negavimus velle, neve ob eam rem quicquam commodi exspectaret, et simul visum est ut te certiolem faceremus, ne quid eiusmodi si accidisset nostro consilio civitates putarent factum, et quod nobis non placet praemio aut dolis pugnare. Tu nisi caves iacebis.

Pyrrhus populo Romano laudes atque gratias scripsit, captivosque omnes, quos tum habuit, vestivit reddiditque.

### XXXIII.

#### *Some Marvellous Stories.*

Cum e Graecia in Italiam rediremus, et Brundisium iremus, egressique e navi in terram in portu illo inclito spatiaremur, fascēs librorum venalium expositos vidimus. Atque ego avide statim pergo ad libros. Erant autem isti omnes libri Graeci miraculorum fabularumque pleni; ipsa autem volumina ex diutino situ squalebant, et habitu aspectuque taetro erant. Percontatus tamen pretium, mira atque insperata vilitate adductus, libros plurimos parvo pretio emo. Eos omnes duabus proximis noctibus cursim transeo, atque in legendo carpsi exinde quaedam et notavi mirabilia: (a) Homines sunt in Scythia unum oculum in frontis medio habentes, quā fuisse facie Cyclopes poetae ferunt. (b) In ultima quadam terra, quae Albania dicitur, gignuntur homines,

qui in pueritia canescunt, et plus cernunt oculis per noctem quam inter diem. (c) In Illyriis sunt homines pupillas in singulis oculis binas habentes, qui interimunt videndo quos diutius irati viderunt. (d) In montibus terrae Indiae homines sunt caninis capitibus et latrantes; item alii sunt nullis cervicibus, oculos in humeris habentes. (e) Apud ultimas orientis terras gens est corporibus hirtis et avium ritu plumantibus, nullo cibo sed spiritu florum naribus hausto vescens. Pygmaei quoque haud longe ab his nascuntur, quorum qui longissimi sunt non longiores sunt quam pedes duo.

---

## SECTION 45.

### INTEREST.

1. (a) Interest Caesaris bellum ante hiemem conficere,  
*It is important to Caesar to finish the war before the winter.*

The impersonal verb *interest* is followed by a genitive of the person: <sup>1</sup> *Interest regis*, "It is important to the king"; *Interest omnium*, "It matters to everybody." But it does not take a genitive of the personal pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *se*: instead of *mei* (*nostri*), *tui* (*vestri*), and *sui*, write *meā* (*nostrā*),

---

<sup>1</sup> But not a genitive of the thing: *Interest ad laudem civitatis*, "It is important with a view to the glory of the State." *Interest* means first, "There is a difference" (*est inter*, "there is something between"); *Inter hominem et beluam hoc interest*, "Between man and beast there is this difference." From this very easily comes the sense, "It makes a difference," "It is important."

*tuā (vestrā)*, and *suā*. These are the ablative singular fem. of the adjectives *meus*, *tuus*,<sup>1</sup> etc.

- (b) *Interest mea Romam ire*, *It is of importance to me to go to Rome.*
- (c) *Interest tua regem in urbe manere*, *It is to your interest that the king should remain in the city.*
- (d) *Dixit sua interesse navem solvi*, *He said that it was of importance to him that the ship should be launched.*

2. *Interest* may be followed by an infinitive, as in the four sentences already given, or by an indirect question.

- (a) *Non multum interest reginae quis veniat*, *It doesn't matter much to the queen who is coming.*  
(*Direct question, Quis venit? Who is coming?*)
- (b) *Nautarum interest quantum sit flumen*, *It matters to the sailors how big the river is.*

Take great care to use the subjunctive in these indirect questions.

3. *Interest* may be qualified by (a) a genitive of price, or (b) by an adverb, or (c) (most common of all) by a neuter nominative.

---

<sup>1</sup> The following explanation of the construction of *interest* may be of use to the more advanced student. The Latin for "It matters to me" is either *Mea interest* or *Mea refert*. The word *refert* is not introduced in the exercises, but many will be already acquainted with it. It has been suggested that *Mea refert* = *Mea re fert*, meaning "It contributes to the result from the point of view of my affair." *Interest* has almost exactly the same meaning as *refert*; hence it is not unnatural that it should come to be used with the same construction.

- (a) Parvi interest, *It matters little, is of slight importance.*  
(b) Maxime interest, *It is of the greatest importance.*  
(c) Multum interest, *It is very important.*  
Nihil interest, *It is of no importance.*

(144.)

1. Non mea sed patris interest te opus conficere.
2. Nihil tua interest quis librum scripserit.
3. Imperatoris maxime interest milites satis frumenti habere.
4. Hoc unum te rogabo : Cuius interest hunc hominem condemnari capitis ?
5. Magni interest ad salutem militum quis sit dux.
6. Pater sua interesse putat te honestam vitam agere.
7. Cur rogas me quid faciam ? Quid tua interesse potest ?
8. Novistine istum hominem, qui negotio deditus esse videtur ? Doctissimus esse habetur. Nominis oblitus sum.
9. Omnium civium interest quis creetur consul.
10. Spero te sequi posse : ad bellum gerendum plurimum interest te ante decimum diem adesse.
11. Et mea et omnium interesse puto Gaium, virum summae sapientiae, valere.
12. Minimum interest regis te in eadem sententia manere.
13. Quid Pompeii intererat interfici Caesarem ?
14. Qui hanc insulam incolunt putant deorum nihil interesse quid faciant homines.



(145.)

1. It is important to us to see you. It is said that you will come to Rome to-morrow.
2. It is of importance to the enemy to be informed how great are our forces and who is the general.
3. It does not matter to the judge which of you *two* did this.
4. I have not forgotten the man, but it is of no importance to me that he lives in London. I hope you will not return to him.
5. I value the dog very highly: it is of great importance to me that<sup>1</sup> he should recover.
6. It does not matter to me which of the *two* men comes. I am not willing to sell the ship at a lower price.
7. So great is the boy's love for his mother that he is not willing to go into the garden to play.
8. He stays at home and gives himself up to books that he may become wise.
9. It is of no importance to the citizens that you are about to return to the country.
10. To whom does it matter where I am?
11. *Those* who were standing round thought that the orator surpassed all men in wisdom; but he was considered foolish by the philosophers.
12. Is it important to a philosopher that you are rich?

<sup>1</sup> See p. 169, 1 (c).

## SECTION 46.

## THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

1. Partem cibi dedit, *He gave part of his food.*
2. Maior puerorum, *The elder of the boys.*  
Pulcherrima insularum, *The most beautiful of islands.*
3. Quis nostrum ?<sup>1</sup> *Which of us ?* Alter filiorum, *One of his (two) sons.*

These genitives present no difficulty, as they may all be translated in English by the help of the preposition "of." On the other hand :—

4. Latin does not have a genitive of a substantive after *unus*.

*One of the soldiers, Unus e militibus,* though *unus eorum* ("one of them"), *unus omnium, quorum unus,* are correct.

5. *Twenty of us went to Rome, Viginti Romam ivimus*  
*(We, twenty, went to Rome).*  
*All of us returned, or, We all returned, Omnes rediimus.*

(146.)

1. Quis vestrum promisit se ad urbem Athenas mecum venturum ?—*Nemo nostrum promisit : fortasse unus ex amicis tuis. Speramus te comitem invenire posse.*

<sup>1</sup> Note that *nostrum*, not *nostri*, is the partitive genitive. On the other hand, write *amor nostri*, "love for us." *Nostrum, vestrum* are only used in the partitive sense.

2. Consulum alter cupidus est belli gerendi, alter pacem plurimi facit.
3. Quid times? nonne omnium militum fortissimus esse diceris?
4. Si quid periculi est, pacem plurimi facimus.
5. Si tu partem cibi mihi dederis, ego aliquid pecuniae tibi dabo.
6. Dixit se sex filios habere, eorum unum esse militem.
7. Si quid eum rogaveris, nihil veri respondebit.
8. Sex et quadraginta in navem conscendimus: in medio oceano parum cibi nobis erat, nihil aquae: e comitibus nostris sedecim perierunt: triginta ad patriam rediimus.
9. Quis putat haec nostra interesse?—Et ego puto et omnes putamus: tu unus ex omnibus civibus haec interesse negas.
10. Legistine eos libros?—Alterum eorum legi, alterum legere nolo.
11. Partem copiarum Rhenum flumen transportavit, ut maximam hostium urbem obsideret.
12. Cicero sapientissimus omnium Romanorum habetur.

(147.)

1. Thirty of us hope to go to Italy. We shall stay ten days at Rome, which is said to be the most beautiful of all cities.
2. What does it matter to me that you (pl.) are considered the bravest of the Germans? Did I not slay your king, Ariovistus?

3. The best of my horses I do not sell even for a large sum: this *one*, which my friend Tullius gave me, I value highly.
4. Which of us will forget the man who wrote so many books and lived so base a life?
5. When he had finished a part of his work he gave himself up to pleasure.
6. Which of you (two) knows the man who was talking with me in the middle of the city?
7. One of my slaves has been condemned to death.
8. In the midst of the waves you will find three islands; one of them is called Ithaca, in which the wise Ulysses was born.
9. Six of us started for<sup>1</sup> the camp of the enemy; I alone return to tell you that all of my comrades have perished.
10. Crassus was considered the richest of the citizens.
11. All of you know that this does not matter to me.
12. We have suffered much<sup>2</sup>: one of our comrades has died: we have found no gold: all of us wish to return to the island of Sicily.

## SECTION 47.

GENITIVES OF POSSESSION OR OF QUALITY USED AS  
PREDICATES.

1. Quae patris fuerunt, Balbi fiunt, *What was his father's property becomes the property of Balbus.*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ad.*

<sup>2</sup> Many things.

2. Patris est monere filium, *It is a father's duty to advise his son, or, It is for a father to advise his son.*
3. Sapientis est tempori cedere, *It is wise to yield to circumstances, or, It is the way of a wise man, etc.*
4. Summae virtutis est in medios hostes impetum facere, *It is a sign of great bravery, or, It requires great bravery to charge into the midst of the foe.*
5. Cuius est sapientiae tantam regere multitudinem !  
*What wisdom to rule so vast a people !*
6. In place of the genitive a possessive adjective may be used :—

Non meum est punire filium tuum, *It isn't my business, or, It isn't for me to punish your son.*

It will be noticed that there is no separate word in the Latin sentences for the English "duty," "business," "sign," etc. In translating these genitives into English you will have to supply some such word to make the meaning clear.

Sentence 3 should be specially noticed. "It is foolish to yield" might be translated either *Stultum est cedere*, or *Stulti est cedere*; but *Sapiens est* means "He is wise," and is not used for "It is wise." *Sapientis est*, "It is the way of a wise man," is used instead.

(148.)

1. Patris est filium monere ne pigram vitam agat.
2. Summae benevolentiae est inimicis auxilio venire.
3. Angusti animi est nihil admirari.
4. Putavit militis esse pro patria mori.
5. Num tu meum esse putas tibi, turpissimo homini.  
subvenire ?

6. Inde Gaius, dolore amissi patris motus, in medios hostes impetum facit.
7. Regis est sapientissimos elegere ut civitatem regant.
8. Dixit Germanorum esse in castris semper vitam agere.
9. Barbarorum est nihil scire, nullos libros habere.
10. Victi id rogatis quod victores poscere nunquam audent.
11. Ego autem puto victoris esse poscere, victi obedire.
12. Me iudice, ante hiemem transportandus est Rhenum exercitus.
13. Talia frustra rogabitis: non meum esse puto vobis parcere: omnibus ante noctem moriendum.
14. Cuius audaciae est et stultitiae Balbum, iustissimum hominem, proditionis accusare!

(149.)

1. It is the *duty* of good citizens to help those who rule.
2. It is a little mind which admires little things.  
(It is the *way* of a little mind to admire . . .)
3. Do you think it is the *duty* of a judge to condemn such a man?
4. What audacity, what folly to make such a request of me! It is not for me to listen to such men.
5. It is said to be the *way* of the Gauls to make the richest man king. But I do not think that this should be believed.

6. Do you not think that it is a tribune's *business* to defend the poor?
7. It requires great intelligence to turn the speech of a German orator into Latin.
8. How often have I told you that such things are shocking to see.
9. Is it the *duty* of an orator to deceive men?
10. It is not for me to buy a slave at so high a price.  
Can you not sell him for less?
11. It is for the general to give orders, for the soldier to obey.
12. It is a friendly act to help a friend. (It is the *way* of a friend . . .)
13. It is wise to hope for much,<sup>1</sup> to expect little.<sup>1</sup>

## SECTION 48.

HOW TO TRANSLATE "IF HE SPEAKS," "WHEN HE SPEAKS," ETC.

1. *If he speaks the rest keep silent*, Si loquitur, ceteri tacent.
2. *If he speaks I will listen*, Si loquetur, audiam.
3. *If he speaks he will be punished*, Si locutus erit, poenam dabit.

Latin is more exact than English in the use of the tenses. In the three English sentences given above, "If

---

<sup>1</sup> Neuter plural.

he speaks" does duty as a present, a future, and a future perfect. In Latin *Si loquitur* can only be used of present time. In the second sentence, "If he speaks" refers to future time, and as the speaking and listening go on together, *Si loquetur* ("If he shall be speaking") is used. In the third sentence, however, the speaking and punishing are not represented as happening at the same time: the punishment follows the speaking: we therefore have *Si locutus erit* ("If he shall have spoken").

The future perfect may be translated into English either by the present, as in sentence 3 above, or by the perfect, as in 4.

4. Cras redibo, si negotium confecerō, *I will return to-morrow if I have finished my business.*
5. Veniam cum potero, *I will come when I can.*
6. Cum redierit gaudebo, *When he returns I shall be glad.*

(150.)

1. Si Gallos vicerit, consul creabitur.
2. Si ab hostibus urbis victus erit, capitis condemnabitur.
3. Si quid novi acciderit, litteras ad me scribe.
4. Si quis ducem certiozem fecerit quo in periculo simus, nobis auxilio veniet.
5. Cum epistulas scripsero in hortum veniam.
6. Ego, si esuriam, in urbem ibo cibi emendi causa.
7. Si magnam pecuniam ei dederis, artem pugnandi te docebit.
8. Qua in arte si ceteris praestabis, pater dabit aliquid praemii.



9. Si litteras ad matrem scribis, roga quando sit reditura.
10. Iudicis est quaerere quid sit verum.
11. Flumen transibit cum satis militum habebit, ut hostes adoriatur.
12. Spero patrem, hominem timidum, nescire quid faciam. Quod si cognoverit, rem gravissime feret.
13. Non meum est oblivisci eorum qui me adiuverunt. Cum potero, aliquid pecuniae tibi dabo.
14. Tum nostri, impetu facto, hostes fuderunt. Quot perierint, nescio.

(151.)

*Note.*—In this and following exercises "when" is to be translated by *cum*.<sup>1</sup>

1. If you send<sup>2</sup> your book to me I will read it.
2. If he is now at home, he will come to see us in the evening.
3. If anything sad happens to me, I shall not inform my father.
4. When he sees you he will be angry.
5. If I sell my house at so high a price I shall go to Italy to see the great city of Rome.
6. Do not fear. If he attacks us I shall easily kill him with this sword.

<sup>1</sup> Many of the sentences in which "when" occurs might, by the use of participles, be rendered without *cum*. But in order to avoid difficulties, the beginner is recommended to use *cum* only at first.

<sup>2</sup> Does this mean (1) "if you are now sending," or (2) "if you shall be sending," or (3) "if you shall have sent"?

7. If you can come to-morrow, you will see my friend Caius.
8. The man who murdered his mother is said to be like me: if they see me they will kill me.
9. If you have finished your work before the fifth hour, you will be able to come with us.
10. If I accuse your friend Caius he will be condemned to death. Is it wise to remain in the city?
11. If I am silent he will be made dictator and will make me rich. I ask you what I ought to do.
12. When you have repaired the ship you will be allowed to go home.
13. If he is distressed at this we will go away.
14. It is your business to inform your father of the plan which you have adopted.

## SECTION 49.

### THE GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

Vir summae honestatis, *A man of most honourable character.*

Vir magni corporis, *A man of large build.*

In Latin this genitive always has an adjective with it. "A man of valour" cannot be translated *Homo virtutis*, but *Homo magnae virtutis*.

## (152.)

1. Num quis Tullium accusavit? Nonne summae est virtutis?
2. Gaius, vir summae sapientiae, consul factus est.
3. Classem septuaginta navium Massiliam mittit, ut obsidentibus subveniat. Quibus de rebus certiores facti cives se dedunt.
4. Balbus, infimi generis homo, meam domum venit ut pecuniam posceret.
5. Rogavi eum quid praemii a me expectaret.
6. Homo turpissime, quid me adiuvisti? Plus mali quam boni in hac urbe fecisti.
7. Haec rogatus ille, summae audaciae homo, respondit me sibi talentum debere.
8. Num paratus es ad labores? Nonne mavis pigram vitam agere?
9. Num putas huius-modi hominem nobis timendum esse?
10. Constat decimam legionem spectatae virtutis fuisse.
11. Iam vincentibus nostris, Gallorum quidam, summae virtutis adulescens, in mediam aciem impetum facit.
12. Quo facto milites quintae legionis initium fugae fecerunt.
13. Nihil mea interest num Ciceronem, virum summae honestatis, sententiam rogaverit.
14. Cum philosophus abierit, licebit nobis canere.

## (153.)

1. I am informed that Titus, a man of the greatest diligence, has received some reward.
2. I sell more corn than the rest of *the corn-dealers*, but I sell at a lower price. Do you think me wise?
3. A tribune of the soldiers, a man of tried valour, promised to enter the enemy's camp in the night.
4. He is considered a man of the most honourable character, but he has not done what he promised to do.
5. Why do you make a man of such a kind *your* friend? He is a man of large build *but* of little mind.
6. What does it matter to you who is a friend to me? You are said to be a man of the greatest wisdom, but I think you foolish.
7. You are always talking about books and wisdom and things of that kind.
8. I am informed that Balbus, a man of the kindest character, has promised to teach us.
9. Is it wise to give up the plan which you have adopted?
10. If all the sea-faring nations build ships of war, what shall we do?
11. He is a man of the lowest class: if he comes to-morrow I do not wish to see him. What audacity to write such a letter!
12. When he sees you he will laugh.

## SECTION 50.

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(154.)

1. Tanta virtutis est ut nihil timeat.
2. Rex putavit sua parvi interesse urbem sociorum obsideri.
3. Aliquid spei habeo Caesarem auxilio nobis venturum.
4. Ut perveniamus ad castra hostium, transeundum est maximum flumen.
5. Graviter fero vos ad nostros fines venire.
6. Hic non est morandum: prima luce proficiscendum.
7. Si quem vestrum cras videbo, gladio interficiam.
8. Si fratrem mihi reddideris, vitam tibi concedam.
9. Iam mortuus est frater tuus; qua de causa reddere non possum.
10. Nostros a tergo adorti fuderunt. Noli rogare quot sint interfecti.
11. Me fefellit spes legendi libri: dormitum eo.
12. Hostes pugnare non ausi ad proximam urbem fugerunt.
13. Quos consecuti milites quintae legionis, urbem ceperunt.
14. Num putas esse militis parcere hosti?
15. Nonne sperat se cras rediturum? Num certior factus est quantum sit periculi?

## (155.)

1. When I learned these facts I asked him whether he could come to Capua to see me.
2. He answered that he hoped that he would be able to come.
3. As I was going through the field in the evening I saw your friends returning to London.
4. The doctor told the father that he hoped the boy would recover from his illness.
5. If you see the old man, don't tell him that the books are going to be burned.
6. For three months we give ourselves up to books ; we hope to go to Gaul in the winter to see the great city of Paris.
7. I don't value the bird highly, but I cannot sell it for less.
8. I think that the window should be opened.
9. He will be considered a good general when he has conquered this warlike nation.
10. Did he say that this fellow was to be feared ? <sup>1</sup>
11. I remember the wrongs <sup>2</sup> done by the barbarians to our general.
12. The learned Balbus asks the girls many questions, but it seems that they know nothing. I hope they will learn much.

<sup>1</sup> Use the gerundive.

<sup>2</sup> It is not well to have several genitives side by side : put " wrongs " in the accusative. *Memini* takes accusative or genitive of the *thing* remembered.

(156.)

(In this exercise "you" is plural.)

1. Did you not say that you would burn this beautiful city?
2. He did not say, did he, that the book would be finished to-morrow?
3. In the middle of the night he led the tenth legion to the foot of the mountain, that he might attack the Belgae as they slept.
4. Now you yourselves are prisoners; you come to me, whom you wished to slay.
5. You ask me, the conqueror, to grant you life.
6. What ought I to do? Why are you silent? Why do you not answer?
7. I will tell you why you do not answer. You do not dare to say what ought to be done.
8. It is not the *way* of a Roman general to spare those who side with the enemies of the Roman people.
9. All must die: life is to be granted to none of you.
10. Did you not try to attack the third legion as it was advancing against the Belgae? Do you deny this?
11. Do not forget that I have heard everything from the soldiers who fled to our camp.
12. The Roman people valued your friendship highly. But it is not the *way* of a friend to attack a friend.

(157.)

1. The citizens think much of peace: they think little of our safety.
2. In the besieged city there was not much food: corn, as usual, was very dear: a small dog cost more than a ship.
3. It is the business of a judge to come to the assistance of the poor and miserable that they may not be condemned without cause.
4. *Through* love of *his* friend the judge acquitted the woman of theft.
5. If I go into the country to see my mother she will praise me.
6. I hope she will give me a considerable sum of money.
7. I shall tell her that food is very dear in the city.
8. Through hatred of us he went away to another city.
9. He was made general by the citizens: having attacked our men by night he was defeated.
10. These things being known, he was condemned to death by the king.
11. If we spare him, he will lay waste our territory.
12. Do not be afraid, my *dear* Balbus: at the foot of the hill we shall find a house.
13. Who are you? It is very important to us to know who you are.
14. He is a man of such great wisdom that you cannot deceive him.



(158.)

1. I think little of books, but I think much of birds and dogs.
2. I will grant liberty to the slave, when I return to Gaul.
3. He, whom you despise, talks very wisely about things of that kind.
4. Which of you (two) will come to town with me?
5. What does it matter to you which of us comes?  
If one<sup>1</sup> comes, it will be enough.
6. At the foot of this hill there is a house, next to the temple, in which I stayed three days.
7. One of the boys asked me whether I maintained my opinion.
8. One of them must be condemned to death.
9. He asked me whether I could teach the girl the art of singing. I answered that I could not sing.
10. Having drawn up the army in front of the camp, they sent a messenger to ask for peace.
11. The wrongs done by the general to the hostages are so great that we cannot spare you.
12. The river is full of fish: they do not seem eager for food.
13. Through hatred of the barbarians and fear of death the soldiers fought bravely.
14. In this house there is much money, *but* not much wisdom.

<sup>1</sup> One (of two) not *unus*, but *alter*.

## (159.)

1. What folly to make the timid Cicero consul!
2. Is not your son said to be like you? I think he is like *his* father.
3. Is it for a Roman general to forget the wrongs done by the Helvetii to our allies?
4. So great was Balbus's hatred of the king that he could not remain in the city.
5. The poet said that he had seen nothing more beautiful than the city of Naples.
6. In the evening news was brought that the leader of the Haedui had promised to give us much corn.
7. So great is my mother's love of me that she is coming to the city of London to see me.
8. Which of you pretended to have written the book?
9. All of us denied that the prisoner was in the garden.
10. If the judge is informed of this matter, we shall be accused of treason.
11. Being asked what news there was, he answered that the Belgae were desirous of peace.
12. Does it not require great intelligence to help the poor?
13. I have not forgotten my mother: was she not like you?

## (160.)

1. The boy told his mother that he never had enough food.
2. She promised to give him more money.

3. My sister is so timid that she does not dare to go into the garden *by* night.
4. I will stay ten days with you. On the eleventh day all of us will go to the island of Sicily, to see the temple.
5. If the old man is well, he will come with us.
6. He is a man of the greatest wisdom: I hope that we shall learn much from him.
7. It is not for me to tell you how important it is to us to take much food and some wine.
8. In the island, to-which<sup>1</sup> we are about to set out, corn is dear.
9. If the man says, "You shall buy for so much," you must say:
10. "I will buy for less; in our land food is cheap."
11. "I will not buy at a higher price than *I pay* at home."
12. "If you are unwilling to sell this for a small sum, I shall go away."
13. Is there not more pain than pleasure in waging war?
14. Twenty of us set out for the camp of Caesar; we eight are now returning: the rest are dead.

(161.)

1. When he comes, he will tell us who is the leader of the Belgae.
2. Did you not think that the hostages would be given back?

<sup>1</sup> *Quo* ("whither").

3. Do you *really* believe that they have been murdered?
4. It doesn't matter to the judge why you did this.
5. He will ask you whether you were in the city on that night.
6. It is said that Balbus is about to write a book.
7. I am not willing to buy the table, which you made, for so much.
8. He said that his father had gone home to eat some food.
9. We will promise to return on the same day and stay six months.
10. I hope you will be willing to come with me.
11. It is of no importance to my mother that you saw him.
12. The wise Tullius says that he will come to the city of Corinth to teach us this great art.
13. When he comes we will hear him.
14. If we are allowed, twenty of us will set off for the country at daybreak.

(162.)

1. One of the judges denied that the man would be condemned for theft.
2. Balbus, a man of the kindest character, says that it is very important to him that I should be present.
3. The soldiers whom we saw at Corinth will be sent to Asia.

4. He is a man of such valour that he is unwilling to stay in the city.
5. When the war is finished he hopes to live at home.
6. Having encouraged the soldiers he ordered them to charge into the midst of the enemy.
7. Having heard this he asked what was the reason of *their* delaying.
8. I hope to see the man about whom we were speaking.
9. Is it not a father's *duty* to teach his son virtue?
10. The wise Balbus when asked his opinion kept silence.
11. If he informs my mother of this matter I will kill him.
12. What diligence to read so big a book!
13. If all of you help the consul, he will soon finish what he has promised.
14. Tell me what you have bought.

(163.)

1. So great was the general's love of his soldiers that he gave up to them the city which-he-had-captured.<sup>1</sup>
2. The king died *through* grief at the capture<sup>1</sup> of the city.
3. Is it not of great importance to the general how much corn there is in the territory of the enemy?

<sup>1</sup> Use participle of *capio*.

8. If the place is suitable for crossing the river there is no reason for delaying.
  9. If an opportunity of speaking is given he will not keep silence.
  10. Do not say that something sad has happened.
  11. It was often said that he was the richest of the citizens.
  12. If you hear him speaking you will think him foolish.
  13. Is it wise to give so much wine to the slave?
  14. If he is at home he is writing letters: you must not enter.
- 

### XXXIV.

#### *Corvinus.*

Copiae Gallorum ingentes agrum Pomptinum insederant, instruebanturque acies a consulibus, de vi et multitudine hostium satis agentibus. Dux interea Gallorum, vasta et ardua proceritate, armisque auro praefulgentibus, grandia ingrediens et manu telum vibrans, incedebat; perque contemptum et superbiam circumspiciens despiciensque omnia, venire iubet et congregari, si quis pugnare secum ex omni Romano exercitu auderet. Tum Valerius tribunus, ceteris inter metum pudoremque ambiguis, cum impetravisset a consulibus ut in Gallum tam inaniter arrogantem pugnare sese permetterent, progreditur intrepide modesteque obviam; et congregiuntur et consistunt et consere-

bantur iam manus. Atque ibi vis quaedam divina fit: corvus repente improvisus advolat, et super galeam tribuni insistit, atque inde in adversarii os atque oculos pugnare incipit; insiliebat, obturbabat, et unguibus manum laniabat; atque, ubi satis saevierat, revolabat in galeam tribuni. Sic tribunus, spectante utroque exercitu, et sua virtute nixus et opera alitis propugnatus, ducem hostium ferocissimum vicit interfecitque, atque ob hanc causam cognomen habuit Corvinus.

### XXXV.

#### *Sertorius and the Hind.*

Sertorius vir acer egregiusque dux et utendi regendique exercitus peritus fuit. Is in temporibus difficillimis et mentiebatur ad milites si mendacium prodesset, et literas compositas pro veris legebat, et somnium simulabat et falsas religiones conferebat, si quid istae res eum apud militum animos adiuvabant. Illud adeo Sertorii nobile est: Cerva alba, pulcherrima simul et celerrima, a Lusitano ei quodam dono data est. Hanc sibi oblatam divinitus et instinctam Dianae numine esse et colloqui secum et docere quae utilia factu essent persuadere omnibus institit. Si quid durius videbatur quod imperandum militibus foret a cerva sese monitum praedicabat. Id cum dixerat universi tamquam si deo libentes parebant.

Ea cerva quodam die, cum incursio esset hostium nuntiata, festinatione ac tumultu consternata in fugam

8. If the place is suitable for crossing the river there is no reason for delaying.
  9. If an opportunity of speaking is given he will not keep silence.
  10. Do not say that something sad has happened.
  11. It was often said that he was the richest of the citizens.
  12. If you hear him speaking you will think him foolish.
  13. Is it wise to give so much wine to the slave?
  14. If he is at home he is writing letters: you must not enter.
- 

### XXXIV.

#### *Corvinus.*

Copiae Gallorum ingentes agrum Pomptinum insederant, instruebanturque acies a consulibus, de vi et multitudine hostium satis agentibus. Dux interea Gallorum, vasta et ardua proceritate, armisque auro praeferentibus, grandia ingrediens et manu telum vibrans, incedebat; perque contemptum et superbiam circumspiciens despiciensque omnia, venire iubet et congregari, si quis pugnare secum ex omni Romano exercitu auderet. Tum Valerius tribunus, ceteris inter metum pudoremque ambiguis, cum impetravisset a consulibus ut in Gallum tam inaniter arrogantem pugnare sese permetterent, progreditur intrepide modesteque obviam; et congregantur et consistunt et consere-



bantur iam manus. Atque ibi vis quaedam divina fit : corvus repente improvisus advolat, et super galeam tribuni insistit, atque inde in adversarii os atque oculos pugnare incipit ; insiliebat, obturbabat, et unguibus manum laniabat ; atque, ubi satis saevierat, revolabat in galeam tribuni. Sic tribunus, spectante utroque exercitu, et sua virtute nixus et opera alitis propugnatus, ducem hostium ferocissimum vicit interfecitque, atque ob hanc causam cognomen habuit Corvinus.

### XXXV.

#### *Sertorius and the Hind.*

Sertorius vir acer egregiusque dux et utendi regendique exercitus peritus fuit. Is in temporibus difficillimis et mentiebatur ad milites si mendacium prodesset, et literas compositas pro veris legebat, et somnium simulabat et falsas religiones conferebat, si quid istae res eum apud militum animos adiuvabant. Illud adeo Sertorii nobile est : Cerva alba, pulcherrima simul et celerrima, a Lusitano ei quodam dono data est. Hanc sibi oblatam divinitus et instinctam Dianae numine esse et colloqui secum et docere quae utilia factu essent persuadere omnibus institit. Si quid durius videbatur quod imperandum militibus foret a cerva sese monitum praedicabat. Id cum dixerat universi tamquam si deo libentes parebant.

Ea cerva quodam die, cum incursio esset hostium nuntiata, festinatione ac tumultu consternata in fugam

se prorupit, atque in palude proxima delituit, et postea requisita periisse credita est. Neque multis diebus post inventam esse cervam Sertorio nuntiatur. Tum qui nuntiaverat iussit tacere, praecepitque ut eam postero die repente in eum locum in quo ipse cum amicis esset immitteret. Admissis deinde amicis postridie visum sibi esse ait in quiete cervam quae periisset ad se reverti, et, ut prius consueverat, quod opus est facto praedicere: tum servo quod imperaverat significat. Cerva missa in cubiculum Sertorii introrupit; clamor factus et orta admiratio est.

---

## SECTION 51.

### THE DATIVE.

#### Verbs governing the Dative—I. Active Voice.

A large number of verbs are used with the dative: many of these (such as *parco*, "I spare"; *credo*, "I believe") are already familiar to the student.

Observe that, of the verbs that take a dative, some are transitive, some intransitive; that is, some take an accusative also, others do not: for instance:—

#### 1. Transitive—

*I sell you a book, Librum tibi vendo.*

*I appoint Caius to the command of the cavalry, Praeficio Gaium equitatui (I set him at-the-head-of [prae] the cavalry).*

## 2. Intransitive—

*I am angry, or, I get angry, with you, Irascor tibi.*

*I hurt you, Noceo tibi.*

*I am in command of the legion, Praesum legioni.*

*I persuade you, Persuadeo tibi.*

*I assist you, Subvenio tibi.*

(166.)

1. Non est amici amico irasci.
2. Quis tibi persuasit me castris praefuturum ?
3. Treviri proximi Rheno flumini sunt.
4. Si venerit, nihil tibi nocebit. Ne timueris hominem.
5. Haec cum confecisset, urbi Ariovistum praefecit.
6. Fidelissimi ante omnia homini sunt canis atque equus.
7. Gaius, homo infimi generis, multitudini gratior fuit quam reginae.
8. Antonius leges civitati imposuit.
9. Si me navibus praefeceris Britannos facillime vincam.
10. Praeerat exercitui Titus, dux summae virtutis.
11. Hoc tibi promitto, me divitibus non fauturum.
12. Si negotio se dedet ceteris facile praestabit.
13. Mihi quaerenti num pacem bello anteponeret nihil respondit.
14. Patri nunquam est facta potestas adeundi ad miserum filium.
15. Quantum tu praemii mihi dabis si te docuero scientiam rei militaris ?

16. Odio uxoris motus in Asiam abiit; non est meum monere hominem ut redeat.

(167.)

1. If you give him a considerable sum of money he will appoint you to the command of the cavalry.
2. I cannot assist you: I do not believe the messenger.
3. Who does not know that Caesar was in command of the Roman army?
4. He won't hurt you, unless he gets angry with you.
5. Are you willing to sell me your slave for as much as you bought *at*?
6. If you give me three hostages, I will promise to do no harm to your soldiers as they go through our territory.
7. Is it for a philosopher to prefer riches to wisdom?
8. I promise you that I will hurt neither man nor woman.
9. We shall never be able to persuade Caesar: we will go to Rome to seek aid from the rich Crassus.
10. Do not be angry with me. I will tell you why I spared Ariovistus, the king of the Germans.
11. Did you come to congratulate me? I give you thanks.
12. It is said that Caius will command the cavalry.
13. Having taken the city he imposed a tax on the Gauls, which they paid for ten years.

## SECTION 52.

VERBS THAT TAKE A DATIVE—(*Continued*).

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## 1. Transitive verbs—

*A book was given to me, Liber mihi datus est.*

## 2. Intransitive verbs—

*You will be persuaded, Tibi persuadebitur.*

It may be well to remind the student that intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally in the passive voice. Be careful not to write *persuadeberis* for “you will be persuaded.”

(168.)

1. Si satis frumenti nobis datum erit, obsides vobis reddemus.
2. Cur tibi non creditur? Nihil veri dicere putaris.
3. Omnes clamaverunt filiam sacerdoti reddendam esse. Imperator autem reddere nolebat.
4. Cuius est audaciae deo iubenti non parere!
5. In illa parte urbis neque dis paretur neque hominibus parcitur.
6. Persuasum est mihi te sapientiam divitiis antepondere.
7. Postero die ventum est ad urbem totius Galliae pulcherrimam.
8. Prima luce proficiscendum ut exercitui subveniatur.

9. Num Caesari favetur? Num quis ei credit?
10. Si huic homini credetur, mihi moriendum erit.
11. Praefectus est urbi Gaius, iuvenis summae virtutis nullius sapientiae.
12. Quis negat victis a nobis esse parcendum?
13. Nonne subveniendum est sociis, qui nobis auxilio saepe venerunt?
14. Hoc si feceris, gratiae tibi a me et ab omnibus agentur.
15. Huic homini non solum est parcendum a iudice, sed etiam subveniendum a rege.
16. Me vivo nihil tibi nocebitur. Dic mihi quid timeas.

(169.)

1. This book was given to me by the learned Titus.
2. Were you believed by the citizens? Did they make you consul?
3. Who has persuaded you that the soldier ought to be given up to the enemy?
4. If you go to him, he will easily be persuaded.
5. Such a man will be spared by no one.
6. It seems to me that that judge favours the poor.
7. Unless he obeys me, the king shall not be assisted.
8. I do not think that this woman ought to be spared.
9. Which of the boys is to be believed? Balbus tells us that he was at home: Caius says that he saw Balbus in the fields.
10. I am persuaded<sup>1</sup> that the war will be finished in the summer.

<sup>1</sup> This means, "I have been persuaded" (perfect).

11. That man is obeyed by the soldiers and favoured by the citizens.
12. Our laws must be imposed on the conquered: the judges must be obeyed.
13. If he was not believed, why was so great a sum of money given to him?
14. The women are to be spared; the men are to be put to death.

### SECTION 53.

#### THE DATIVE OF INTEREST.

1. Est mihi equus, *I have a horse.*
2. Domus aedificatur domino non servis, *A house is built for the master, not the slaves.*

It will be seen that the words in the dative denote the persons for whom something is done, or something exists. Compare the use of the dative after such verbs as *subvenio*; *subvenio tibi* means, "I come up for your sake, to help you."

#### "CUM" ("WHEN") WITH PAST TENSES.

3. Cum ad urbem rediret, litteras accepit, *When he was returning to the city he received the letter.*
4. Cum flumen transiisset, nihil moratus est, *When he had crossed the river, he did not delay.*

After the conjunction *cum* put the subjunctive when you use the imperfect or pluperfect tense.<sup>1</sup>

The English will not always make it clear whether the imperfect or the pluperfect is the right tense to use. For instance—

*When he returned home he was informed of this, write, Cum domum rediisset de hac re certior factus est.*

The sense is, “He learned this *after* his arrival, when he *had* returned.” Contrast the following sentence:—

*When he was at Rome he wrote this letter, Cum Romae esset hanc epistolam scripsit.*

The sense is, “While he was at Rome,” not “When he had been.”

(170.)

1. Num quid pecuniae tibi est? Argenti nihil habeo, multum auri.
2. Cum Romam rediisset, dictator nominatus est belli gerendi causa.
3. Sapientibus non stultis scriptus est liber; nec quisquam intellegere potest, nisi summa cura legit.
4. Num quid voluptatis attulit tibi mors regis?
5. Patri tuo nihil persuadebitur, nisi ipse veneris.
6. Cum Athenis essem philosophos audiebam.
7. Cum militibus quintae legionis subvenire vellet, postero die in provinciam profectus est.

<sup>1</sup> The more advanced student should notice that *cum* is followed by the indicative when it means “whenever,” “as often as.”

Cum ille cantabat irascebar, *Whenever he sang I got angry.*

But, Cum cantaret aberam, *I was not present during his song.*



8. Ea quae secuta est aestate, cum Rhenum flumen transiisset, in fines Germanorum iter fecit.
9. Tum Caesar, convocatis militibus, hunc in modum locutus est.
10. Vobis, milites, non mihi vincetis; vobis erit gloria subiectae Galliae.
11. Vestrum erit si quid praemii Populus Romanus dabit.
12. Vobis erit, non mihi, quidquid divitiarum est in urbibus hostium.
13. Quid tibi est consilii? Quid nobis sit faciendum, nescio.

(171.)

*Note.*—What is the difference between *rus* and *patria*?  
Look up “country” in dictionary.

1. I conquer the enemy not for myself but for my country.
2. When he had conquered these warlike nations he stayed ten days in the city.
3. They called him father of his country, and made him very rich.
4. On the eleventh day he went away from the city into the country to live with his mother.
5. The Germans did not resist our *men*: having thrown away their arms they fled to the tops of the mountains.
6. If you give me much money and enough corn I will not hurt you.

7. Having put my army over the Rhine, I will return to the great city of Paris.
8. If you are conquered, the enemy will march to Rome.
9. Do you think that our allies will help you? Will the enemy spare you?
10. It is of the greatest importance to you to remember the valour of your ancestors.
11. We pass life in the camp: we have not a house.  
(Do not use *habeo*.)
12. When I received your letter I started at once.
13. When your father was living, you had less money but more pleasure.

## SECTION 54.

### THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE OR EFFECT.

Librum mihi dono dedit, *He gave me a book for a present.*

Locum castris delegit, *He chose a place for his camp.*

Reliquit me praesidio urbi, *He left me as a protection to the city, or, to guard the city.*

Hoc mihi curae est, *This is a care to me, or, This is an anxiety to me, I am anxious about this.*

Quanto odio nobis est bellum! *What an object of hatred, how hateful, war is to us!*

Quanto amori nobis est iustitia, *How dear to us is justice!*

## (172.)

1. Promisit se Belgis auxilio venturum.
2. Nonne pulcherrimum equum dono tibi dedi?  
Num mihi gratias egisti?
3. Spero adventum Caesaris nobis praesidio futurum.
4. Dixit sibi magnae curae fore ut filia sacerdoti redderetur.
5. Nulli mihi sunt milites: amicitia mea periculo multis, paucis praesidio erit.
6. Veri simile non est odio fuisse parenti filium.
7. Domus Crassi, divitissimi hominis, ornamento erat urbi.
8. Cum imperatori nuntiatum esset hostes in Haedurum finibus esse, omnes putaverunt eum pugnae diem constituturum.
9. Spero homines intellecturos, quanto sit omnibus odio crudelitas, et quanto amori clementia.
10. Inimici mei simulant se nescire quantae sit mihi curae salus reipublicae.
11. Puto illam victoriam magno honori fuisse Mario.
12. Promitto me templum aedificaturum, quod et urbi ornamento erit, et mihi honori.
13. Auxilio mihi venit flumen transire conanti.

## (173.)

1. Having called together the tribunes of the soldiers he appointed a day for the battle.
2. I am persuaded that he has chosen a suitable place for the camp.

3. You will not be believed if you deny that I came to your assistance.
4. I shall leave Balbus to guard the ships; three hundred of us will start at daybreak for the territory of the Belgae.
5. Do you ask who gave me this book for a present?
6. It is reported that the general has sent two legions to our assistance in <sup>1</sup> besieging the city of Capua.
7. If you have chosen a place for a house why do you delay? A beautiful house will be an ornament to this city.
8. It is said that you are Caesar's friend: do not think that Caesar's name will be a protection to you.
9. Caesar is dear to the soldiers, but hateful to the citizens.
10. He told me that he was anxious that <sup>2</sup> his son should learn the art of writing.
11. The friendship of the philosopher was an honour to the king.
12. When Caesar crossed the river, Cicero thought that Pompeius would be a protection to the state.

<sup>1</sup> Use a participle: compare the last sentence of the preceding exercise.

<sup>2</sup> *Ut*.

## SECTION 55.

## “LICET.”

Militi non licet esse timido, *A soldier may not be timid.*

It will be remembered that the impersonal *licet* governs a dative (*licet militi*, “it is permitted to the soldier”): notice that it is followed by the dative and the infinitive, *esse timido* (not *esse timidum*).

(174.)

1. Non licuit Caesari appellari regi.
2. Licet tibi esse stulto ; pigram vitam agere non licet.
3. Mihi persuadere non potes : talia nuntianti nunquam creditur.
4. Iuveni non licuit esse mercatori.
5. Cum regem, virum sapientissimum, vidisset, rus abiit.
6. Licetne mihi dicere quid sim facturus ?
7. Tanta erat regis iniuria mei ut reginae morienti subvenire nolle.
8. Tres dies Capuae manere mihi licet ; quarto die ad exercitum redeundum.
9. Mihi roganti cur venisset, respondit se Lutetia ab urbe Gallorum venisse te visum.
10. Imperatoris interest scire quis praesit hostibus.
11. Non licet mihi te castris praesidio relinquere.

12. Si istum hominem sententiam rogabis, nihil tibi respondebitur.
13. Num iudici facile persuadetur? Num putas fore ut tibi parcat?
14. Spero adventum meum filio voluptati futurum.
15. Cum licebit, miles fiam.

(175.)

1. May we not go into the garden to pick *some* flowers?
2. He was allowed to go away when he had finished the business.
3. May I not be miserable? Have not all *my* friends deceived me?
4. When I had a considerable sum of money I had<sup>1</sup> enough friends.
5. I wish to come to your assistance: may I be a friend to you?
6. May I ask you what you said?
7. In this city a woman is not allowed to be rich.
8. If you resist me you will have<sup>2</sup> to carry on war with the soldiers who have imposed laws on all these nations.
9. You may fight if you wish.
10. If you have been accused of theft you will not be allowed to be consul.
11. It is not the way of a Roman to yield to a conqueror.
12. It is very important to us to remember those who taught us this art.

<sup>1</sup> Don't use *habeo*.

<sup>2</sup> Gerundive: "It will be necessary to carry on."

13. If we make such men rich, we shall be thought good.
14. If we praise the king, we shall be favoured.
15. Hostages being given, we were allowed to choose a place for the camp.

### SECTION 56.

#### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(176.)

1. Ad urbem itur cibi emendi causa.
2. Rogo te quis nobis auxilio sit venturus.
3. Filii mihi fuerunt duo : quorum alter mortuus est, alter naves reficiendas Capuae curat.
4. Unus e militibus, iniussu imperatoris, in media hostium castra impetum fecit.
5. Inimicitiae Caesaris Pompeium incitaverunt ut magnas copias pararet.
6. Ea quae secuta est aestate urbem octo menses obsessam cepit.
7. Spes est mihi videndi patris, quem Corinthi periisse renuntiavit Gaius.
8. Haec cum cognovisset in provinciam quam maximis potuit itineribus contendit.
9. Non solum nobis divites esse volumus, sed liberis, propinquis, amicis et maxime reipublicae.
10. Si domus pulchra est, intellegimus eam dominis aedificatam esse, non servis.

11. Nihil facile persuadetur invitis.
12. Aliorum laudi atque gloriae maxime invideri solet.
13. Num licet oratori decipere iudices ?

(177.)

1. Cum ex hibernis progredi posset, sociis auxilio venit.
2. Duas legiones castris praesidio reliquit ; ipse cum quingentis militibus flumen Tiberim traiectus est.
3. Mihi haec nuntianti non est creditum. Quis persuadebit his hominibus ?
4. E me quaesiverunt quis mihi hunc canem dono dedisset.
5. Quaerentibus respondi me canem tanti emissey ut nihil pecuniae haberem ad cibum emendum.
6. Milites nesciunt diem pugnae constitutum esse.
7. Spero fore ut tibi credatur.
8. Prima luce decem milites profecti sunt ad locum castris deligendum.
9. Rex sum : nemini a me parendum : non mihi factae leges.
10. Ne oblitus sis te maximae urbi praesidio esse relictum.
11. Magnae mihi curae est ut bellum bene geratur : meam salutem minimi facio.
12. Imperatum est mihi, ut, traiecto flumen exercitu, Germanos dormientes adorirer.
13. Putasne milites Germanos anteponendos esse nostris ?



## NOTE ON "CUM" ("WHEN").

1. Remember that *cum* is followed by the imperfect and pluperfect *subjunctive*.

Cum haec dixisset profecti sumus, *When he had said this we set out.*

2. But *cum* is followed by the present *indicative*.

Cum ille loquitur, tacemus, *When he speaks we keep silence.*

3. Remember to put the future or future perfect indicative after *cum*, if the time referred to is future.

*When I have written the letter I will come to you,* Cum epistulam scripsero ad te veniam.

(178.)

1. When the temple is finished, it will be an ornament to the city.
2. When I am in the country I often go into the woods to see the birds.
3. When he had persuaded his mother he chose a place for his temple.
4. When you excel the Greek philosophers, you will be allowed to teach us wisdom.
5. When I was in command of the camp, the army was a protection to the city.
6. The soldiers will be a danger to the citizens if they are allowed to do such things.
7. When I was a little boy I was not allowed to be timid.

8. When they had thrown me into the river, they thought that I should learn the art of swimming.
9. When it rains, the girls are not allowed to go into the garden.
10. When it rains, I shall give myself up to books.
11. When I hear what you say I am not angry with you.
12. When I was making *my* speech he would<sup>1</sup> not keep silence.
13. Unless you keep silence you will not be allowed to stay here.

(179.)

1. When he is hungry he orders the slaves to put food on the table.
2. When the general had made a bridge he put his army across the river.
3. When he is asleep, you may not enter the house.
4. When the merchant was returning from the town a man attacked the horses.
5. "I will kill you," said he,<sup>2</sup> "unless you give me a considerable sum of money."
6. Being accused of theft, he said that he had eaten no food for many days.
7. The judge said that such men ought not to be believed.
8. If they are spared, good men will be harmed.
9. Are not the rich favoured? Are the poor assisted?
10. When you hear a wise man speaking, keep silence.

<sup>1</sup> "Was not willing."

<sup>2</sup> Use *inquit* for "said he."

11. When he has finished, you will be allowed to make a speech.
12. When he had given me his horse for a present he returned to his native country.
13. When I say that you prefer riches to virtue, you get angry with me.

(180.)

1. If the slave is acquitted, he will be a danger to his master.
2. The general will not be persuaded unless he sees the prisoner.
3. The brave Balbus was left as a protection to the women.
4. If all of us return, the citizens will rejoice.
5. The temple was built for the gods, who had come to the assistance of the city.
6. We will teach him how dear justice is to Britons.
7. You will not be believed if you say that you forgot your daughter.
8. News was brought that Caesar had appointed you to the command of the tenth legion.
9. It is related that the poet was blind.
10. I will not harm the man who helped me.
11. Forgetting the murder of his father<sup>1</sup> he favoured the wicked Balbus.
12. I believe<sup>2</sup> that he has sold the dog for more.

<sup>1</sup> "Having forgotten his murdered (pf. pteple.) father."

<sup>2</sup> *Credo* is followed by the accusative and infinitive: "I believe that he is fighting," *Credo eum pugnare*. But, "I believe the man," *Credo homini* (dative).

13. On hearing this they all cried out that they did not believe the messenger.

(181.)

1. So great was the people's hatred of the orator, that they raised a great shout.
2. "He is a danger to the city: he did not spare us: he shall not be spared."
3. You cannot persuade me that<sup>1</sup> you love wisdom.
4. The judge asked the prisoner who had persuaded him to<sup>1</sup> burn the ships.
5. I have been appointed to the command of the army: I must be obeyed.
6. Do not believe him: yesterday he said that he had founded the city of Carthage.
7. If I favour you, I shall do harm to the other citizens.
8. You will easily be persuaded, when you see the man.
9. When we have not enough corn, we march into the territory of the Belgae.
10. I have received the books which you sent me as a present.
11. I hope to read them when I have recovered from *my* illness.
12. I believe that the great showers have done harm to the crops.

<sup>1</sup> (a) "He persuaded me *that* the slave was faithful," *Persuasit mihi servum esse fidelem* (acc. and inf.)

(b) "He persuaded me to sell the slave," *Persuasit mihi ut servum venderem* (*ut* expressing a purpose).

13. He got angry with me when he saw that my dog had killed a bird.

(182.)

1. If you sell for as much as you bought at you will not become rich.
2. If you have been condemned to death, you must fly from the city.
3. I asked him whether he preferred my wine to yours.
4. Is it friendly to ask such questions?
5. When he had read the letter, he said that he believed me.
6. My slave thinks that this book is an ornament to the table.
7. The frequent showers are said to have harmed the small beech-tree, which I planted.
8. The general will not be allowed to set out before the winter.
9. When you have made the bridge I will come to see you.
10. The big marsh is said to be a danger to the horses.
11. When you return with your army you will be a protection to all good men.
12. Eight of us set out; three of us will return.
13. Do not damage the flowers which I have gathered.
14. He did not know how hateful Catiline was to all of us.
15. When I had read the verses I congratulated the poet.

(183.)

1. I will appoint to the command of the ships those men who (shall) follow me.
2. I congratulated Balbus, when I saw the wall which he had built.
3. If you excel Caius in valour, why are you unwilling to fight?
4. We did not think he was a soldier: he seemed to be a traveller.
5. A considerable sum of money will be given you, if you lead the army out of the wood.
6. I hope you will all understand how dear my country is to me.
7. I have<sup>1</sup> no money: unless you help me I must<sup>2</sup> die.
8. Twenty of us set out from the city at daybreak to see the ships of the Gauls.
9. When we came to the shore the clouds were so thick that we could see nothing.
10. One of my companions was angry with me: we persuaded him that the ships were not far away.
11. If it does not rain we shall be able to see something in the evening.
12. I had forgotten the man whom you accused of treason.
13. Is it of importance to the boys which of us (two) comes?

<sup>1</sup> Don't use *habeo*.

<sup>2</sup> Future: compare *cras proficiscendum erit*, "I must set out to-morrow."

(184.)

1. Are the poets believed who say that the gods often came to the assistance of the Greek leaders ?
2. Being asked my opinion I give you this one piece of advice : do not spare the conquered.
3. If you are conquered, you will not be spared. Do not forget the victory of the Carthaginians.
4. It seems that the boy is devoted to his business.
5. If you obey this man, the enemy of the Roman people, you will be considered foolish.
6. Foolish *people* are easily persuaded : this old man is so wise that he does not believe you.
7. When I had taught him the art of singing he gave me many thanks.
8. When the soldier brought this news the general appointed a day for the battle.
9. When he perceived that the enemy were unwilling to fight he determined to attack the camp.
10. When I saw the girl I asked where *her* mother was. She pretended not to know.
11. Is a king allowed to do whatever he desires ?
12. When he had come to Italy he chose a place for a city. He hoped that this city, which he called Rome, would impose its laws on the nations.

(185.)

1. When he was informed of this he appointed a day for the conference.
2. Through love for his friend Dumnorix he promised to favour the Haedui.

3. If you are conquered you will perish : no one will spare you.
4. Is it not better to yield to the conquerors and obey me than to seek a miserable death ?
5. They congratulated me, *but* they did not believe me.
6. Has your father given you permission to read that letter ?
7. When he had come to the foot of the mountain he chose a place for the camp.
8. Having appointed Labienus to the command of the city, he marched into the territory of the Belgae.
9. I have been given a book, which I do not want to read.
10. The judge will not easily be persuaded that you are an ornament to the state.
11. It is not for us to teach the king how hateful to all men is cruelty, how dear is justice.
12. If any one accuses you of treason, your riches will be a protection to you.

---

### XXXVI.

#### *Arion and the Dolphin.*

#### A.

Vetus et nobilis Arion cantator fidibus fuit, quem rex Corinthi Periander amicum amatumque habuit



artis gratia. Is inde a rege profectus est, ut terras inclitas Siciliam atque Italiam viseret. Ubi eo venit, aures omnium mentesque in utriusque terrae urbibus delectavit. Postea grandi pecunia et re bona multa copiosus Corinthum instituit redire. Navem igitur et nautas, ut notiores amicioresque sibi, Corinthios delegit. Sed Corinthii, navi in altum provecta, praedae pecuniaeque cupidi, de necando Arione consilium ceperunt. Ille autem, pernicie intellecta, pecuniam ceteraque sua, ut haberent, dedit, vitam modo sibi ut parcerent oravit. Nautae hoc solum concedere voluerunt, ut ei necem adferre per vim suis manibus temperarent; imperabant tamen ut iam statim desiliret praeceps in mare. Tum ille, spe omni vitae perdita, id unum postea oravit, ut, priusquam mortem oppeteret, permitterent vestitum omnem induere et fides capere et canere carmen quod casum illum suum consolaretur. Quod oraverat impetrat; nautae enim audire cupiebant. Itaque mox de more amictus ornatusque stansque in summa puppi carmen voce maxima cantavit.

## B.

Finito cantu, cum fidibus ornatuque omni, sicut stabat canebatque, iecit se procul in profundum. Nautae, haudquaquam dubitantes quin periisset, cursum quem facere coeperant tenuerunt. Sed novum et mirum facinus accidit. Delphinus repente inter undas adnavit, fluitantique sese homini subdidit, et dorso super fluctus edito tulit, incolumique eum corpore et ornatu Taen-

arum in terram Laconicam devexit. Tum Arion prorsus ex eo loco Corinthum petivit, talemque Periandro regi, qualis delphino vectus erat, inopinanti sese obtulit: rem sicuti acciderat narravit. Rex verba parum credidit; Arionem, quasi falleret, custodiri iussit; nautae, ablegato Arione, interrogati sunt ecquid audivissent in his locis unde venissent de Arione. Dixerunt hominem, cum inde irent, in terra Italia fuisse, illic bene agere et omnium aures delectare, atque gratia fortunatum pecuniaque opulentum esse. Tum inter haec verba Arion cum fidibus et vestitu, cum quibus in mare exsiluerat, exstitit: nautae, stupefacti convictique, ire infitias non potuerunt.

## XXXVII.

*Arion.*

Nomen Arionium Siculas impleverat urbes,  
Captaque erat lyricis Ausonis ora sonis.  
Inde domum repetens puppem conscendit Arion,  
Atque ita quaesitas arte ferebat opes.  
Forsitan, infelix, ventos undasque timebas:  
At tibi nave tua tutius aequor erat.  
Namque gubernator destricto constitit ense,  
Ceteraque armata conscia turba manu.  
Quid tibi cum gladio? dubiam rege, navita, pinum;  
Non haec sunt digitis arma tenenda tuis.  
Ille, metu vacuus, "Mortem non deprecor," inquit,  
"Sed liceat sumpta pauca referre lyra."

Dant veniam, ridentque moram. Caput ille coronam,  
Quae possit crines, Phoebe, decere tuos :  
Induerat Tyrio bis tinctam murice pallam :  
Reddidit icta suos pollice chorda sonos.  
Protinus in medias ornatus desilit undas,  
Spargitur impulsa caerulea puppis aqua ;  
Inde — fide maius — tergo delphina recurvo  
Se memorant oneri supposuisse novo.  
Ille sedens citharamque tenet, pretiumque vehendi,  
Cantat et aequoreas carmine mulcet aquas.

---

## SECTION 57.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE AND "CUM" ("WHEN").

*Having done this he returned home.*

*When he had done this he returned home.*

These two English sentences have (as nearly as possible) the same meaning. Similarly, in Latin, there is practically no difference between the two following:—

Hac re confecta domum rediit.

Cum hanc rem confecisset domum rediit.

Again—

Me duce, quid timebitis ?

Cum ego ducam (fut. ind.) quid timebitis ?

*Under my guidance, what will you fear ?*

(186.)

1. Te dūce multa speramus.  
Cum tu dūcis nihil timendum putamus.
2. Labieno urbi praefecto in Italiam profectus est.  
Cum Labienum urbi praefecisset in Helvetiorum  
fines iter fecit.
3. Me absente quis tibi auxilio venit?  
Cum ego abessem, pauperibus non subveniebatur.
4. Dictatore nominato, omnia ad bellum gerendum  
parabantur.  
Cum dictator nominatus esset, speravimus fore  
ut bellum conficeretur.
5. Rege capitis condemnato, iudices odio erant multis.  
Cum rex capitis condemnatus esset, nemini iudi-  
cum in urbe manere licuit.
6. Consule Tullio, Catilina periculo erat reipublicae.  
Cum Tullius consul esset, perditis hominibus  
praefuit Catilina.
7. Hac re nuntiata, nihil sibi timendum putavit.  
Cum haec res nuntiata esset, diem colloquio dixit.
8. Obsidibus datis, speravimus fore ut nobis liceret  
per Haeduorum fines iter facere.  
Cum obsides nobis dedissent, putavimus Haeduos  
nobis potestatem facturos redeundi domum.
9. Tullio loquente, tacendum est.  
Cum Tullius loquitur, clamorem tollere nemo  
audet.
10. Urbe capta, milites sperant se aliquid praemii  
accepturos.

Cum urbs capta erit, aliquantum vini militibus dabitur.

11. Servis venditis, satis pecuniae mihi erit.

Cum domum vendidero, pecuniam solvere tibi potero.

(187.)

*Cum* ("when") to be used alternately with the ablative absolute.

1. When the city was taken, the soldiers were allowed to return to Italy.

On the capture of the city, we imposed a large tax on the citizens.

2. When Tullius teaches me I learn much.

With Tullius for master I excel the others.

3. When I was sleeping he appointed a day for the conference.

When I was sleeping he promised that I would give ten hostages.

4. When I was absent he pretended that I was willing to sell the flowers for less.

In my absence he said that I didn't value the flowers highly.

5. When I have made my speech, all the citizens will agree.

When I have made my speech, I shall go home to write a letter.

6. When all my property had been put on board ship I was not allowed to set out.

When all my property had been embarked the

king said that I must return to the city of Paris.

7. Having appointed Caius to the command of the cavalry, he resolved to attack the enemy at once.

When he had appointed Caius to the command of the cavalry, he drew up the army in front of the camp.

8. Having drawn up his army, he offered battle to the enemy.

When the army was drawn up, the cavalry made a charge into the midst of the enemy.

9. When you have given us hostages, you will be allowed to be free.

When you have given hostages, you will not dare to hurt our allies the Haedui.

(188.)

1. When I am consul, the citizens hope for peace.  
When I am consul, the soldiers till the fields.
2. Having read my letter, he gave you some money.  
When he had read my letter, he said that he was angry with the king.
3. When he learns these facts, he will appoint Caius governor of the town.  
When he learns these facts, he will ask me what ought to be done.
4. When the excellent Caius was condemned for theft, my father said that the matter was a disgrace to the state.

On the condemnation of the excellent Caius for theft, we went away to Capua through grief at the loss of our friend.

5. When the ship was launched, those who stood around raised a shout.

When the ship was launched, we all said that we had seen nothing more beautiful.

6. When he had killed the traveller, he fled to the midst of the woods.

He killed the traveller and escaped to the top of the mountain.

7. When the day was fixed for the battle one of the soldiers said that he was not well.

When the day was fixed for the battle he said that he wanted to see his mother.

8. We weighed anchor and followed the enemy's ships.  
When we had weighed anchor we could not see the ships of the enemy.

9. When I am general the Gauls will soon be conquered.

With me for general will the queen fear the Gauls?

## SECTION 58.

WHENCE? WHITHER? WHERE?

How to answer the questions—

Unde venis? *Whence do you come?* Quo ibis? *Where (whither) will you go?* Ubi est Caius? *Where is Caius?*

Use a preposition with all common<sup>1</sup> nouns, also with the names of countries :

ab urbe venio.      ad agros ibo.      in templo est.  
e Gallia venio.      in Italiam ibo.      in Britannia est.

Use no preposition with the name of a town :

Roma venio, *I come from Rome* ; Romam ibo, *I shall go to Rome* ; Est Romae, Corinthi, Athenis, Carthagine, *He is at Rome, etc.*

The town *at which* is put in the ablative ; unless it is a singular word of the first or second declension, when it is put in the genitive.

Use no preposition with *domus* and *rus* :

Domo (mea) venio, *I come from home* ; Domum (meam) ibo, *I shall go home* ; Domi (suae) est, *He is at home* ; Rure venio, *I come from the country* ; Rus ibo, *I shall go into the country* ; Rure est, *He is in the country.*

Note the following phrases in which the ablative is used without preposition :

Nobili genere natus (literally, born from a noble family),  
*A man of noble birth.*

Obscuro loco natus, *A man of humble birth.*

Summo loco natus, *A man of noble birth.*

(189.)

1. Romam veniens video rure redeuntem senem.
2. Me obscuro natum loco consulem videtis.
3. Imperatum est militi ut rure statim rediret.

<sup>1</sup> The difference between common and proper nouns may be best seen from a few instances. Common nouns : city, man, river. Proper nouns : London, Caius, Tiber.



4. Ab urbe Carthagine profectus in Britanniam iter fecit ut urbem Londinium videret.
5. Si ex me quaesiverit num Capuae fuerim, respondebo me domi fuisse.
6. Iste pauperrimus, qui aliquid cibi a me petebat, summo loco natus esse dicitur.
7. Cum mihi responsum esset amicum me decepisse, Londinio Lutetiam discessi.
8. Domo profectus ad urbem venit; nec quisquam puero persuadere poterat ut ad matrem rediret.
9. Cum Londinio ab urbe profectus esset, mare transire non ausus est.
10. Spero me Athenas ad urbem omnium clarissimam iturum.
11. Fama est Metellum, nobili genere natum, ad Siciliam profecturum belli conficiendi causa.
12. Num, opere confecto, domo abiturus es?
13. Cum Corinthi essem, iucundiores vitam egi quam Nicopoli ago.

(190.)

1. From Rome he went to Gaul that he might impose a tax on the Haedui: at Geneva he saw our leader, who promised to persuade the Haedui.
2. Catiline, a man of noble birth, was on Caesar's side.
3. Having set out from his home by night he arrived at the foot of the mountain at daybreak.
4. Those who came from the city of Geneva said that our friend Balbus would be a protection to the Helvetii.

5. I have come from the country to buy a horse.  
Can you not sell for less ?
6. I have not much money : I must return home in the evening.
7. I am a man of humble birth : shall I be allowed to be consul ?
8. Since he had come to our city from Britain, we appointed him to the command of *our* ships. He was in command of the fleet for eight months : when he had conquered the Germans, he died at Paris.
9. When he had learned these facts, the general started from the territory of the Belgae that he might come to the assistance of the fifth legion.
10. Scipio, a man of noble birth, was in command of this legion.
11. It makes a great difference to me that that fellow has been acquitted by the judge.
12. Ask the boy whether he comes from home ; *and* whether his mother has returned from Carthage.
13. You may inform him that I saw your father at Naples.

## SECTION 59.

### THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT, INSTRUMENT, ETC.

1. A patre monitus est, *He was warned by his father.*

The person by whom something is done is put in the ablative with the preposition *a*, *ab*.

2. *Hominem gladio interficit, He kills the man with his sword.*

The instrument with which something is done is put in the ablative without a preposition.

3. *Cum rege rediit, He returned with the king.*

The preposition *cum* must be used when "with" means "in company with."

4. *Viro comitata, Accompanied by her husband.*

Omit *a, ab* with this verb.

5. Ablative of time—*Eo die, On that day ; Quarta hora, At the fourth hour.*

No preposition is required with *hora, dies, annus*, and other words that express divisions of time, in answering the question, At what time? Some other words are also used without a preposition to show the time or occasion.

*Adventu regis, On the arrival of the king.*

*Iussu consulis, By order of the consul.*

6. Ablative of place—

*Terra marique, By land and sea.*

*Parentis loco est mihi, He takes the place of a father to me.*

*Numero hostium habetur, He is regarded as an enemy*  
(literally, *He is reckoned in the number of the enemy*).

With these words no preposition is used; with other words it cannot (as a rule) be omitted: *in horto, in templo*, "in the garden," "in the temple."

(191.)

1. *Caesar Labienum praemittit cum quingentis equitibus ut collem occupet.*

2. *Si vult a civibus laudari, parendum est legibus civitatis.*

3. Eodem die, cum rure rediret, certior factus est  
filiam tertia hora mortuam esse.
4. Nisi responderis mihi, hoc gladio te interficiam.
5. Cum aliquid cibi cepisset, comitatus amico domum  
suam rediit.
6. Nonne imperator militibus parentis loco est?
7. Nonne amicorum numero habendus est, qui domi  
meae sex dies erat?
8. Genava cum omnibus copiis progressus fines Hel-  
vetiorum vastat.
9. Rex dixit se omnibus gentibus terra marique  
imperare.
10. Adventu Caesaris speravimus nos urbem facillime  
capturos.
11. Hac re nuntiata, ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit,  
posterum diem pugnae constituit.
12. Veneno interfectus est a servo, cui pepercera.
13. Iniussu patris hortos pluris emit: quibus in hortis  
nihil erat florum, arbores paucae.
14. Colle occupato, hostes prima luce adoriri consti-  
tuimus.

(192.)

1. On Caesar's arrival the Belgae sent messengers to  
the Germans to ask for help.
2. I promise that under my leadership war shall be  
waged with the enemy by land and sea.
3. When<sup>1</sup> his father died he went away into the  
country accompanied by his mother.
4. I asked him by whom the book was written.

<sup>1</sup> Translate both by *cum* and by the ablative absolute.

5. By the general's order the slave was bound by the soldiers.
6. I have always regarded as a friend the man who came to our assistance on that day.
7. Unless you see the man with your eyes, you will not believe me.
8. If he dies, I shall take the place of father to the boy.
9. In the fourth year he returned home with his friend Caius.
10. On our arrival the barbarians will understand how dear to us is justice.
11. As I have followed you for three years by land and sea, I can say that I have been faithful to you.
12. Was it friendly to go away on my arrival? I came home at the fourth hour: at the fifth you started for Corinth.

## SECTION 60.

### ABLATIVE OF MANNER, CAUSE, ETC.

1. More tuo locutus es, *You spoke in your usual fashion.*  
More populi Romani, *In accordance with the custom of the Roman people.*  
Alia ratione bellum gerunt, *They wage war on a different system.*  
Magna voce clamavit, *He shouted loudly.*

In the above sentences the ablative indicates the *manner* in which something is done.

2. Id quod feci benevolentia feci, *What I did, I did from kindness.*

Odio reipublicae inimicissimi mihi fuerunt, *Through hatred of the state they were very hostile to me.*

Senectute mortuus est, *He died of old age.*

Here the ablative indicates the *cause*.

3. Virtute praestat, *He excels in valour.*

Here the ablative *limits* the meaning of *praestat*: it shows in what *respect* he excels.

(193.)

1. Helvetiis, cum obsides dedissent, liberis discedere licuit.
2. Mulieres, ab urbe capta progressae, pacem ab imperatore more suo petunt.
3. Quibus auditis, Caesar magna voce clamat nemini parcendum esse.
4. Non odio mei fecit sed odio reipublicae.
5. Certior factus sum a sociis nostris Belgas eadem ratione bellum esse gesturos.
6. Cum ceteris Gallis virtute et scientia rei militaris praestarent, speraverunt se nostros terra marique victuros.
7. Sed spes fefellit: eadem aestate Dumnorix, imperator optimus, senectute mortuus est.
8. Qua re nuntiata, omnes pacis cupidi magna voce clamant domum redeundum esse.

9. Cum legati ad me venissent, negavi me more populi Romani posse iter per provinciam dare.
10. Tum Gaius, infimi generis homo, odio mei incitatus, dixit iudicem clementiam anteposuisse iustitiae.
11. Num quis credet te ceteris pueris sapientia praestare ?
12. Hunc regem maiores nostri terra marique victum trans Rhenum regere iusserunt.

(194.)

1. In the same year my excellent father died of old age at Athens.
2. Through grief at the loss of her husband my mother said that she would not return to Paris.
3. You say that I wrote the letter from hatred of you : I tell you that I wrote it from love for the state.
4. In accordance with the custom of our ancestors we will spare the conquered if they give us hostages.
5. Through love of justice he returned to the camp of the enemy, accompanied by his brother.
6. The others had promised to return ; for fear of death they were unwilling to do that which they had promised.
7. He shouted loudly that he did not regard such a man as a friend.
8. Do you think that war should be waged on a different system ?

9. When he had conquered all the forces of the enemy both by land and sea he was able to die with resignation.
10. The low-born Caius thinks that he excels all men in wisdom.
11. I hope the consul will not die of his wound: the doctor thinks that he will recover.
12. Don't forget the verses which I sent you.

## SECTION 61.

### THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

Vir summo ingenio, *A man of great ability.*

Urbs ingenti magnitudine, *A city of vast size.*

Compare the use of the genitive of quality, section 49.

---

*I could have come* (that is, *I had the power to come*), Venire potui.

*I ought to have come* (that is, *It was my duty to come*), Venire debui.

Observe that the Latin does not use the perfect infinitive with *potui* and *debui*.

(195.)

1. Homo est summa virtute, nulla sapientia.
2. Eo die venire potui: hodie venire non possum.



3. Putat se summo ingenio esse hominem : carmina autem, quae condit, nemo vult legere.
4. Nonne debuit sapientiores hominem praesidio urbi relinquere ?
5. Iste gratissimus est mulieribus, sed militibus odio.
6. Cum e silva venissem, vidi urbem ingenti magnitudine.
7. Imperatore non exspectato, filius regis, summa virtute adulescens, in medios hostes impetum fecit.
8. Erat mihi parentis loco : debuit me monere ne tanti agros emerem.
9. Puer est summa audacia : multa me cotidie rogat.
10. Cum duobus in locis bellum terra marique gereretur, omnibus pugnandum erat.
11. Hac re nuntiata ab urbe discedere debuit.
12. Quid potui facere ? Nonne Cicero, summa sapientia homo, nihil faciendum esse putavit ?
13. Curae est mihi ut hoc tibi bellum committatur.
14. Dic mihi num mortuus sit.—Non est mortuus sed moriturus.
15. Amici est amicum adiuvere.

(196.)

(Do not use the *genitive* of quality in this exercise.)

1. I ought to have informed you that the general is distressed at the death of the prisoner.

2. He regards these prisoners as hostages ; in their lifetime no harm will be done to our allies by the Germans.
3. Don't you believe me ? Titus, a man of the greatest wisdom, said that this fleet would be a danger to the state.
4. You ought to have come to my house to take exercise.
5. That audacious Balbus said that he would be both a protection and an ornament to the city.
6. Yesterday I was in the country : I could have sent the flowers which you desired to the town.
7. If you obey me, you will understand that I have acted from kindness.
8. He has composed a book of poems which I will give you : he is said to be a man of the greatest ability.
9. When he had chosen a place for the city he built a temple of vast size.
10. He hoped that the soldiers would understand that war must now be waged on a different system.
11. He was a man of large build : he ought to have had a bigger horse.
12. In my father's lifetime I was not allowed to be a sailor.

## SECTION 62.

## THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

## GENITIVE.

*Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*: always used in the genitive.

*Magni, plurimi, parvi, minimi, nihili*: these genitives are used with the verb *esse* ("to be," "to cost") and *facere* ("to value") and other verbs meaning "to value."

## ABLATIVE.

*Magno, plurimo, parvo, minimo, nihilo*: these ablatives are used with all verbs except those mentioned opposite.

All substantives are used in the ablative.<sup>1</sup>

Quanti haec emisti? *Minimo, For how much did you buy this? For very little.*

Magni haec facio, sed parvo emi, *I value this highly, but I bought it cheap.*

Nonne plurimo haec emisti?—*Tribus talentis, Did you not buy this very dear?—Yes, for three talents.*

(197.)

1. Quanti equum, quem a patre accepisti, vendere cupis?—*Plurimo.*
2. Num magni facis hunc librum?—*Parvo emi, sed pluris vendere volo.*

<sup>1</sup> The only exception is *pretium*, which is used in the genitive or ablative.

3. Quis vestrum nescit quanti haec aestimentur?
4. Nonne capitis condemnari debuit, qui patriam auro vendidit?
5. Quanti libertatem empturus est captivus?—Duo-  
bus talentis.
6. Si parvo volet vendere, licebit tibi duo servos  
emere; si magni aestimabit, noli emere.
7. Quis tibi persuasit ut hunc miserrimum canem  
tanti emeresset? Iam moriturus videtur.
8. Qui canem vendidit dixit se canem minoris nun-  
quam vendidisse; fore ut mox convalesceret.
9. Cum convaluerit, plurimo vendere poteris.
10. Homo stultissimus tantidem<sup>1</sup> equum vendidit  
quanti emerat.
11. Sapientes dicunt illum equum iam pluris aesti-  
mandum esse.
12. Dixit se nihilo emisisse librum.
13. Nihili facit libros, equos plurimi.

(198.)

1. Ask that man whether he is willing to buy the  
ship at a higher price.
2. At what price do you sell birds?—At a very low  
price.
3. Who set you free from debt?—Caius, a man of  
the greatest kindness, bought my house for  
three talents.
4. He said that he did this through love for my  
father.

<sup>1</sup> *Tantidem*, "for *exactly* the same price (not a bit more)."

5. When he had bought the house he gave it to me for a present.
6. I answered that I should always regard him as a friend.
7. I think you bought the flowers at a very high price. I don't think much of them.
8. If I can sell my fields for a low price I shall be able to free myself from debt.
9. He often came to my house to ask whether I was willing to buy all his books for a talent.
10. Since I did not think much of the books I told the slave that I was unwilling to see the man.
11. Corn is very dear this month: it is said that many will die of cold and hunger.
12. I cannot sell the garden for as much as I bought at.
13. For how much did you buy it?—For a small sum.

### SECTION 63.

#### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IMPLYING THE NON-FULFILMENT OF THE CONDITION.

1. *If Caius had come yesterday, he would have seen the consul, Si Gaius heri venisset, consulem vidisset.*

“If he had come he would have seen” implies that he did not come, and therefore did not see. In sentences like this, in which it is implied that the condition was not realised, use the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.

2. *If Caius were here now, he would tell us everything, Si Gaius nunc adesset, omnia nobis diceret.*

This is a sentence of the same kind, but the time is present not past. "If he were here now he would tell us" implies that he is not here, and therefore is not telling us. In other words, it is implied that the condition is not being realised. The imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.

3. *If I had not come, he would have died, Nisi venissem, mortuus esset.*

Translate "If . . . not" by *nisi*, not by *si* . . . *non*.

(199.)

1. Si ab urbe quarta hora rediisset, me vidisset.
2. Si minoris vendere vellet, vinum emerem: non multum est mihi pecuniae.
3. Si rogasses, respondiissem: quid quaereres nescii.
4. Nisi fugisset, proditiis condennatus esset: iudice absente ab urbe discessit.
5. Si honestam vitam ageres, nemo tibi noceret: sed omnibus bonis es periculo.
6. Si eadem ratione bellum gessissem, victus essem.
7. Si ego tibi parentis loco essem, non tibi liceret equos tanti emere.
8. Si avidus esset auri, carmina non conderet. Pauperrimus esse mavult.
9. Si me de periculo certiore fecisses, te adiuvissem.
10. Nisi amici mei mortui essent, quis me accusare ausus esset?

11. Epistulam non scriberem, nisi scirem te amicorum numero me habere; si adesses, me aliquid monere posses. Quid sit faciendum, nescio.
12. Si certior factus esses regem Persarum domi tuae esse, quid fecisses?
13. Si Capuam ad urbem pervenissem, Hannibalem vidissem.

(200.)

1. If you had come to me yesterday, I would have spared you.
2. You are a man of humble birth; if you were the king's son, you would not be allowed to be judge.
3. On Caesar's arrival the prisoner would have fled if he had been able.
4. If I had been in command of the cavalry, I should have crossed the Rhine in order to help our allies.
5. If he were in the city, he would be a protection to us. I hope he will return in the evening.
6. If he did not favour the poor, the judge would be loved by everybody. He ought not to have spared the slave.
7. If I had been at the top of the tree I should have seen the king returning home with the legions.
8. The crowd of citizens was so great that I could see nothing.
9. If my house were an ornament to the city, I would not sell it for a low price.

10. If you had been able to inform me of the plans of Catiline, I would have given you a considerable sum of money.
11. If I had been present, you would not have dared to buy a horse for a talent.
12. If he were here, he would help us.

## SECTION 64.

### SOME COMPOUND VERBS.

Observe that many verbs compounded with prepositions repeat the preposition.

Adiit ad consulem, *He approached the consul.*

Expellam te ex urbe, *I will banish you from the city.*

Sometimes another preposition is used.

Deducit copias e finibus Gallorum, *He withdraws his troops from the territory of the Gauls.*

---

The verb "to leave" must be translated by different words in Latin according to its sense.

Discessit a patre, *He left his father.* (*Dis-cedo*, "I go apart from.")

Excessit ex urbe, *He left the city.* (*Ex-cedo* means "I go out of," and therefore could not be used in the preceding sentence.")

Reliquit librum domi, *He left his book at home.*



(201.)

1. Cum domus ab urbe longe abesset, ea hora venire non poteram.
2. Si mihi licuisset ad captivum adire, ei persuasissem.
3. Rex imperavit ut omnes barbari ex urbe excederent.
4. Nisi exercitum ex his finibus deduxeris, hostium numero te habebo.
5. Abducuntur homines ab agris ut milites fiant.
6. Nisi ego Catilinam ex hac urbe expulissem, quis saluti vobis fuisset?
7. Tullius, vir summa sapientia, dicit senectutem a rebus gerendis nos avocare.
8. Si certior factus essem te libros a sorore abstulisse, tibi non pepercissem.
9. A nobis aliquantum progressus, iter a flumine Rhodano avertit: eadem nocte in mediis silvis castra posuit.
10. Quibus rebus cognitis Galli ab urbe omnes copias deduxerunt, seque nunquam redituros promiserunt.
11. Si furti accusatus essem, ab amicis meis discedere maluissem.
12. Ad regem aditurus esse dicitur, ut aliquid praemii petat.
13. Si Hannibalem vicerit, magnum periculum ab urbe avertet.

(202.)

1. He approached the general that he might ask whether he had appointed a day for the battle.
2. When he had left the temple he went into the middle of the city to buy food.
3. The judge asked why he had taken the dog away from you.
4. If I had known that my father was going to return, I should have preferred to be away from home.
5. If we had not withdrawn our troops from the town, the Belgae would not have given us hostages.
6. If he had been condemned for treason, he would have been banished from his country.
7. He left us the same day that he might go to Asia to look for his brother.
8. Do not believe the man who has taken so much money away from you.
9. He left the camp that he might ask why our allies the Haedui had turned aside from us.
10. When I was away from the city, the base Catilina pretended to regard me as a friend.
11. If you maintain your opinion the king will banish you from this city.

## SECTION 65.

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(203.)

1. Cum tot milites interfecti essent, nihil voluptatis  
Caesari attulit victoria.
2. Quid clarius est victoria? Quid turpius fuga?
3. Nonne constat Britannis amoris esse libertatem,  
sapientiam Germanis?
4. Titus me docebit, summa diligentia homo: hoc  
magistro doctissimus fiam.
5. Gneio Pompeio, Caesaris inimico, maxima bella  
terra marique sunt commissa.
6. Cuius est audaciae, hominem obscurissimo natum  
loco consulatum petere!
7. Neminem Balbo pigriorem agere vitam dixit.
8. Me iudice, imperatorem monere debuit nihil fru-  
menti in castris esse.
9. Locum domui delegi, quo pulchriorem nunquam  
vidi.
10. Cum tibi parentis loco essem, nonne mihi parere  
debuisti?
11. Cur Corinthum Athenis profectus es? Nonne  
sapientiam voluptati anteponis?
12. Comitatus es Balbo, quo turpiorem neminem  
cognovi.
13. Superiore anno aliquantum pecuniae mihi solvere et  
debuit et potuit. Hoc te moneo, ne ei credas.

(204.)

1. With a fleet of a hundred ships he conquered the enemy both by land and by sea.
2. In accordance with the custom of the Roman people, I cannot spare you who have burned the city of our allies.
3. My friend Titus, a man of the greatest wisdom, says that women prefer mercy to justice.
4. Balbus, a man of humble birth, hopes to be elected tribune.
5. If I am unwilling you will not be allowed to become a soldier.
6. It will be better to persuade him : he spoke from love of your father.
7. If you had left the house in the middle of the night, it would not have mattered to me.
8. With you for their master I hope they will learn much.
9. Unless you obey the laws, you will be regarded as an enemy.
10. The judge, a man of the greatest wisdom, said that in accordance with the custom of our ancestors the slave must be condemned to death.
11. Who is juster than the judge ? Was not your slave a danger to the state ?
12. Does it matter to the citizens that you are a man of noble birth ? Do you *really* think that they will make you consul ?
13. When you praise me I know that you speak from kindness.

(205.)

1. When you return from the country to the city, you will be hateful to the king, dear to the soldiers.
2. He does not sell his ships at a higher price than we, but it is said that he is very rich.
3. If you had been banished I should have gone away from Italy with you.
4. So great is the boy's fear of the darkness that he does not dare to go into the wood by night.
5. I ought to have gone to him yesterday, but in my *usual* fashion I forgot my friend.
6. Tullius, a man of great ability, has died at Corinth of old age.
7. Is it not a *sign* of great diligence to read such a book?
8. If you were the poet's friend, would you read his verses?
9. In accordance with the custom of our ancestors, we wish to excel all nations in valour.
10. It is a sign of mercy but not of wisdom to spare the conquered.
11. If I were the general I should regard the Haedui as enemies.
12. When you have given twelve hostages, you will be allowed to leave the camp.
13. You will not be believed, if you take away the gold from the temple.

(206.)

1. If he believes the base Catiline, he is being deceived.
2. If you had left the city with us, who would have hurt you ?
3. I could have left my father on that day : to-day he is so miserable that I cannot leave the house.
4. Don't believe the man, if he pretends to be poor.
5. I will put you this one question : don't you prefer to lead an idle life ?
6. By order of the general I was sent to choose a place for the camp.
7. When I was away from the city he persuaded the soldiers that I ought to be condemned for treason.
8. If the king had agreed, I should have been banished from the city.
9. When you come to me you will not be allowed to be lazy.
10. Through fear of his father he did not dare to return home.
11. This being known, he cried out with a loud voice that Caius, a man of noble birth, ought to be set free.
12. We have been conquered by land and sea : we have no money, few soldiers.
13. Don't you think that houses ought to be built on a different system ?
14. Is it wise to make an old man general ?

## XXXVIII.

*Androclus and the Lion.*

## A.

Huius rei, Romae cum forte essem, spectator fui. In circo maximo multae erant saevientes ferae, aut forma aut ferocia excellentes. Sed praeter alia omnia leonum immanitas admirationi fuit, praeterque omnes ceteros unus. Is unus leo corporis impetu et vastitudine, terrificoque fremitu et sonoro, toris comisque cervicum fluctuantibus, animos oculosque omnium in sese converterat. Introductus erat inter complures ceteros ad pugnam bestiarum datos servus, cui nomen Androclo fuit. Hunc ille leo ubi vidit procul repente quasi admirans stetit; ac deinde sensim atque placide, tamquam noscicans hominem, ad Androclum accedit. Tum caudam, more adulantium canum, clementer et blande movet, hominisque se corpori adiungit, cruraque eius et manus prope iam exanimati metu lingua leniter demulcet. Androclus, inter illa tam atrocis ferae blandimenta, amissum animum recuperat. Paulatim oculos ad contuendum leonem refert. Tum, quasi mutua recognitione facta, laetos et gratulantes videres hominem et leonem.

## B.

Ea re prorsus tam admirabili maximi populi clamores excitati sunt accersitusque a Caesare Androclus

quaesitaque causa cur ille atrocissimus leo uni parisset. Tum Androclus rem mirificam narrat. "Cum provinciam," inquit, "Africam proconsulari imperio meus dominus obtineret, ego ibi iniquis eius et cotidianis verberibus ad fugam sum coactus; et, ut mihi a domino tutiores latebrae forent, in camporum et arenarum solitudines concessi, ac, si defuisset cibus, consilium fuit mortem aliquo pacto quaerere. Tum sole medio, specum quandam nactus remotam latebrosamque, in eam me penetro et recondo. Neque multo post ad eandem specum venit hic leo, debili uno et cruento pede, gemitus edens et murmura dolorem cruciatumque vulneris commiserantia. Hic primo quidem conspectu advenientis leonis territus mihi animus est. Sed postquam introgressus leo (ut re ipsa apparuit) in habitaculum illud suum videt me procul delitescentem mitis et mansuetus accessit, et sublatum pedem ostendere mihi et porrigere quasi opis petendae gratia visus est. Ibi ego stirpem ingentem vestigio pedis eius haerentem revelli, conceptamque saniem vulnere intimo expressi, accuratiusque sine magna iam formidine siccavi penitus atque deterse cruorem. Tunc mea medicina levatus pede in manibus meis posito recubuit et quievit atque ex eo die triennium totum ego et leo in eadem specu eodemque et victu viximus. Nam quas venabatur feras membra opimiora ad specum mihi suggerebat, quae ego, ignis copiam non habens, meridiano sole torrens edebam."



## C.

"Sed, ubi me vitae illius ferinae iam pertaesum est, leone in venatum profecto, reliqui specum, et, viam ferme tridui permensus, a militibus visus adprehensus-que sum, et ad dominum Africa Romam deductus. Is me statim rei capitalis damnandum dandumque ad bestias curavit."

Quae cum dixisset, dimissus est Androclus et poena solutus, leoque ei suffragiis populi donatus. Postea videbamus Androclum et leonem, loro tenui revinctum, urbe tota circum tabernas ire, donari aere Androclum, floribus spargi leonem, omnes ubique obvios dicere: "Hic est leo, hospes hominis; hic est homo, medicus leonis."

## SECTION 66.

## THE WORDS "SOME" AND "ANY."

1. *Aliquis* means "some one," and is used in positive sentences:—

*Aliquis venit, Some one has come.*

2. (a) *Quisquam* means "any one," and is used in negative<sup>1</sup> sentences:—

*Nego quemquam profectum esse, I deny that any one has set out.*

(b) *Ullus* means "any," and is used in negative sentences: it always has a substantive with it, whereas *quisquam* is nearly always used alone:—

<sup>1</sup> And sentences in which a negative is implied.

Nego ullum hominem profectum esse, *I deny that any man has set out.*

3. *Quis* is used for "any," "any one," with *ne, si, nisi, num, cum* :—

*Si quis audit, If any one hears.*

*Num quis audit? Does any one hear?*

*Ne quis audiat, Lest any one hear.*

*Quis* (meaning "any") is thus declined when it has not a substantive agreeing with it.

|      | SINGULAR. |       |      |        | PLURAL.   |        |        |
|------|-----------|-------|------|--------|-----------|--------|--------|
| Nom. | quis      | qua   | quid | qui    | quae      | qua    | (quae) |
| Acc. | quem      | quam  | quid | quos   | quas      | qua    | (quae) |
| Gen. |           | cuius |      | quorum | quarum    | quorum |        |
| Dat. |           | cui   |      |        | quibus or | quis   |        |
| Abl. | quo       | qua   | quo  |        | quibus or | quis   |        |

Agreeing with a substantive, *qui, quae, quod* is generally used instead of the forms given above :—

*Si quid dicit, If he says anything, but*

*Si quod verbum dicit, If he utters any word.*

*Aliquis* and *quisquam* are similarly declined :—

*Accepi aliquid, I have received something.*

*Aliquod donum accepi, I have received some present.*

*Ullus* is declined like *alter*, genitive *ullius*.

*Quisquam* has no ablative singular and no plural: *ullus* supplies its place.

(207.)

1. Balbus dicit se aliquem in horto meo vidisse;  
Gaius negat se quemquam vidisse.

2. Si quid<sup>1</sup> cibi haberem, nihil a te peterem.
3. Negavit ullum esse periculum in bello gerendo.
4. Si quis te vidisset, furti accusavisset.
5. Ut regem deciperet negavit quidquam auri in templo esse.
6. Neque ullam epistulam a te acceperam, nec quisquam me certiore fecerat de adventu Caesaris.
7. Rogavi Titum, amicum tuum, num quid novi de te audiisset.
8. Negavit quemquam te vidisse in ulla parte urbis.
9. Si ullo modo fieri potuisset, ab urbe ipse discessissem.
10. Divitias in aliqua parte urbis conditas esse putavit : qua in parte essent nesciit.
11. Ne quis fugeret, omnes vinciri iussit.
12. Cum dixissem periculum aliquod esse in isto negotio, negavit ille quidquam esse periculi.
13. Cum quis ab urbe redierit, de omnibus rebus certiores fiamus.
14. Si qui nauta nobiscum esset, nihil esset timendum. Num tantos fluctus unquam vidisti ?

(208.)

1. I saw some one like you in the country : I did not know who it was.
2. He denied that he had spared any one.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that this use of *quid*, *quidquam*, and *aliquid* with the partitive genitive is very common : *Num quid novi est ?* "Is there any news ?" *Dixit se aliquid auri reperisse*, "He said he had found some gold."

3. He denied that he had bought any books at Corinth.
4. I say this lest any one may think that I am pretending.
5. If any one had informed me that you were in command of the legions, I should have congratulated you.
6. The audacious Tullius says that he will accuse some one of treason.
7. I will ask the prisoner whether he has given any answer to the judge.
8. I shall go into the country to-morrow: I hope I shall find some companion.
9. If any citizen had heard me, he would not have believed me.
10. I wish to give you some present that you may never forget me.
11. We saw no one in the temple, nor was *there* any horse in the fields.
12. If *there* had been any soldier in the wood, he would not have escaped.

## SECTION 67.

### DOUBLE QUESTIONS. 1. DIRECT.

*Did you conquer, or were you conquered?* Utrum vicisti,  
an victus es? *or, Vicistine, an victus es?*

*Have you answered, or not?* Utrum respondisti, annon?

In a direct double question *utrum* or *-ne* is used in the first part, *an* is used in the second part ; “or not” is translated by *annon*.

*Utrum* (from *uter*) means “which of two things?” it prepares the way for a twofold question :

*Utrum vivit an mortuus est? Which of these two is the case? Is he living or is he dead?*

(209.)

1. *Utrum in urbe mansit, an rus abiit?*
2. *Credisne mihi, annon? Dic quid putes.*
3. *Utrum iussu Caesaris e castris excessit, annon?*
4. *Utrum benevolentia fecisti, an timore consulis?*
5. *Uter nostrum gratior est civibus? tune, qui simulavisti te omnes hostes terra marique victurum. an ego qui domi meae mansi?*
6. *Utrum negas te quicquam argenti ab amico meo abstulisse, an dicis tibi licuisse hoc facere?*
7. *Quo se miser vertet? domumne an ad matrem?*
8. *Utrum mavis consul esse Romae, an rex in Asia?*
9. *Utrum Labienum castris praefecisti, annon?*
10. *Utrum te invito promittere debui, an tacere?*
11. *Vesperine abiturus es a nobis, an prima luce profecturus?*
12. *Utrum consilium aliquod iniisti, an nescis quid sit faciendum?*
13. *Nonne Gallis vectigal imposuit ut satis pecuniae haberet ad bellum gerendum?*
14. *Negavit ullo modo fieri posse ut bellum ante hiemem conficeretur.*

15. Utrum aliquem misisti, annon?—Quid tua interest num quem miserim?

(210.)

1. Have you written the letter or not?
2. Did he give you this for a present, or sell it you for a small sum of money?
3. Must we pass the winter in Gaul, or shall we be allowed to return home?
4. Do you remember me, or do you think that you have never seen me?
5. On the arrival of the horsemen, did you give battle or did you remain in the camp?
6. Is that temple an ornament to the city or not?
7. Did you return through love for your mother or through fear of your father?
8. Have you resolved to withdraw your troops from the territory of our allies or not?
9. Have they already paid the money, or did they promise to give it to you to-morrow?
10. Have I asked you your opinion or not?
11. Are you willing to sell me the house for five talents or not?
12. If he had said that he was unwilling I would have bought *it* for more.
13. Do you think that it is lawful<sup>1</sup> for you to be lazy?

<sup>1</sup> Use *licēre*.

## SECTION 68.

## DOUBLE QUESTIONS. 2. INDIRECT.

*I asked him whether he had conquered or had been conquered,*

Rogavi eum utrum vicisset an victus esset, or,

Rogavi eum vicissetne an victus esset.

*I will ask him whether he has answered or not, Rogabo eum utrum responderit, necne.*

In an indirect double question the verb is of course in the subjunctive mood. The first part of the question is introduced by *utrum* or *-nē*, the second part by *an* ; but “or not” is *necne*, not *annon*.

(211.)

1. Rogabo eum utrum Athenis an Corinthi vixerit.
2. Nostra multum interfuit utrum Caesar consul crearetur an Pompeius.
3. Quaerendum est utrum meminerit nostri, necne.
4. Difficile dictu est, utrum cives magis virtutem an sapientiam admirentur.
5. Quid mea interest liceatne tibi frumentatum ire, necne ?
6. Quaeram ex Tullio, amico meo, utrum vesperi sit venturus necne.
7. Sunt mihi decem legiones spectatae virtutis : nonne vestra interest utrum in Gallia maneam an vobiscum bellum geram ?

8. Rogavi eum invitone patre domum duobus talentis emisset, necne.
9. Negavit cuiusquam interesse utrum rure maneret an ad oppidum abiret.
10. Num quis imperatorem rogare ausus est utrum in Haeduorum finibus hiemare constituisset, necne?
11. Iudicibus quaerendum est utrum servum interfecerit necne.
12. Utrum tibi imperavit ut discederes, annon?
13. Rogavit aliquis milesne essem, necne.

(212.)

1. It does not matter to me whether you stay at home or go to Paris.
2. I ask you whether you have been persuaded or not.
3. It matters greatly whether we regard Caesar as a friend or as an enemy.
4. I asked my friend Tullius whether he wished to go to Italy in the winter or the summer.
5. It is difficult to understand whether the general was dear to the citizens or hateful.
6. I did not dare to ask the prisoner whether he had been condemned to death or acquitted.
7. I must ask whether wine is very dear at Carthage or not.
8. What does it matter to you whether I am allowed to be away from home or not? Ought I to obey you?



9. I order you to ask Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, whether he is willing to give us ten hostages or not.
10. It will make a great difference whether I march into your territory with five legions or return to the city of Geneva.
11. I asked the man whether he remembered you or not.
12. Does it matter whether I am considered wise or foolish by this man?

## SECTION 69.

### “IAMDIU” WITH THE PRESENT TENSE.

*He has long been in command of the army, iamdiu praeest exercitui.*

Note the difference between the English and the Latin idiom. We say, “He has been general a long time,” and leave it to be understood that he is still general; the Latin uses the present, “He is in command (and has been) this long time.” Compare the French, *Il est ici depuis longtemps*, “He has been here a long time.”

(213.)

1. Iamdiu rex est: ab omnibus iamdiu et amatur et timetur.
2. Romae iamdiu vivo, nec quisquam de hac re me certiores fecit.

3. Si ex urbe expulsus esset ad insulam Cyprum abiisset.
4. Utrum iamdiu domi tuae vivit, an heri venit?
5. Num nostra interesse putas hominem obscuro loco natum consulem fieri?
6. Hanc artem iamdiu discimus, nec quicquam scire videmur.
7. Si quid de hac re servus dixisset, aliquem ad te misissem.
8. Hanc silvam iamdiu vendere cupio: nec quicquam talento vult emere.
9. Utrum arbor illa ornamento est meo horto, annon?
10. Si Romam mane rediero, ad te veniam.
11. Cum ad portum veneris, ne quid timueris: videbis aliquem qui te flumen transportabit.
12. Cum iamdiu rure viveret, in urbem redire nolebat.
13. Si hostes vidisses, negasses ullam esse spem redeundi domum.
14. Num quid voluptatis ea res tibi attulit?
15. Iamdiu spero fore ut convalescat.

(214.)

1. I have long been a soldier: with me for leader, there is nothing to fear.
2. I have bought books from you for a long while: I wish to give you this for a present.
3. This victory will be an honour to you when the king is informed of your bravery.
4. I have long desired to spare these women who have done us no harm.

5. He was born in a humble position, but he has long been general.
6. I have long been afraid of your slave : is he not considered a man of tried valour ?
7. If he comes to my house, I shall go away into the midst of the garden.
8. Through fear of the dog he remains at the top of the tree.
9. Will he be obeyed by the soldiers ? Will he not be a danger to the state ?
10. Is there any one in the temple ? I think I saw some one.
11. I have long been hoping that you will return, nor can any one persuade me that you will be condemned for treason.
12. He denied that he had bought any birds at such a price.
13. Was he in command of the ships or the horsemen ?
14. I appointed some one governor of the town : did it matter to you who he was ?

## SECTION 70.

### SOME VERBS FOLLOWED BY "UT."

*I ask you to leave the house, Rogo te ut domo excedas.*

*I advise you to stay, Moneo te ut maneat.*

Many verbs and phrases, which in English are followed by the infinitive, are followed by *ut* in Latin : among these are the following :—

*Impero tibi ut facias (but te facere iubeo), I give you orders to do it.*

*Rogo te ut facias, I ask you to do it.*

*Peto a te ut facias, I beg . . .*

*Oro te ut facias, I pray . . .*

*Hortor te ut facias, I urge . . .*

*Moneo te ut facias, I advise . . .*

*Persuadeo tibi ut facias, I persuade . . .*

*Mihi curae est ut faciam, I am anxious . . .*

After these verbs *ut* introduces a final clause, and will therefore be replaced by *ne* when there is a negative with the English infinitive :—

*I advise you not to stay, Moneo te ne maneat.*

The impersonal *accidit* ("it happens") is followed by *ut* introducing a consequence, and therefore by *ut . . . non*, not *ne*, when there is a negative :—

*I happened not to see him, Accidit ut eum non viderem (literally, It happened that . . .)*

*Mos est, "It is the custom," is also followed by ut.*

*It is not my custom to sleep in the morning, Non est mos meus ut mane dormiam.*

(215.)

1. Tullio persuadere debuisti ut Corinthum nobiscum iret.
2. Mos est barbarorum, qui trans flumen incolunt, ut omnes captivos edant.
3. Putasne te Ariovisto persuadere posse, ut copias e nostris finibus deducat, annon ?

4. Num legatus tibi imperavit ut castris excederes ?
5. Num quem rogavisti ut librum tuum tanti emat ?
6. Illud unum vos oro, iudices, ne putetis me haec amore pecuniae fecisse.
7. Gaius, unus ex amicis meis, dixit aliquem milites hortatum esse ut imperatorem interficerent.
8. Hoc a vobis peto, ut memineritis nullos mihi amicos esse.
9. Accidit ut in urbe essem cum tu rus venires.
10. Iamdiu te moneo ne hominem infini generis amicorum numero habeas.
11. Mihi curae est ut tibi persuadeam<sup>1</sup> me duce nihil esse periculi.
12. Ita factum est ut nemo tibi crederet.
13. Quis tibi imperavit ut equitatum a flumine deduceres ?

(216.)

1. I pray you to believe me : I did this from kindness.
2. I shall urge him to maintain his opinion : I have long agreed *with him*.
3. If we persuade him to fight, we shall be considered foolish.
4. Did you advise me to read your friend Tullius' book or not ?
5. I am anxious to leave the island : will you buy my house at a low price ?

<sup>1</sup> Notice that *moneo* and *persuadeo* are followed by the infinitive when they do not introduce a final clause : *Moneo te ut eas*, "I warn you to go," but *Monco te Caesarem profectum esse*, "I warn you that Caesar has set out."

6. I think I can persuade some one to buy the ship at a higher price.
7. I will beg him not to take any food away from the dog.
8. It is the custom of the Britanni to make an old man a judge.
9. You ought to have given orders to the cavalry to approach the city by night.
10. If you had not been banished from our city, the king would have asked you to command the army.
11. I happened to be staying in the country when he went away to Corinth.
12. Do you think that Caesar will be a protection to the city or not?
13. I have been informed that some one has advised King Ariovistus not to attack our camp.

## SECTION 71.

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES REFERRING VAGUELY TO FUTURE TIME.

1. *If he were to conquer the Gauls, I should rejoice, Si Gallos vincat, gaudeam.*

The present<sup>1</sup> subjunctive is used in Latin in a conditional sentence of this kind which refers vaguely to the future.

---

<sup>1</sup> The perfect subjunctive is also used with nearly the same sense as the present.

2. Compare with this the conditional sentence which refers to present time and implies that the condition is not realised (imperfect subjunctive):—

Si Gallos vinceret, gauderem, *If he were conquering the Gauls, I should be rejoicing* (it is implied that he is not conquering).

3. Compare also the conditional sentence which refers to future time, but more vividly than sentence 1:—

Si imperator erit, gaudebo, *If he is general I shall rejoice.*

(217.)

1. Si mihi credas, divitissimum te reddere possim.
2. Si exercitum e nostris finibus deduxerit, pacem faciamus.
3. Si fenestram aperueris, frigus sentias.
4. Si Tullium roges ut tibi debitam pecuniam solvat, tibi irascatur.
5. Qua de causa moneo te ne quid dicas.
6. Si faveas amicis, iudex non creeris.
7. Si Romae maneat, quid facias?
8. Si regi persuadere possim ut me urbi praeficiat, tibi subveniam.
9. Si quid huic miserrimo homini nocueris, capitis te accusem.
10. Nisi gratias mihi egerit, amicorum numero non habeam.
11. Iamdiu te videre cupio: cum opus confecero rus veniam.
12. Si urbem Capuam obsideamus, cives eruptionem faciant.

13. Si pacem a nobis petat, obsides reddat.
14. Si simules te summae virtutis esse, non tibi credatur.
15. Si tibi imperet ut urbe excedas, num ei pareas?

(218.)

1. If you were to be made consul next year, would you favour your friends?
2. If he should be unwilling to leave the temple, I would go to the judge.
3. If you were to approach the queen, you would be bound by the soldiers.
4. If you were to surpass all men in wisdom, you would be considered very wise.
5. If the army should be defeated, it would be a disgrace to the general.
6. If you were not to take exercise, you would not be well.
7. If I were to come with you the dog would not hurt you. Don't be afraid.
8. If you were to tell him that, you would not be believed.
9. If you were to forget such a friend you would be despised by everybody.
10. If we should cross the river in the night we should be able to attack the enemy *while* asleep.
11. It would not much matter to me if you were to think me foolish.



12. If I were to lead an idle life I should make my father miserable.
13. You would persuade Caius to come with us, if you were to promise to be present.

## SECTION 72.

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES—(*Continued*).

Before doing the two following exercises note the difference between—

1. Si adsit, eum laudemus (present subjunctive), *If he were to come (in the future) we should praise him,*  
and
2. Si adesset, eum laudaremus (imperfect subjunctive),  
*If he were here (now) we should be praising him.*  
(It is implied that he is not here.)

(219.)

1. Si rex essem, tibi non parcerem.
2. Si imperator fiam, Haeduos facile vincam.
3. Si ad regem adire auderem, ei persuaderem ut filium tuum liberaret.
4. Nisi canem timeret, non abiret.
5. Si magni equum faceret non tanti venderet.
6. Rogabo eum utrum minoris vendere velit, necne.
7. Si mihi duo talenta des, de his rebus certio rem te faciam.

8. Si mihi duae essent legiones, Galli nobis nocere non possent.
9. Si negotio se dedat, ceteris facile praestet.
10. Si quis te sententiam roget, quid respondeas?
11. Si mos esset nobis ut victis parceremus, vitam vobis concederem.
12. Si liceat nobis abire liberis, e vestris finibus abeamus, nec quisquam nostrum redeat: aliquantum auri, frumenti multum ad vestram urbem quotannis mittamus.
13. Etiamsi vobis credere possem, non liceret mihi more populi Romani vobis parcere.

(220.)

1. If he were to come, I should not speak with him.
2. If he were present, I should say the same.
3. If he were to ask me my opinion I should say that the legions ought to be put over the river Rhine.
4. If he were to say it, I should not regard him as a friend.
5. If Caesar were to come with a fleet of a hundred ships we would give up the city to him.
6. If we were to ask him to appoint some one as governor of the city, he would regard us as the friends of the Roman people.
7. If I were in command of the cavalry, I should not fear Ariovistus, the king of the Germans.
8. If he understood this he would not think me wise: he does not know what I have done.
9. If any one were to see you, you would be con-

demned to death, nor would any one be able to help you.

10. If he were living with us he would not be allowed to be idle.

11. If you were to read the book you would not understand it : I advise you not to buy it at such a price.

12. I have long desired to ask you whether you think me like you or not.

### SECTION 73.

#### SUMMARY OF THE RULES FOR CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

In the following exercises instances are given of the different kinds of conditional sentences. The following examples will help you to distinguish one kind from the other :—

I. Conditional sentences requiring the subjunctive are of two kinds :

(i.) Those in which the present or perfect subjunctive is used : these refer vaguely to future time, and may be rendered in English by “ If he *were* to . . . ”

*If he were to come, he would see you, Si veniat, te videat ; or Si venerit, te viderit.*

(ii.) Those in which the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used. In these sentences it is implied that the condition is not being (imperfect tense), or has not been (pluperfect) fulfilled.

*If I were rich I would give you some money, Si dives essem, aliquid pecuniae tibi darem. (But I am not rich.)*

*If I had seen him I should have asked him, Si eum vidissem, rogavissem. (But I did not see him.)*

II. A conditional sentence which does not belong to one of the two classes of which instances are given above will require the indicative (or, if an order is given, the imperative). Care must be taken to use the right tense; thus in the following sentences the English, "*If he comes,*" is translated in three different ways:

1. *If he comes we all rejoice (i.e. if ever he comes), Si ille venit omnes gaudemus.*
2. *If he comes my friend will come too (i.e. if he shall come), Si ille veniet, veniet et amicus meus.*
3. *If he comes he will make a speech (i.e. if he shall have arrived), Si ille venerit, orationem habebit.*
4. *Si scripsit, If he wrote. Si scribebat, If he was writing.*

#### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(221.)

1. Si epistulam scribis, gratulare fratri. 2. Si cras epistulam scribes, nonne narrabis quae fecimus? 3. Si epistulam scripseris, mecum vesperi venies. 4. Si ad me scribas, nihil respondeam. 5. Si quid scriberes, tacerem. 6. Si talia heri scripsisti, pater, cum leget, tibi irascetur.

7. Si quando multitudinem videt, orationem habere vult. 8. Si adfuit, orationem habuit. 9. Si adesset, non taceret. 10. Si venerit, abibo. 11. Si orationem habuerit, laudabitur. 12. Si orationem habeat, tibi ridere non liceat. 13. Si ille orationem habuisset, ceteri irati essent.

14. Si mihi pigro esse liceret, hac sub arbore dormirem. 15. Sed pater imperat ut opus conficiam. Cum confecero, dormiam.

16. Si me monebis ut consul fiam, te stultum habebo. 17. Si me monuisset te venturum esse, domi mansissem. 18. Si qui deus illum moneat ut hostibus me dedat, deo non pareat. 19. Si adfuissem, talia non monu-  
issem. 20. Nisi tu me monueris ut abeam, in urbe manebo. 21. Si eum rogaveris ut tecum edat, ad tempus veniet.

(222.)

1. If he were present, he would answer you. 2. If he were to come, you would not dare to say that. 3. If he had been here, you would not have said such things. 4. If he comes you will not stay. 5. If *ever* he comes he is a protection to all of us.

6. If he withdrew his troops from our territory, he did not wish to fight. 7. If we had offered him battle he would have fled. 8. If he turns aside from the city of Capua, there will be no danger. 9. If he took the gold away from the temple, the god will punish him.

10. If you order me, I will go away from you.  
11. If you were to order me to go I should not stay.  
12. If you had ordered me to remain, I should not have left you. 13. If you were present, I should not wish to go away. 14. If you return, I shall rejoice. 15. If you return, the slave will come with you.

16. If we were to give hostages, they would make peace. 17. If we give hostages, they will think us timid. 18. If we had not attacked them, there would have been no cause for war. 19. If Caesar were in command of the army, he would not order us to return home. 20. If *ever* we give hostages, we promise to obey the enemy.

(223.)

1. If there should be any danger he would run away.
2. When he asked me what I feared I denied that there was any danger.
3. If he appoints a day for a conference, they will be able to withdraw their troops from the camp.
4. If he was sent forward to choose a place for the camp, he ought not to have delayed for three hours.
5. I would write 'a longer letter, did<sup>1</sup> I not know that you will come to town to-morrow.
6. If he had been a man of noble birth he would have been made king.

<sup>1</sup> "If I did not know."

7. If the enemy cross the river, we shall have<sup>1</sup> to fight.
8. If we were to turn away from the river we should have<sup>1</sup> to wage war on a different plan.
9. You do not know how dear glory is to men.
10. If we were to impose a tax on the city of Capua, we should be able to build a beautiful temple.
11. If I had preferred peace to war I should have been praised by the king.
12. If you wish to send any soldiers, we pray you to choose us. We have long hoped to go to Gaul.

(224.)

1. If he comes to my house accompanied by his mother, he will not be allowed to enter.
2. If he were to come in my absence, the slave would help him.
3. If he had left the city, I should not have been able to see him.
4. If he were (now) present, he would be a protection to us.
5. Have you seen my friend Caius? Do you know where he is?
6. The slave informed me that Caius was reading a book in the garden.
7. If he is reading I dare not approach him.
8. Does he seem devoted to the business, or not?
9. If he ordered you to leave the house, why did you delay?

<sup>1</sup> Use the gerundive.

10. Do you wish to ask him to spare you ?
11. If any one does such things, the general does not spare him.
12. If the general had ordered us to fight, I should have urged the soldiers to defend their country.
13. If five hundred horsemen had been present, we should have conquered the enemy.
14. If you were to ask him, he would deny that he saw any one.

(225.)

1. If you don't believe me, read the letter which I received yesterday.
2. If he comes out of the camp to ask for peace, we will kill him.
3. If the cavalry of the enemy had fled we should have won.
4. If you were to ask him who did it he would not tell you.
5. I advise you not to approach your father: you will never be able to persuade him that you were not present.
6. If you were to ask me what is to be done<sup>1</sup> perhaps I should not answer.
7. If he sees it, he will be angry with me.
8. The slave says that some one is in the garden, but Caius says<sup>2</sup> that he can find no one.
9. What does it matter to me whether he is well or not ?

<sup>1</sup> "To be done," gerundive.

<sup>2</sup> "Denies that he can find any one."



10. If any one wishes to be made consul, he promises to help the poor.
11. If any judge acquits those who are a danger to the state, he ought to be condemned to death.
12. If we were to send a messenger, the Haedui would come to our aid.
13. Do not answer, if he asks you whether you have seen me or not.

(226.)

1. Did any one see him leaving the house?—Some one saw him: I do not know who it was.
2. Go into the house: if you see any one, ask him whether he did it or not.
3. If Hannibal should command the army, he would wage war by land and sea.
4. If you persuade him that there is a considerable supply of corn in the territory of the Haedui, he will order us to start in the evening.
5. No one can persuade him to leave the city.
6. If he is believed, he will be a danger to all of us.
7. As they were returning from the country, they were informed that some one had been made dictator.
8. When you have finished your work don't come home: I will set out for the country to-morrow.
9. If you come to my house you won't find much food.
10. When he perceived that he was dying, he urged his friends to seek safety *in* flight.

11. If you were general, what would you do?
12. I warn you that there is not enough corn in the camp; that the enemy have seized the mountain, *and* that they will attack us at daybreak.

(227.)

1. If you were believed, why do you try to persuade us?
2. The man who wrote that book has long been thought wise.
3. When he asked me whether I had been present or not, I answered that somebody had been present.
4. He asked me to inform the judge whom I had seen.
5. If you had gone away in your usual fashion, you would not have heard my song.
6. When you have read the book, tell me what you think.
7. Does it not require great intelligence to carry on war on this system?
8. If he is accused of treason, he will be condemned to death in accordance with the custom of our ancestors.
9. Is it wise to read such books? Is it friendly to sell what I gave you as a present?
10. If he were to leave us we should not regard him as a friend.
11. Don't write a letter: if he wants to ask you anything he will come.
12. Those who love the king will follow me.

13. He has long been considered a man of most honourable character : I hope he will be elected consul.

(228.)

1. We, who know the man, think him very like you.
2. If I had been able to sell my house I should have gone with the learned Titus to Athens.
3. If you were to be informed that the army of Caesar had turned aside from the river, what would you do ?
4. When you hear the orator speaking you will think him the wisest of men.
5. When you have returned home you will not be able to remember what he said.
6. You who are afraid of the waves of the sea cannot go to Gaul to see the great city of Paris.
7. What poet says that the Britons never have been, *and* never will be slaves ?
8. If you dare not go alone, you must stay.
9. The old man urged them all to return to the country.
10. What folly to lead five hundred soldiers into the territory of the enemy !
11. If corn is dear, we will eat less food.
12. When the enemy had seized the ships we sent a messenger to ask for peace.
13. Raising a shout, the Haedui attacked the camp, nor would any of us have escaped, if the cavalry had not come in time.

(229.)

1. It is not for me to advise you to eat more food.
2. Have you forgotten what the doctor said ?
3. It would be a disgrace to the king if he were not to go to the assistance of the general.
4. If any poet writes such verses, ought he not to be banished from the city ?
5. If you ask me what I think, you will hear nothing new.
6. If you were to assist him you would receive a considerable sum of money.
7. What wisdom to write such a book !
8. I don't think much of the soldier if he is afraid of that horse.
9. On being asked this the boy denied that there were any mountains in the territory of the Helvetii.
10. I ordered him to buy fifty ships of war for a small sum.
11. He persuaded me that the king had determined to make peace.
12. Having learned this, I begged him to give up the hostages.
13. Since the house was at a great distance from the city, I asked my friend to give me a horse.
14. He could not be persuaded to withdraw the troops from the town.

## XXXIX.

*Killed by Joy.*

## A.

*Diagoras.*

De Rhodio Diagora celebrata historia est. Tres filios adulescentes habuit Diagoras, unum pugilem, alterum pancratiasten, tertium luctatorem. Eos omnes vidit vincere coronarique Olympiae eodem die, et cum ibi eum tres adulescentes amplexi, coronis suis in caput patris positis, saviarentur, cum populus gratulabundus flores undique in eum iaceret, ibidem in stadio inspectante populo in osculis atque in manibus filiorum animam efflavit.

## B.

*After Trasymene.*

Mulierum ad portas multitudo stetit aut suorum aliquem aut nuntios de iis opperiens: circumfundebanturque obviis sciscitantes, neque avelli, utique ab notis, priusquam ordine omnia inquisissent poterant. Inde varios vultus digredientium ab nuntiis cerneres, ut cuique laeta aut tristia nuntiabantur, gratulantesque aut consolantes redeuntibus domos circumfusos. Feminarum praecipue et gaudia insignia erant et luctus; unam in ipsa porta sospiti filio repente oblatam in complexu eius exspirasse ferunt, alteram cui mors filii

falso nuntiata erat maestam sedentem domi ad primum conspectum redeuntis filii gaudio nimio exanimatam.

## XL.

*His Mother's Lament over Euryalus.*

Hunc ego te, Euryale, aspicio ? tune, illa senectae sera meae requies, potuisti linquere solam, crudelis ? nec te, sub tanta pericula missum, adfari extremum miserae data copia matri ? heu, terra ignota canibus data praeda Latinis alitibusque iaces, nec te ad tua funera mater produxi pressive oculos aut vulnera lavi, veste tegens, tibi quam noctes festina diesque urgebam, et tela curas solabar aniles. quo sequar ? aut quae nunc artus avolsaque membra et funus lacerum tellus habet ? hoc mihi de te, nate, refers ? hoc sum terraque marique secuta ? figite me, si qua est pietas, in me omnia tela conicite, o Rutuli, me primam absumite ferro ; aut tu, magne pater divom, miserere, tuoque invisum hoc detrude caput sub Tartara telo, quando aliter nequeo crudelem abrumpere vitam.

## XLI.

*After Cannae.*

Hannibali victori ceteri circumfusi gratulabantur suadebantque ut tanto perfunctus bello diei quod reliquum esset noctisque insequentis quietem et ipse

sibi sumeret et fessis daret militibus : Maharbal tamen, praefectus equitum, minime cessandum ratus, “immo, ut quid hac pugna sit actum scias, die quinto,” inquit, “victor in Capitolio epulaberis. Sequere ; cum equite, ut prius venisse quam venturum sciant, praecedam.” Hannibali nimis laeta res est visa maiorque, quam ut eam statim capere animo posset. Itaque voluntatem se laudare Maharbalis ait, ad consilium pensandum temporis opus esse. Tum Maharbal “non omnia nimirum eidem di dedere : vincere scis, Hannibal, victoria uti nescis.” Mora eius diei satis creditur urbi saluti fuisse atque imperio.

---

## SECTION 74.

### “QUI” INTRODUCING A FINAL CLAUSE.

Venerunt qui nuntiarent, *Men came to bring news.*

Nihil habeo quod scribam, *I have nothing to write.*

*Qui* is often used with the subjunctive to express a purpose : *Venerunt qui nuntiarent*, “There came men who were to bring news.” *Qui* with the indicative gives a different sense :

Venerunt qui nuntiaverunt, *Men came who brought news.*

(230.)

(Every sentence contains an instance of *qui* used in a final sense.)

1. Ad imperatorem adierunt qui pacem peterent.

2. Quinquaginta milites in Haeduorum fines misit qui frumentum poscerent.
3. His de rebus non multa habeo quae dicam.
4. Cum domo exire statuissem, epistulam scripsi quam legeres.
5. Nihil novi erat, quod scriberem.
6. Canem reperire volo quem parva pecunia emam.
7. Fortissimos elegit qui flumine traiecto castra adorirentur.
8. Nonne hic philosophus dignus est qui audiatur?
9. Flores mihi in horto nulli sunt, quos ad te mit-tam, neque tanti emere possum.
10. Quis est quem rogem ut mihi subveniat?
11. Gladium emam quo Balbum, hominem turpissimum, interficiam.
12. Nemo est quem legionibus praeficiam: qua de causa ipse e castris exire non possum.
13. Nihil habeo quod te moneam; quod tibi optimum videbitur, faciendum erit.

(231.)

(*Ut* is not to be used in this exercise.)

1. *Men* were sent to ask whence he came.
2. He left Labienus to finish the war.
3. Concerning the customs of this nation I have many things to say.
4. I have no money to give you: don't ask me these questions.
5. I have no slaves to send with you: if you dare not go alone, I will come myself.



6. I sent a boy to inform you of the arrival of the third legion.
7. When the city is built we shall have to look<sup>1</sup> for a wise man to rule us.
8. He used to write speeches for other men to deliver.
9. If I send you a book to repair, will you promise to return it?
10. There are none to help us: I ask you what is to be<sup>1</sup> done.
11. *Men* came to ask whether the king was dead or not.
12. If he had conquered I should have sent a messenger to inform you.
13. When you have finished the work *men* will come to congratulate you.

## SECTION 75.

## "QUO," FINAL.

Hoc mihi dixit quo facilius intellegerem, *He told me this that I might the more easily understand.*

*Quo* is used instead of *ut* in a final sentence which contains a comparative: it is followed by the subjunctive.

We have seen that *qui* is used with the subjunctive to express a purpose. *Epistulam scripsi quam legeres*, "I wrote a letter for you to read," is equivalent to *Epistulam scripsi*

---

<sup>1</sup> Gerundive.

ut eam *legeres*, "I wrote a letter that you might read it." Similarly, *quo* (the ablative of *qui*) is equivalent to *ut eo*, and means "in order that in this way," or "through this." The sentence at the beginning of this section might be rewritten, *Hoc mihi dixit ut eo facilius intellegerem*, "He told me this *in order that in this way*," or "*in order that so I might more easily understand*."<sup>1</sup>

## (232.)

1. Quo gratior esset militibus, promisit se urbe capta multum vini eis daturum.
2. Et haec et multa alia promisit ut cives deciperet.
3. Domum suam reficiendam curavit, quo pluris venderet.
4. Iuvenis simulat se cupidum esse pugnae quo fortior videatur.
5. Quo facilius intellegere possitis quid sit faciendum, ea quae vidi narrabo.
6. Ad magistrum miserunt puerum, qui quaereret quid faciendum esset.
7. Quo minus sit pericli, ipse veniam.
8. Si ego exercitui praeessem, te vinciri iuberem.
9. Quo facilius scribas, discedam; si me vocaveris, redibo.

<sup>1</sup> *Quo* is not used where *ut eo* would not make sense. For instance—

Imperavit mihi ut plus cibi caperem (*ut*, not *quo*), *He ordered me to take more food.*

But, Simulavit se esurire quo plus cibi caperem, *He pretended to be hungry that I might take more food.*

*Quo* = "in order that *through his action*."

10. Ex me quaesivit utrum epistulam legissem, necne.
11. Talia si respondissem, condemnatus essem.
12. Multos servos emit quo pigriorem vitam agat.
13. Mos erat eorum ut multum cibi vesperi caperent.
14. Urbem iamdiu obsidemus, nec quidquam est spei fore ut capiatur. Me iudice, redeundum est.

(233.)

1. I will help you, that you may learn the more easily.
2. That he may be considered wiser, he pretends to have written a book.
3. It is the custom of those who live in this city to go into the country in the summer.
4. He stayed at home for three hours, that he might write a longer letter.
5. In order that he might lead a more honourable life, he left these men.
6. If you had told me that some one was in the garden, I should not have left the house ;
7. Nor would any one have known that I was present.
8. That our *men* might fight more bravely, I said<sup>1</sup> that I had not seen any horsemen in the enemy's camp.
9. Open the window, that we may more easily see the soldiers.
10. In order that I might build a larger house, I sold all my horses.

<sup>1</sup> Say, "I denied that I had seen."

11. *Men* approached to<sup>1</sup> demand money.
12. You ought to read the works of Virgil, that you may write better verses.
13. I will pick some flowers to send to my sister.
14. The slave said that he had not seen any books.

## SECTION 76.

## “QUIDAM.”

*Quidam* means “a certain one.” It is declined *qui-dam*, *quae-dam*, *quod-dam*; <sup>2</sup> genitive, *cuius-dam*, etc.

Note the difference between *quidam* and *aliquis*. *Est aliquis in templo* means “There is some one in the temple.” (This does not imply that the speaker knows anything about the “some one.”)

*Est quidam in templo* means “There is a certain person in the temple.” (That is to say, “There is some one in the temple, of whom I could tell you more if I wished.”)

Before doing the exercise see section 66 on the words “some” and “any.”

(234.)

1. Venit ad imperatorem miles quidam, qui diceret equites hostium adesse.
2. Vidi aliquem domi tuae; quis esset, nesciebam.
3. Epistulam ad amicum quemdam scribo; eius nomen dicere nolo.

<sup>1</sup> Use *qui*.<sup>2</sup> Or (without a substantive) *quid-dam*.

4. Erat in illa urbe templum quoddam Dianae, quod videre volumus.
5. Erat apud me nauta quidam, qui talia narrabat ut servi intrare non auderent.
6. Hic dicit se mihi aliquid auri dedisse; ego autem nego me quidquam accepisse.
7. Graecus quidam cecinisse dicitur.
8. Nisi qui deus nobis subvenerit, moriemur.
9. Quo celerius venirem, promisit se mihi aliquid praemii daturum.
10. Cum in illa urbe essem, Horatii opera cum Balbo quodam, doctissimo viro, legebam.
11. Iamdiu me rogat utrum consul esse velim, necne.
12. Accidit ut amicus quidam meus eodem tempore Carthagini esset.
13. Si me roges num quod auxilium expectem, negem me quidquam spei habere.

(235.)

1. In the island of Sicily there is a certain city, which the Greeks built.
2. A certain slave informed me that *there* was some one in the garden.
3. Nobody thought that there was any cause for fear.
4. If any one had asked, the citizens would have denied that any one desired war.
5. In the middle of the night a certain Carthaginian came to our camp, to bring the news that the city was being besieged.

6. If any one wishes to help us, he ought to set out at daybreak.
7. We have long desired such an opportunity: I will come to-morrow with certain friends.
8. That they might the more easily deceive me, they sent *a man named Sulla*<sup>1</sup> to my house.
9. Did he not ask you whether you had been banished from the city or not?
10. He asked me to give some money that he might be able to build a larger house.
11. If I had thought that the house would be an ornament to the city, I would have given much gold.
12. If any messenger comes from the camp, I will send a slave to you.

## XLII.

### *Strange Discovery of a Murderer and Thief.*

Strato medicus doimi furtum fecit et caedem eius modi. Cum esset in aedibus armarium in quo sciret esse nummorum aliquantum et auri, noctu duos conservos dormientes occidit in piscinamque deiecit, ipse armarii fundum exsecuit et nummos abstulit, uno ex servis puero non grandi conscio. Furto postridie cognito, omnis suspicio in eos servos qui non comparebant commovebatur. Cum exsectio illa fundi in armario animadverteretur, quaerebant homines quonam modo

<sup>1</sup> Say, "A certain Sulla."

fieri potuisset. Quidam ex amicis domini recordatus est se nuper in auctione vidisse in rebus minutis serrulam formae inusitatae, qua illud potuisse ita circumsecari videretur. Ne multa: perquiritur a coactoribus; invenitur ea serrula ad Stratonem pervenisse. His rebus inventis et aperte insimulato Stratone, puer ille conscius pertimuit; rem omnem dominae indicavit; homines in piscina inventi sunt; Strato in vincula coniectus est, atque etiam in taberna eius nummi, nequaquam omnes, reperiuntur.

## XLIII.

*Dionysius the Tyrant.*

Duodequadragenta annos tyrannus Syracusanorum fuit Dionysius. Is tamen, maleficus natura et iniustus, cives suos timens, in carcerem quodam modo ipse se incluserat. Itaque, ne tonsori collum committeret, tondere filias suas docuit; ita regiae virgines, ut tonstriculae, tondebant barbam et capillum patris. Idemque, cum in communibus suggestis consistere non auderet, contionari ex turri alta solebat. Atque is, cum pila ludere vellet—studiose enim id factitabat—tunicamque poneret, adulescenti cuidam tradidisse gladium dicitur. Hic cum quidam familiaris iocans dixisset “huic quidem certe vitam tuam committis” adrisissetque adulescens, utrumque iussit interfici, alterum quia viam demonstravisset interimendi sui, alterum quia dictum id risu approbavisset.

## XLIV.

*Damocles.*

Cum quidam ex eius adsentatoribus, Damocles, commemoraret in sermone copias eius, maiestatem dominatus, rerum abundantiam, magnificentiam aedium regiarum, negaretque unquam beatiorem quemquam fuisse, "visne igitur," inquit, "o Damocle, quoniam te haec vita delectat, ipse eam degustare et fortunam experiri meam?" Cum se ille cupere dixisset, collocari iussit hominem in aureo lecto strato pulcherrimo textili stragulo magnificis operibus picto, abacosque complures ornavit argento auroque caelato: aderant unguenta et coronae, incendebantur odores, mensae exquisitissimis epulis exstruebantur; fortunatus sibi Damocles videbatur. In hoc medio adparatu fulgentem gladium e lacunari saeta equina aptum demitti iussit, ut impenderet illius beati cervicibus. Itaque nec plenum artis aspiciebat argentum, nec manum porrigebat in mensam; iam ipsae defluebant coronae. Denique exoravit tyrannum ut abire liceret; "nolo," inquit, "iam beatus esse."

---

SECTION 77.*"QUOMINUS."*

Nihil me impediit quominus scriberem, *Nothing prevented me from writing* (*Nothing prevented me that so ["quo" = "ut eo"] I might not [minus] write*).



Non recusabo quominus epistulam legas, *I will not object to your reading the letter (I will make no objection in order that you may not read the letter).*

*Quominus* is chiefly used after *impedio*, “I hinder,” *recuso*, “I object,” and some other verbs of kindred meaning. *Quominus* is not generally used unless the verb on which it depends has a negative with it.<sup>1</sup>

The origin of this use of *quominus* may be seen by comparing the following sentences:—

Quo minus ametis hominem, narrabo ea quae fecit,  
*That you may like the fellow less, I will tell you what he did.*

(“That you may like him less” is nearly equivalent to “That you may not like him at all.”)

Non recuso quominus ametis hominem, *I make no objection to your liking the man.*

(“I do not make objections in order that you may not like him.” *Minus* here simply means “not.”<sup>2</sup>)

(236.)

1. Quo sit sapientior multa discere debet.
2. Quo minus periculi esset portas urbis claudi iussit.

<sup>1</sup> *Impedio* (for instance) without a negative is generally followed by *ne*, not *quominus*: *Tuae lacrimae me impediunt*, *ne plura dicam*, “Your tears prevent me from saying more.” The negative is often implied: *Quid impedit?* “What prevents?” will be followed by *quominus* if the answer “Nothing” is expected.

<sup>2</sup> *Minus* is not uncommon in this sense: *minus intellexi* = “I didn’t quite understand.”

3. Quo minus admiremini hominem, audite ea quae dico.
4. Nemo recusabit quominus in Galliam proficiscaris.
5. Nihil eum impedit quominus miles fiat.
6. Negavi eum ulla lege impediri quominus consul crearetur.
7. Num recusare debui quominus huic homini miserrimo subvenirem?
8. Si quid auxilii promittas, bellum conficere possim.
9. Non recuso quominus me stultum existimetis.
10. Venerunt qui imperatorem orarent ut obsides redderet.
11. Quis recusabit quominus tibi parcat?
12. Si quid me impediverit quominus tuam domum veniam, nuntium ad te mittam.
13. Venerunt qui me monerent ne Gaium urbi prae-ficerem.
14. Aderant qui mecum loquebantur, nec quisquam nuntiaverat te venisse.
15. Nemo a me impeditur quominus Balbum amicorum numero habeat.

(237.)

1. Did anything hinder you from coming? (Did anything hinder you *in order that* you might *not* come?)
2. He could not object to my writing a letter.
3. *Men* came to<sup>1</sup> ask me whether I had seen you or not.

<sup>1</sup> Use *qui*.

4. I answered that I did not know ; that some one had left the house in the evening.
  5. If they had believed me they would have found you.
  6. I have no objection to your hearing my song.
  7. The shouts of those men shall not prevent me from defending my friend.
  8. Raise shouts if you please, but hear what I am saying.
  9. The death of the general did not prevent us from finishing the war.
  10. The Gauls said they had no objection to obeying my brother Quintus.
  11. If you were to keep silence you would hear some news.
  12. I will make no objection to your adopting a fresh plan if you will promise to return in time.
  13. Did you enter the temple or not ?
  14. If you had not prevented me from speaking I should have asked whether he had been named dictator or not.
- /

## SECTION 78.

### “QUIN.”

*Quin* means “who . . . not,” “but that” or “that,” “why . . . not,” and is followed by the subjunctive.

1. *Nemo est quin hoc sciat, There is no one who does not know this.*

2. Nihil causae est quin abeas, *There is no reason why you should not go away.*
3. Non dubito quin feceris, *I don't doubt (but) that you have done it.*
4. Haec nunquam dicere possum quin rideam, *I can never say this without laughing (but that I laugh).*

Before you attempt the exercise note in what various ways *quin* is translated: note especially sentence 4.

*Quin* is only used after negative expressions or questions which imply a negative answer. It is very commonly used after *non dubito*, *non dubium est*, *nemo est*, and a few other expressions in which the negative is emphatic.

*Quin* (1) is either the equivalent of the relative (usually in the nom. masc.) combined with a negative. Sentence 1 is an instance of this very common use. *Nemo est quin sciat* = *Nemo est qui nesciat*. (2) Or it is, not a relative pronoun, but a conjunction, as in the other three sentences; it is then derived from *quī* (an old form of the ablative of *qui*, *quae*, *quod*), meaning "in which way," "for which reason," "by which means."

(238.)

1. Non dubito quin mecum ire velit.
2. Nemo nostrum est quin sciat Caesarem imperatorem Romanum fuisse.
3. Nunquam tam miser est quin tecum loqui velit.
4. Quis in urbem venit quin audiret te capitis condemnatum esse?
5. Huius orationem nunquam audio quin admirer.
6. Num quid causae est quin tres dies rure maneam.?
7. Nemo bonus est quin sit iustus.

8. Nunquam domum in eo quin me rogent servi ut plus cibi dem.
9. Neminem in urbe vidi quin mihi gratularetur, nec cuiquam persuadere potui me miserrimum omnium hominum esse.
10. Nemo repertus est quin diceret me proditoris absolvendum esse.
11. Non dubito quin vobis sapiens videatur.
12. Nemo est quin me moneat ut aliquid vini bibam.
13. Mittentur qui regem orent ut diem colloquio dicat.
14. Nihil me impedit quominus navem solvam.

(239.)

(*Quin* should be used in every sentence in this exercise.)

1. I do not doubt but that you have seen him.
2. There is no one among us<sup>1</sup> who has not heard this.
3. I see that it is doubtful to no one that he has left his friends. Can we hope to see him again?
4. No one can be wise without being good.
5. What reason is there why I should not go to Italy in the summer?
6. Do not doubt but that I agree.
7. I never see him without thinking that such a man is an honour to the city.
8. I deny that there is any one among you<sup>1</sup> who has not heard that Caesar conquered the Gauls.
9. Can you doubt that they wish to put all their forces across the Rhine?

<sup>1</sup> “Among us,” *nostrum*; “among you,” *vestrum*.

10. No one left the camp that night without being wounded by the enemy ; nor would any one have returned if the cavalry had not come to our aid.
11. There was no one in Gaul who did not obey Caesar.
12. He never comes to my house without begging me for money.
13. There is no doubt that a certain Balbus has been made judge. He is said to be a man of most honourable character.

## SECTION 79.

### VERBS OF FEARING.

Vereor ne hostes nos vincant, *I fear that the enemy will conquer us.*

Vereor ut hostes vincamus, *I fear that we shall not conquer the enemy.*

Vereor (or timeo) ne . . . *I fear that . . .*

Vereor (or timeo) ut . . . *I fear that . . . not.*

Notice that the present subjunctive may refer either to present or to future time. *Vereor ut hostes vincamus* may mean either "I fear that we *shall not conquer* the enemy," or "I fear that we *are not conquering* the enemy." In the same way, *Veritus sum ut hostes vinceremus* may mean either "I feared that we should not conquer the enemy," or "I feared that we were not conquering the enemy."

(240.)

1. Vereor ne dicat haec sibi odio esse.
2. Vereor ut Gaius, amicus meus, creetur consul.
3. Omnes putaverunt fore ut urbs caperetur; nec quisquam erat quin timeret ne nostri vincerentur.
4. Vereor ut pecuniam solvere possit.
5. Veriti ut satis frumenti haberent promiserunt se magnam pecuniam nobis datuuros.
6. Medicus dixit se timere ut puer convalesceret.
7. Ne plueret veritus, domum rediit. Ego autem non sum impeditus quominus rus abirem.
8. Quis recusabit quominus reginae subveniat?
9. Cum haec dixisset, omnes timuimus ne se hostibus dederet.
10. Timeo ut verum dixerit; nulla enim honestate esse dicitur.
11. Haec si feceris, vereor ne capitis condemneris.
12. Quis est quin timeat ut satis pecuniae habeat?
13. Vereor ut barbari eis parcant, qui frumentatum ierunt.
14. Nonne mittendi sunt qui pacem petant? Nonne aliquantum auri promittendum?
15. Veni quaesitum sororem quae in hac terra esse dicebatur; vereor ne iam mortua sit.

(241.)

1. I fear that he has not taken the city. I fear that the army will be conquered.

2. We were afraid that he was leading an idle life ;  
but it is said that he has finished his work.
3. I feared that the dog which I bought would not  
obey me.
4. I am afraid that I shall not be able to return in  
time. I will come if I can.
5. I fear that the queen will order me to set out for  
Asia that I may command the fifth legion.
6. I don't doubt that you wish to help me, but I fear  
that you will not be allowed to be present.
7. He said that he was afraid that the house could  
not be repaired.
8. The same night *men* came to<sup>1</sup> warn us not to  
cross the river.
9. News was brought that some one had escaped  
from the camp.
10. We feared that he would inform the enemy of our  
plans.
11. We sent fifty horsemen to<sup>1</sup> look for him. I am  
afraid that they will not find him in the  
wood.
12. If you were present, you would agree with me : I  
do not doubt that the man is a danger to the  
state.
13. Fearing<sup>2</sup> that I should not recover he ordered me  
to return to the city of London. I made no  
objection to leaving Italy.

<sup>1</sup> *Qui*.<sup>2</sup> *Veritus*.



## SECTION 80.

## "DUM."

1. *Dum urbem obsidemus, rex mortuus est, While we were besieging the city, the king died.*

2. *Exspectavi dum abiret, I waited until he went away.*

1. *Dum*, when it means "while," is used with the indicative. The present tense is generally used, even when past time is referred to.<sup>1</sup>

2. *Dum* with the subjunctive means "until" <sup>2</sup> or "till."

(242.)

1. *Dum redeas, hic manebo.*

2. *Dum amicus abest, tria carmina Horatii legebam.*

3. *Dum haec loquimur, interea ad templum Dianae ventum est.*

4. *Quod cum vidisset "Quid impedit" inquit*

<sup>1</sup> The more advanced student should note the following distinction: (1) when *dum* means "in the course of the time that . . ." it is followed by the present indicative. Sentence 1 above is an example. (2) But if *dum* means "throughout the time that," "so long as," it is followed by whatever tense of the indicative suits the sense: "All the time that you were away he would do nothing," *Dum tu aberas nihil facere volebat*. This use of *dum* is not illustrated in the following exercises.

<sup>2</sup> *Dum* with the subjunctive really means rather more than "until." For instance, sentence 2 (above) means "I waited with a view to his going away," or "I waited for him to go." An aim or purpose is implied. Otherwise the indicative is used: *Dum ille rediit, putavimus te Capuae esse*, "Until he returned, we thought you were at Capua." Here *dum* merely marks the time.

“quominus intremus? Dubitari non potest quin pulcherrimum sit templum.”

5. Dum haec geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est collem occupatum esse.
6. Haec cum scripsissem, expectavi dum nuntius rediret.
7. Dum milites venirent moratus, intellexit se occasionem amisisse.
8. Patre absente, promittere non poteram. Mercator autem expectare noluit, dum ille rediret.
9. Nuntium Carthaginem misi qui amicum meum certiores faceret Graecum quemdam hortos emere velle.
10. Mānē dum dormiat. Cum dormiet discedere nobis licebit.
11. Dum Londinii vivo, Gaium, magistrum sapientissimum, audiui.
12. Quo melius corpus exerceas, rure vivendum erit.

(243.)

1. While we were preparing our army, news was brought that the leader of the Carthaginians was dead.
2. Until he returns I will read the book which he gave me for a present.
3. While he was asking the others these questions I tried to leave the city.
4. I did not hear what you said: while you were making your speech I was talking with my friend Balbus.

5. Stay in the city until you receive a letter from your father, who will tell you what you ought to do.
6. I have long been wishing to go to Athens; if you go, I shall be allowed to go with you.
7. While you were away, she could not be prevented from leaving the house. I fear that she will not return.
8. I will eat no food till you leave me.
9. Is there any reason why you should not be banished?
10. While the Belgae were sleeping we crossed the river.
11. We waited till they slept; having put the army across the river we attacked the camp.
12. I gave the soldiers a considerable quantity of wine that they might fight the more bravely.
13. Do not think me foolish. Was it not wise to give the men these orders?

## SECTION 81.

### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(244.)

1. Quo sitis diligentiores, promitto me vobis aliquid praemii daturum cum opus confeceritis.
2. Totum diem nihil cibi edisti: si quid vini biberis convalesces.

3. Nemo nostrum erat quin crederet te patriae amore rediisse.
4. Nonne angusti est animi talibus rebus delectari?
5. Hoc mihi curae est ne quid te impediat quominus ad urbem Lutetiam eas.
6. Matre mortua, quid causae erat quin miles fierem?
7. Magna voce clamavit obsides esse reddendos, deducendas copias, redeundum ad nostros fines.
8. Si quis hunc librum a me abstulerit, ei non parcam.
9. Iamdiu Italiam, pulchram illam terram, videre cupio.
10. Spero me Tito, doctissimo viro, persuadere posse ut mecum naviget.
11. Nonne summae est benevolentiae eiusmodi consilium, amici causa, deponere?
12. Si gladium a te abstulerit, num recusare poteris quominus te dedas?
13. Noli timere ne rex moriatur: non est dubium quin convalescat.
14. Non exspectandum est dum epistulam recipias: statim solvendae naves.

(245.)

1. I fear that you are not well.
2. Do not go to the city to-day if it rains.
3. Stay at home till the doctor comes.
4. When he comes he will tell you whether you may go or not.

5. I cannot object to doing what you wish.
6. There is no doubt that you are adopting an excellent plan.
7. A slave came to ask me to return.
8. While he was writing letters, the boys returned.
9. I advise you not to come with us.
10. I warn you that there are serpents in that land.
11. We will go into the country that I may the more easily teach you this art.
12. If any messengers come, I will write you a letter.
13. Did you persuade him to obey me or not ?
14. Some god is said to have built the city.
15. If any girl were to pick my flowers, I should be distressed.
16. We shall be angry with you if you do not stay till we return.
17. If any one had ordered me to set sail, I should not have obeyed.
18. While he was waging war in Gaul, you drove me out of the city.

(246.)

1. Do you remember Caius or not ? While you were at Paris he came to my house.
2. I will give you some money that you may buy more flowers.
3. The doctor advised him to remain in London till he recovered from his illness.
4. It does not matter how much gold you have : it matters much what <sup>1</sup> sort of a man you are.

<sup>1</sup> "What sort of a man," *qualis*.

5. There is no one who has not often heard this.
6. Do you think that I shall object to your going into the country?
7. I fear that you do not know me.
8. If you knew your friend you would not ask me that question.
9. If I were to ask you for money how much would you give me?
10. I have been informed that a certain *man named* Balbus has written a very bad song.
11. I advised the girl not to sing, that she might not be considered foolish.
12. There is no doubt that he is a man of great wisdom.
13. He always makes such long speeches that I dare not stay.
14. Stay till he comes. If he comes, no one will prevent you from going away.

(247.)

1. I cannot object to sending the horses.
2. I am afraid that you will not understand what I am saying.
3. If I were to ask you what I have said, what would you answer?
4. I sent a slave to ask whether you were well.
5. If she loved him, would she write such a letter?
6. It matters nothing to me whether you wait till I go away or not.
7. If you return home to-day you will see my sister at your house.

8. When I had persuaded him to set out, *a man* came to bring the news that the war was finished.
9. While we were preparing our food in the evening, the barbarians attacked the camp.
10. Nor would any one among<sup>1</sup> us have escaped, if the wise Labienus had not given them much wine.
11. When they had drunk the wine they said that they would always regard us as friends.
12. We waited till they were asleep: what reason was there why we should not kill them all?
13. So great were the wrongs done by these barbarians to our people that the general could not prevent the soldiers from killing them.

(248.)

1. If I were well, I would come with you.
2. Even if you were to become king I should maintain my opinion.
3. I happened to be in the garden when you came.
4. There is no one who does not advise you to adopt this plan.
5. While you were away in Italy I was informed about the matter.
6. I cannot doubt that you ought to sell the horse for less.
7. If you wait till my ship arrives at the harbour, I will pay you the sum of money which I owe.

<sup>1</sup> Say "of us."

8. Did you set out in the evening or not?
9. I will give you enough gold, when we have conquered the enemy.
10. I am afraid that you will not believe me.
11. It is said to be a very bad horse: why do you ask so much money?
12. If you had taught us the art of fighting he would not have been able to conquer us.
13. If you wish to persuade us that you were present, tell us what you saw.
14. I want to know whether the prisoner spoke with the woman or not.

(249.)

1. Does any one doubt that you wrote the letter?
2. Has any philosopher dared to say that poets ought to be despised?
3. I saw a certain friend *of mine* in the city who asked me to go into the country to-morrow.
4. As I had finished my work I could not object to leaving the city.
5. I shall wait till you come to the city of Paris.
6. He denied that any one had been nominated dictator.
7. He thought that I should be made king.
8. While I was reading a certain *man* came to see me.
9. He asked me whether I was willing to buy the house for less or not.
10. Can he object to selling for two talents?



11. I must stay in the city till the merchant answers me.
12. I will send a boy to ask what they want to do.
13. If a<sup>1</sup> king had imposed this tax on the people, he would not have been thought wise.
14. He denied that he had written any letters to the girl.
15. If we had any letters we would give them to you.

(250.)

1. It happened that I could not go to Italy that summer.
2. I have no flowers to pick.
3. While they were binding me I said that I was a Roman citizen.
4. I cannot object to sparing the girl: the father will not be spared.
5. I am afraid that she will die through grief for the loss of her father.
6. Nothing will prevent me from condemning to death a man who has long been deceiving me.
7. Remain here till you are informed of the plans of Pompeius.
8. Will a wise man be persuaded to believe you?
9. If you encourage the soldiers, they will be willing to set out.
10. He pretended that he knew my mother that he might the more easily deceive me.

<sup>1</sup> Say "if any king."

11. He is so stupid that he does not know that Sicily is an island.
12. Don't ask me who did it. If you ask, I will not answer.
13. If they had given hostages, in accordance with the custom of the Roman people we would have made peace with them.
14. If you were to go to the island of Sicily you would see the temples which the Greeks built.
15. It cannot be doubted that this is an honour to you.

(251.)

1. *The man* who commanded the cavalry was a leader of great wisdom.
2. Having chosen a place for the camp he sent five hundred men into the territory of the Helvetii to get corn.
3. I am afraid that there will not be enough food till they return.
4. While we were fortifying the camp the enemy offered us battle.
5. We sent ten horsemen to inform the general of the approach of the enemy.
6. Who is there who does not believe that the Roman soldiers were *men* of the greatest valour?
7. If he were king he would wage many wars that he might seem the braver.
8. If he regards you as a friend, what prevents you from writing this letter?

9. If he had ordered us to do this we should not have dared to do it.
10. *Now* that hostages have been given,<sup>1</sup> will they refuse to make peace?
11. You told me that a certain doctor had advised you to go to Italy in the winter.
12. If I were to recover from my illness I would set out with you.
13. When he had made his speech he was praised by everybody.

(252.)

1. I am afraid that you cannot answer me.
2. I am going into the middle of the city to buy books for a small sum.
3. I asked him whether he knew my mother.
4. He advised her to<sup>2</sup> eat more food, that she might enjoy better health.
5. You cannot doubt that I stayed at home: don't ask me what I did.
6. Wait till I inform you of the matter.
7. I have long feared that he will return to the city of Athens.
8. Have you seen the book which he wrote that year?
9. I am afraid you will forget me when you return to Italy.
10. It is said that corn is very dear in Gaul.
11. Can you not understand how hateful to us is cruelty, how dear is justice?

<sup>1</sup> Abl. abs.

<sup>2</sup> See note, p. 284: use *ut*, not *quo*.

12. I am persuaded that he did it from hatred of you.
13. If you were to ask me for help, I could not assist you.
14. If you had repaired the ship in time, I would have paid you the money.
15. He will give you a considerable amount of gold, if you pretend that you were in the camp.

(253.)

1. If I had any money I would buy many flowers.
2. Such is the soldier's fear of the leader that he dare not return to the camp.
3. We shall never forget this man : he was *a man* of the greatest kindness.
4. I will ask him whether he has not lost his book.
5. If the base Catiline were to be made consul, I should leave the city.
6. When I have received the book I will write to you.
7. Don't be distressed at this : wait till I discover the cause.
8. We shall not object to following you, the friend of Caesar.
9. What reason is there why I should not burn the city of Capua ?
10. You surely do not doubt that the citizens tried to deceive our leader ?
11. Do you ask me to spare these captives ? Is it wise to make such requests ?

12. It matters nothing to me that <sup>1</sup> you should prefer a prison to your beautiful <sup>2</sup> garden.
13. Do not be foolish. If you do it, you will not be allowed to go free.

(254.)

1. In your absence *a man* came to repair the house.
2. Don't pretend that you excel in valour: if Caius were to offer you battle, would you dare to fight?
3. I should be willing to fight with Caius if I were allowed, but to-day these verses must be written.
4. To-morrow, if you wish *it*, I will go with you into the midst of the woods.
5. Few of us will stay in town this month, if we are allowed to go into the country.
6. I am convinced that you did not do what I ordered.
7. If you refuse to come I will start alone.
8. I don't doubt that you answered him wisely.
9. No one read the book without admiring your verses.
10. If he had informed me of this I would have given him some money that he might the more easily go to Corinth.
11. He sent one of his sons to urge me to leave the wicked Balbus.
12. It is not my business to warn you not to lead an idle life.

<sup>1</sup> Acc. and inf.

<sup>2</sup> Superlative.

13. I will put you this one question : do you wish to be poor or rich ?
14. They denied that anything would prevent us from sailing.

(255.)

1. I am persuaded that you condemned the man to death through hatred of me.
2. It is of no importance to me what you think.
3. According to our custom twenty of us went into the country to take exercise.
4. If you had shouted loudly I would have come to your assistance.
5. If we are not obeyed they will learn nothing.
6. When I ask him what news there is he makes me no answer.
7. When we had seized the hill we could see the fires in the enemy's camp.
8. When my father was alive I had enough money.
9. It is said that Caesar will appoint Crassus to the command of the cavalry.
10. When we have drunk some wine we will return to the city of London. Will anything prevent you from accompanying us ?
11. You ought to have asked him whence he was coming.
12. Whence do you come ? Whither are you setting out ?
13. Accompanied by my mother I set out the same evening.

14. If we had not withdrawn our troops from the territory of the Belgae, we should have been conquered.
- 

## XLV.

### *A Trick.*

C. Canius, eques Romanus, cum se Syracusas otiandi (ut ipse dicere solebat), non negotiandi causa contulisset, dictitabat se hortulos aliquos emere velle, quo invitare amicos et ubi se oblectare sine interpellatoribus posset. Quod cum percrebuisset, Pythius ei quidam, qui argentariam faciebat Syracusis, dixit venales quidem se hortos non habere, sed licere uti Canio si vellet ut suis: et simul ad cenam hominem in hortos invitavit in posterum diem. Cum ille promisisset, tum Pythius, qui esset, ut argentarius, apud omnes ordines graciosus, piscatores ad se convocavit, et ab iis petivit ut ante suos hortulos postridie piscarentur, dixitque quid eos facere vellet. Ad cenam tempore venit Canius. Opipare a Pythio apparatus convivium; cymbarum ante oculos multitudo; pro se quisque quod ceperat afferebat; ante pedes Pythii pisces abiciebantur. Tum Canius, "Quaeso," inquit, "quid est hoc, Pythi? Tantumne piscium! tantumne cymbarum!" Et ille, "Quid mirum," inquit, "hoc loco est Syracusis quidquid est piscium; hic aquatio; hac villa isti carere non possunt." Incensus Canius cupid-

itate contendit a Pythio ut venderet. Gravate ille primo: quid multa?—impetrat. Emit homo cupidus et locuples tanti quanti Pythius voluit, et emit instructos; nomina facit; negotium conficit. Invitat Canius postridie familiares suos; venit ipse mature, scalnum nullum videt. Quaerit ex proximo vicino num feriae quaedam piscatorum essent, quod eos nullos videret. “Nullae, quod sciam,” inquit, “sed hic piscari nulli solent. Itaque heri mirabar quid accidisset.” Stomachatur Canius. Sed quid faceret?

## XLVI.

*The Boxing Match between Dares and Entellus.*

## A.

Constitit in digitos extemplo arrectus uterque  
bracchiaque ad superas interritus extulit auras.  
Abduxere retro longe capita ardua ab ictu  
inmiscentque manus manibus pugnamque lacesunt;  
ille pedum melior motu fretusque iuventa,  
hic membris et mole valens, sed tarda trementi  
genua labant, vastos quatit aeger anhelitus artus.  
Multa viri nequiquam inter se vulnera iactant,  
multa cavo lateri ingeminant et pectora vastos  
dant sonitus, erratque aures et tempora circum  
crebra manus, duro crepitant sub vulnere malae.  
Stat gravis Entellus nisuque immotus eodem,  
corpore tela modo atque oculis vigilantibus exit.  
Ille, velut celsam oppugnat qui molibus urbem



aut montana sedet circum castella sub armis,  
nunc hos, nunc illos aditus omnemque pererrat  
arte locum et variis adsultibus inritus urget.  
Ostendit dextram insurgens Entellus et alte  
extulit: ille ictum venientem a vertice velox  
praevidit celerique elapsus corpore cessit.  
Entellus vires in ventum effudit et ultro  
ipse gravis graviterque ad terram pondere vasto  
concidit, ut quondam cava concidit aut Erymantho  
aut Ida in magna radicibus eruta pinus.

## B.

Consurgunt studiis Teuceri et Trinacria pubes;  
it clamor caelo; primusque accurrit Acestes  
aequaevumque ab humo miserans attollit amicum.  
At non tardatus casu neque territus heros  
acrior ad pugnam redit ac vim suscitatur ira.  
Tum pudor incendit vires et conscia virtus,  
praecipitemque Daren ardens agit aequare toto,  
nunc dextra ingeminans ictus nunc ille sinistra:  
nec mora, nec requies: quam multa grandine nimbi  
culminibus crepitant, sic densis ictibus heros  
creber utraque manu pulsat versatque Dareta.  
Tum pater Aeneas procedere longius iras  
et saevire animis Entellum haud passus acerbis,  
sed finem imposuit pugnae fessumque Dareta  
eripuit, mulcens dictis, ac talia fatur:  
“ Infelix, quae tanta animum dementia cepit?  
non vires alias conversa numina sentis?  
cede deo.” Dixitque et proelia voce diremit.

Ast illum fidi aequales, genua aegra trahentem  
iactantemque utroque caput crassumque cruorem  
ore eiectantem mixtosque in sanguine dentes,  
ducunt ad naves.

---

## SECTION 82.

### ORATIO OBLIQUA, OR REPORTED SPEECH.

*What is meant by the term Oratio Obliqua.*

There are two ways of reporting a man's words. If we wish to report the fact that a man has used the words "I am king," we may say either

- (1) *He said "I am king,"* or
- (2) *He said that he was king.*

In (1) we quote the man's own words without any change whatever, and put them in inverted commas.

*"Rex sum" inquit*<sup>1</sup> (words quoted).

In (2) we do not quote the speaker's words exactly as they were uttered, but we give the substance of what was said, introducing it by "he said that," or some similar expression.

*Dixit se regem esse* (words reported: Oratio Obliqua).

It will be seen from the following example that when reported in this way a sentence is considerably changed in English, especially in its verbs and pronouns.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Inquit* (not *dixit*) is used for "he said" when the actual words of the speaker are quoted.

(Original words, or Oratio Recta): "*I will go to the house of which you told me.*"

(The same reported, Oratio Obliqua): He said that *he would go to the house of which she had told him.*

When we use the term Oratio Obliqua we always mean this second way of reporting speech and not the first, in which the exact words of the speaker are quoted; and we include under the same term not only reported speech, but also reported thought,—in fact all sentences introduced by such expressions as "he said that," "thought that," "felt or perceived or understood that," "exclaimed that . . ."

*Rules for Oratio Obliqua in Latin.*

1. Put the accusative and *infinitive* after verbs of saying, thinking, etc.

*He said that he was well, Dixit se valere.*

(With this rule you are of course thoroughly familiar.)

2. Put the *subjunctive* in all subordinate clauses. Subordinate clauses are introduced by the relative and such words as "when," "if," "where."

*He said that he had read the book which I had sent him, Dixit se legisse librum quem misissem.*

(This rule is entirely new to you, and you will find it a little difficult to observe, as we have no corresponding rule in English.)

It follows from these two rules that the *indicative will not be used at all* except in the verb which introduces the Oratio Obliqua (for instance, *dixit* in the sentence above).

3. The pronouns must be changed if they are changed in the English.

*I am well, (Ego) valeo.*

*He said that he was well, Dixit se valere.*

Note that the subject of the infinitive must be expressed: you may leave out *ego*: you cannot leave out *se*. Some other words will be changed, but common sense will guide you: for instance—

*I have the money here now.*

*He said that he had the money there then.*

#### 4. The tense of the verb—

(a) In the principal clause write the same tense of the infinitive as you have of the indicative in the Oratio Recta: for instance—

*Oratio Recta.*

*Oratio Obliqua.*

Scribo (present).

Dixit se scribere (present).

Scribam (future).

Dixit se scripturum (future).

Scripsi (perfect).

Dixit se scripsisse (perfect).

(b) In the subordinate clause follow the English as closely as you can, observing the rules of the sequence of tenses.

If the verb which introduces the Oratio Obliqua is past (and this is the commoner case, and the only one that we shall deal with here), then by the rules of sequence *the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are the only possible tenses.*

*Present,  
Imperfect,  
or Future*

in subordinate  
clauses of the  
Oratio Recta

will become *imperfect subjunctive* in Oratio Obliqua.

*Perfect,  
Future Perfect,  
or Pluperfect*

in subordinate  
clauses of the  
Oratio Recta

will become *pluperfect subjunctive* in Oratio Obliqua.

## Examples—

O. R.<sup>1</sup> Scripsi id quod legis, *I wrote what you are reading.*

O. O.<sup>2</sup> Dixit se scripsisse id quod legerem, *He said that he wrote what I was reading.*

O. R. Gaia veniet tecum si opus confecerit, *Gaia will come with you if she has finished her work.*

O. O. Dixerunt Gaiam cum illo venturam si opus confecisset, *They said that Gaia would come with him if she had finished her work.*

(For further instances see the Exercises.)

(256.)

1. Librum, quem amicus mihi dedit, ad te mittam.  
Promisit se librum, quem sibi amicus dedisset, ad me missurum.
2. Qui regem secuti sunt, a barbaris sunt interfecti.  
Certior factus sum eos, qui regem secuti essent, a barbaris interfectos esse.
3. Qui mortem timent non sunt laudandi.  
Philosophus scripsit eos qui mortem timerent non esse laudandos.
4. Si Gaio, nulla honestate homini, credis, deciperis.  
Dixi eum decipi, si Gaio, nulla honestate homini, crederet.
5. Si matrem amas, litteras scribere debuisti.  
Magister dixit puerum, si matrem amaret, litteras scribere debuisse.
6. Cum Tullius, vir sapientissimus, loquitur, semper audio.

<sup>1</sup> O. R. = Oratio Recta.

<sup>2</sup> O. O. = Oratio Obliqua.

Dixit se, cum Tullius vir sapientissimus loqueretur, semper audire.

7. Agrum, quem tu parvo vendidisti, Balbus emit.  
Sensi Balbum emissee agrum quem parvo vendidissem.
8. Si pluit, non licet puellae in hortum ire.  
Negavit puellae licere in hortum ire, si plueret.
9. Milites qui me duce vicerunt summo honore digni sunt.  
Imperator putavit milites, qui se duce vicissent, summo honore dignos esse.

(257.)

1. I have done what you ordered.  
He said that he had done what I had ordered.
2. I will give you as a present a book which I value highly.  
He said that he would give me as a present a book which he valued highly.
3. The plan which my brother has adopted is most foolish.  
I thought that the plan which my brother had adopted was most foolish.
4. Those who lead an idle life ought not to be praised.  
I thought that those who led an idle life ought not to be praised.
5. Those who heard this laughed.  
He noticed that those who had heard this laughed.
6. I have not read the letter which my father wrote.

He denied that he had read the letter which his father had written.

7. If this man is the king, I fear nothing.

The prisoner said he feared nothing if that man was the king.

8. I shall appoint to the command of the cavalry the man who conquered the Helvetii.

The queen said that she would appoint to the command of the cavalry the man who had conquered the Helvetii.

9. I can't promise to read the book which you have written.

He said he could not promise to read the book which Caius had written.

(258.)

1. Librum emi, quem promisi me Gaio daturum.

Dixit se librum emissee, quem promississet se Gaio daturum.

2. Qui aderant, riserunt.

Dixit eos qui adessent risisse.

3. Qui idem sentiunt, sunt sapientes.

Dixit eos qui idem sentirent esse sapientes.

4. Eis qui hac arte praestabunt praemia dabo.

Dixit se eis qui hac arte praestarent praemia daturum.

5. Si canem times, stultus es.

Dixit me, si canem timerem, stultum esse.

6. Qui civibus persuadet ut bellum cum sociis gerant ex urbe expelli debet.

Diximus eum, qui civibus persuaderet ut bellum cum sociis gererent, ex urbe expelli debere.

7. Collem, inquit, occupabo qui proximus stat hostium castris.

Imperator dixit se collem occupaturum qui proximus castris hostium staret.

8. Frumenti non satis est nobis : fame moriemur, nisi Caesar auxilio nobis venerit.

Intellexit frumenti sibi non satis esse : se fame morituros, nisi Caesar auxilio sibi venisset.

9. Nos Romam ibimus eadem via qua tu ire statuisti.

Dixerunt se Romam ituros eadem via qua ego ire statuisssem.

(259.)

1. I have found the book which I wanted to find.  
He said that he had found the book which he had wanted to find.
2. I am expecting my slave whom I sent into the town to buy food.  
He said that he was expecting his slave whom he had sent into the town to buy food.
3. I despise those who prefer kindness to justice.  
He told me that he despised those who preferred kindness to justice.
4. I spared those who surrendered.  
He informed the general that he had spared those who had surrendered.
5. I wish to talk with the man whom I saw at Rome.



He said that he wished to talk with the man whom he had seen at Rome.

6. When I have built a ship of war I shall become rich.

He said that when he had built a ship of war he would become rich.

7. I have imposed on the Gauls the tax which you ordered.

He said that he had imposed on the Gauls the tax which the king had ordered.

8. I am not allowed to receive the present which you have sent.

He said that he was not allowed to receive the present which I had sent.

9. The cavalry of the enemy who attacked our *men while they were* asleep were driven back.

I informed the general that the cavalry of the enemy who had attacked our *men while they were* asleep had been driven back.

(260.)

(Translate into English, and re-write each sentence in Oratio Recta in Latin.)

1. Dixit se milites, quos ad gloriam saepe duxisset, ad praedam nunc ducere.
2. Dixit se ad urbem rediturum, qua in urbe natus esset.
3. Dixit se miserrimum hominem novisse qui nihil cibi haberet.

4. Negavit se facere posse ea quae rogavissem.
5. Dixit hominem, qui clementiam iustitiae antepone-  
ret, non creandum esse consulem.
6. Speravisti pueros, qui te magistro didicissent,  
ceteris praestituros.
7. Intellexit longe alia ratione gerendum esse bellum  
quam antea gestum esset.
8. Magna voce clamavit interficiendum esse regem  
qui talia faceret.
9. Dixit se equum minoris venditurum quam emisset.
10. Imperavit ut omnes qui pugnare nollent e castris  
exirent.
11. Dixit hominem qui urbi praefectus esset summo  
loco natum esse.
12. Pauperes putabant eos qui aliquid pecuniae habe-  
rent pigram vitam agere.

(261.)

(Do each sentence, first in Oratio Recta, then in Oratio Obliqua : for instance, when you come to sentence 4, translate first the Oratio Recta, "What he is saying is true," and then the Oratio Obliqua as it stands in the book.)

1. He said<sup>1</sup> he would spare those who had helped  
the king.
2. He said that he would appoint as governor of the  
city a man whom all men loved.

<sup>1</sup> "He said he would," or "He said *that* he would": "that" is often omitted in English.

3. He said that he would pay the money which he owed me on the next day.
4. I thought that what he was saying was true.
5. Every one thought that the man who had killed the girl would be condemned to death.
6. The general said that the soldiers who had been sent into the territory of the Haedui must be withdrawn.
7. He said that the legion which he commanded had never been conquered.
8. He informed the senate that he had turned aside from the river which flowed through the midst of the territory of the Helvetii.
9. He said that he every day expected the corn which the Haedui had promised.
10. News was brought to Caesar that there was a man in the city who had persuaded the citizens not to give corn to our men.
11. Caesar said that, if this was true, the man must be put to death.

(262.)

(As in the preceding exercise, do each sentence first in  
Oratio Recta.)

1. He said that when he commanded those brave horsemen he did not think much of the enemy.
2. He said that the city which we were besieging was full of gold.

3. He promised to give much money to those who had fought bravely. (Oratio Recta : "I will give much money to those who shall have fought bravely.")
4. He said that he did not think that the enemy who had so often been conquered would offer us battle again.
5. A certain soldier, a man of no courage, said that those who desired the gold ought to fight *for it*.
6. He said that he for his part<sup>1</sup> preferred safety to riches : that he did not believe that the men who had so great and so beautiful a city would give up everything to us.
7. He said that he had often noticed that those men who had much money, since they did not wish to lose everything, fought most bravely.
8. He said that he, since he had no money, would not fight, but would return home.
9. He said that those who agreed *with him* would come with him to Naples.
10. He said that they would inform the citizens that the army had been conquered and the general slain : that twenty of them had escaped and the rest were prisoners.

<sup>1</sup> "For his part" (*i.e.* "as far as he was concerned"), *quidem*. In the Oratio Recta "I for my part," *equidem*.

## SECTION 83.

## QUESTIONS AND COMMANDS IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

1. In Oratio Obliqua questions have the verb in the *subjunctive*.<sup>1</sup> If the verb introducing the reported speech is past—and this is the only case we shall deal with—the verb will be in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect*. For instance :

O. R. Te exspectavi. Cur non venisti? *I expected you.*  
*Why did you not come?*

O. O. Dixit se illam exspectavisse. Cur non venisset?  
*He said that he had expected her. Why had she*  
*not come?*

O. R. Nihil video. Quid est timendum? Cur fugis?  
*I see nothing. What is there to fear? Why do*  
*you run away?*

O. O. Dixit se nihil videre. Quid esset timendum?  
Cur fugeret? *He said that he saw nothing.*  
*What was there to fear? Why was he running*  
*away?*

2. A command is put in the *imperfect subjunctive* (if the verb introducing the reported speech is in a past tense).

---

<sup>1</sup> The more advanced student should note that some questions are put in the accusative and infinitive, not the subjunctive. This is commonly the case (1) if the question would in the Oratio Recta be in the first or third person ; or (2) if the question is rhetorical, *i.e.* if no answer to the question is expected. For instance, one may say, "What *are* you afraid of?" (*Quid vereris?*), meaning "You ought not to be afraid ; there is nothing to fear." This would be rendered in Oratio Obliqua by *Quid eum vereri?*

O. R. *I am setting out at once. Come, do not delay. I am proficiscor. Venite, ne morati sitis.*

O. O. *Dixit se iam proficisci. Venirent, ne morarentur. He said that he was setting out at once. Let them come, let them not delay.*

(263.)

1. Quid petis? Cur in nostra castra venisti?  
Quid peteret? Cur in sua castra venisset?
2. E castris exi: ad urbem, unde venisti, redi.  
E castris exiret: ad urbem unde venisset rediret.
3. Ne credideris homini: nonne certior factus es  
eum regem decepisse?  
Ne crederet homini: nonne certior factus esset  
eum regem decepisse?
4. Quid rogas? Num quid a me exspectas?  
Quid rogaret? Num quid a se exspectaret?
5. Brevis est nox: prima luce proficiscendum est:  
cum potestis, dormite.  
Brevem esse noctem: prima luce proficiscendum  
esse: cum possent, dormirent.
6. Quid quereris? Num quid cibi exspectas? Si  
esuris, servos quaere.  
Quid quereretur? Num quid cibi exspectaret?  
Si esuriret, servos quaereret?
7. Quanti talem equum emisti? Unde pecuniam  
accepisti? Putavi te nihil habere.  
Quanti talem equum emissem? Unde pecuniam  
accepissem? Se putavisse me nihil habere.

8. Nonne vultis me duce in medios hostes impetum facere ?

Nonne vellent ipso duce in medios hostes impetum facere ?

9. Nihil novi scripsit : quam accepi epistulam, lege.  
Gaium nihil novi scripsisse ; quam accepisset epistulam, legerem.

(264.)

1. I cannot set you free. Who are you ? Whence do you come ?

He said he could not set me free : who was I, whence did I come ?

2. Are you looking for the book which you lost ?

I asked him whether he was looking for the book which he had lost.

3. Don't despair : we shall soon find it : when did you lose it ?

Let him not despair : they would soon find it : when had he lost it ?

4. Do you wish to see the letter which I have written ?

Did I wish to see the letter which he had written ?

5. Don't you all wish to be free ? Take up arms.

Did they not all wish to be free ? Let them take up arms.

6. If you wish to wage war, do not despise the enemy.

If he wished to wage war, let him not despise the enemy.

7. Art is long ; life is short : do not waste time.  
Art was long, *he said*, life was short : let him not waste time.
8. Do you wish to be an honour to your country?  
Are you worthy of the city which you received from your ancestors ?  
Did they wish to be an honour to their country ?  
Were they worthy of the city which they had received from their ancestors ?
9. Why do you delay ? Do you expect any one ?  
Start at once.  
Why did he delay ? Did he expect any one ?  
Let him start at once.
10. Have I not paid the money which I promised ?  
Had he not paid the money which he had promised ?

(265.)

(This exercise is to be translated first as it stands in Oratio Recta ; it is then to be turned into Oratio Obliqua.)

You, O soldiers, whom I have so often led to victory, I will not now lead to death. While you can, depart from me : fly to the shore where there are ships, and return to the city which you have made famous. I, for my part,<sup>1</sup> will stay here : I am an old man, nor do I wish to live longer. When you return home, tell the citizens that in accordance with the

<sup>1</sup> "I for my part," *Equidem*. In the Oratio Obliqua write, *Se quidem*.



custom of our ancestors the defeated general has not dared to enter the city. Farewell: if you remain here, there is no hope of safety. It was not wise to march into the territory of the enemy with two hundred men: I hope that you will return with three legions and fifty ships of war and conquer the enemy both by land and sea. Why do you delay? If the horsemen see you, they will burn the ships.

---

## XLVII.

### *A True Dream.*

#### *Direct.*

Cum duo quidam familiares, *inquit Cicero*, iter una facerent et Megara venissent, **alter** ad cauponem devertit, ad hospitem **alter**. Nocte media visus est ei, qui **erat** in hospitio, ille **alter** orare, ut sibi subveniret, quod sibi interitus pararetur. Primo perterritus surrexit, dein, cum se collegisset, recubuit. Tum ei dormienti **idem** ille

#### *Indirect.*

*Cicero in libro quodam narravit* cum duo quidam familiares iter una facerent et Megara venissent, **alterum** ad cauponem devertisse, ad hospitem **alterum**. Nocte media visum esse ei, qui **esset** in hospitio, illum **alterum** orare, ut sibi subveniret, quod sibi interitus pararetur. **Eum** primo perterritum surrexisse, dein, cum se collegisset, recubuisse.

visus est rogare: "Quoniam mihi vivo non subvenisti, mortem meam inultam ne sis passus; interfectus a caupone in plastrum sum coniectus et supra stercus est iniectum; quid potest esse foedius? peto, ut mane ad portam adsis, priusquam plastrum ex urbe exeat; an vis me inultum trucidari?" Hoc somnio commotus mane ad portam venit et quaesivit ex bubulco, quid esset in plaistro. Ille perterritus fugit, mortuus erutus est; caupo re patefacta poenas dedit.

Tum ei dormienti eundem illum visum esse rogare, quoniam sibi vivo non subvenisset, mortem suam ne inultam pateretur; se interfectum a caupone in plastrum esse coniectum et supra stercus iniectum; quid posse esse foedius? petere se, ut mane ad portam adesset, priusquam plastrum ex urbe exiret; an vellet se inultum trucidari? Hoc somnio commotum eum mane ad portam venisse et quaesivisse ex bubulco, quid esset in plaistro. Illum perterritum fugisse, mortuum esse erutum, cauponem re patefacta poenas dedisse.

## XLVIII.

### *An Embassy to Caesar.*

Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arāre faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii, repentino eius adventu commoti, cum id quod ipsi diebus xx aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intellegerent, legatos ad eum mittunt, cuius legationis

Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit :

*Direct.*

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem **ibunt** atque ibi **erunt** Helvetii ubi tu eos constitueris atque esse volueris: sin bello persequi perseverabis, reminiscitor et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviseo unum pagum adortus es, cum ii qui flumen transierant suis auxilium ferre non poterant, ne ob eam rem aut **tuae** magnopere virtuti tribueris aut **nos** despexeris. **Nos** ita a patribus maioribusque **nostris** didicimus ut magis virtute quam dolo contendamus aut insidiis nitamur. Quare ne commiseris ut **hic** locus ubi constitimus ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen capiat aut memoriam prodat.

*Indirect.*

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem **ituros** atque ibi  **futuros** Helvetios ubi eos **Caesar** constituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviseo unum pagum adortus **esset**, cum ii qui flumen transissent suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut **suae** magnopere virtuti tribueret aut **ipsos** despiceret: **se** ita a patribus maioribusque **suis** didicisse ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret ut is locus ubi constitissent ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.



# THE CONJUGATION OF SOME IRREGULAR VERBS

**Possum, I am able, I can.**

|                        | INDICATIVE  | SUBJUNCTIVE   |
|------------------------|---|---|
| <i>Present.</i>        | S. possum<br>pōtes<br>potest<br>P. possumus<br>potestis<br>possunt        | S. possim<br>possis<br>possit<br>P. possīmus<br>possītis<br>possint |
| <i>Imperfect.</i>      | S. poteram<br>poteras<br>poterat<br>P. poteramus<br>poteratis<br>poterant | S. possem<br>posses<br>posset<br>P. possemus<br>possetis<br>possent |
| <i>Future.</i>         | potero, etc.  |   |
| <i>Perfect.</i>        | potui, etc.   | potuerim, etc.  |
| <i>Pluperfect.</i>     | potueram, etc.  | potuissem, etc.   |
| <i>Future Perfect.</i> | potuero, etc.   |   |

## INFINITIVE.

*Present, posse.*

*Perfect, potuisse.*

*Present Participle, potens (adj.)*

**Căpio, I take** (see p. 60).

|                        | INDICATIVE   | SUBJUNCTIVE   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| <i>Present.</i>        | <i>S. capio<br/>capis<br/>capit<br/>P. capīmus<br/>capītis<br/>capiunt</i> | <i>capiam<br/>capias, etc.</i>  |
| <i>Imperfect.</i>      | <i>capiebam, etc.</i>  | <i>S. capĕrem<br/>capĕres<br/>caperet<br/>P. caperemus<br/>caperetis<br/>caperent</i> |
| <i>Future.</i>         | <i>capiam<br/>capiēs, etc.</i>   |   |
| <i>Perfect.</i>        | <i>cēpi, etc.</i>  | <i>ceperim, etc.</i>  |
| <i>Pluperfect.</i>     | <i>ceperam, etc.</i>   | <i>cepissem, etc.</i>   |
| <i>Future Perfect.</i> | <i>cepero, etc.</i>  |   |

#### IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. S. cape*<sup>1</sup> } *take!* *Fut. S. 2. capĭto, you shall take.*  
*P. capĭte* } *3. capito, he shall take.*  
*P. 2. capitote, you shall take.*  
*3. capiunto, they shall take.*

#### INFINITIVE.

*Present, capĕre. Perfect, cepisse.*

*Future, capturus esse.*

*Present Participle, capiens. Future Participle, capturus.*

*Gerund, capiendi, -do, -dum. Supines, captum, captu.*

<sup>1</sup> *Facio* makes *fac*.

**Capior, I am taken.**

|                        | INDICATIVE   | SUBJUNCTIVE  |
|------------------------|--|--|
| <i>Present.</i>        | <i>S.</i> capior<br>capēris<br>capītur<br><i>P.</i> capīmur<br>capimini<br>capiuntur | capiar, etc.   |
| <i>Imperfect.</i>      | capiebar, etc.   | <i>S.</i> capērer<br>capereris<br>caperetur<br><i>P.</i> caperemur<br>caperemini<br>caperentur |
| <i>Future.</i>         | capiar<br>capiēris, etc.   |  |
| <i>Perfect.</i>        | captus sum, etc.   | captus sim, etc.   |
| <i>Pluperfect.</i>     | captus eram, etc.  | captus essem, etc.   |
| <i>Future Perfect.</i> | captus ero, etc.   |  |

## IMPERATIVE

|              |  |                    |  |                           |  |
|--------------|--|--------------------|--|---------------------------|--|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <i>S.</i> 2. capēre<br><i>P.</i> 2. capīmini | } <i>be taken!</i> | <i>S.</i> 2. capītor,<br>3. capitor,         | <i>you</i><br><i>he</i>   | } <i>shall</i><br><i>be</i><br><i>taken.</i> |
|              |  |                    | <i>Fut. P.</i> 2. capīmini,<br>3. capiuntor, | <i>you</i><br><i>they</i> |  |

## INFINITIVE.

|                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Present, capi.</i>              | <i>Perfect, captus esse.</i> |
| <i>Future, captum iri.</i>         |                              |
| <i>Present Participle, captus.</i> | <i>Gerundive, capiendus.</i> |

**Fĕro, I bring.**

|                        | INDICATIVE  | SUBJUNCTIVE   |
|------------------------|---|---|
| <i>Present.</i>        | <i>S. fero</i><br><i>fers</i><br><i>fert</i><br><i>P. ferĭmus</i><br><i>fertis</i><br><i>ferunt</i> | <i>feram</i><br><i>feras, etc.</i>  |
| <i>Imperfect.</i>      | <i>ferebam, etc.</i>  | <i>S. ferrem</i><br><i>ferres</i><br><i>ferret</i><br><i>P. ferremus</i><br><i>ferretis</i><br><i>ferrent</i> |
| <i>Future.</i>         | <i>feram</i><br><i>feres, etc.</i>  |   |
| <i>Perfect.</i>        | <i>tŭli, etc.</i>   | <i>tulerim, etc.</i>  |
| <i>Pluperfect.</i>     | <i>tuleram, etc.</i>  | <i>tulissem, etc.</i>   |
| <i>Future Perfect.</i> | <i>tulero, etc.</i>   |   |

## IMPERATIVE.

|              |                                  |                 |             |  |
|--------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|-------------|--|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <i>S. fer</i><br><i>P. ferte</i> | } <i>bring.</i> | <i>Fut.</i> | <i>S. 2. ferto, you shall bring.</i>   |
|              |                                  |                 |             | <i>3. ferto, he shall bring.</i>       |
|              |                                  |                 |             | <i>P. 2. fertote, you shall bring.</i> |
|              |                                  |                 |             | <i>3. ferunto, they shall bring.</i>   |

## INFINITIVE.

*Present, ferre. Future, tulisse.*

*Future, lāturus esse.*

*Present Participle, ferens. Future Participle, laturus.*

*Gerund, ferendi, -do, -dum. Supines, latum, latu.*

*Obs. 1. Like fero, are declined its compounds affero, confero, etc.*

*Obs. 2. You observe that there are here really three distinct verbs. The one that goes to make the supine appears again in sub-latum, the supine of tollo.*



**Feror, I am brought.**

|                        | INDICATIVE   | SUBJUNCTIVE  |
|------------------------|--|--|
| <i>Present.</i>        | S. feror<br>ferris<br>fertur<br>P. ferimur<br>ferimini<br>feruntur | ferar<br>feraris, etc.   |
| <i>Imperfect.</i>      | ferebar, etc.  | S. ferrer<br>ferrēris<br>ferretur<br>P. ferremur<br>ferremini<br>ferrentur |
| <i>Future.</i>         | ferar<br>fereris, etc.   |  |
| <i>Perfect.</i>        | latus sum, etc.  | latus sim, etc.  |
| <i>Pluperfect.</i>     | latus eram, etc.   | latus essem, etc.  |
| <i>Future Perfect.</i> | latus ero, etc.  |  |

IMPERATIVE.

*Present,* S. ferre.  
P. ferimini.

*Future,* S. 2. fertor.  
3. fertor.  
P. 3. feruntor.

INFINITIVE.

*Present,* ferri.  
*Perfect,* latus esse.  
*Future,* latus iri.  
*Past Participle,* latus.      *Gerundive,* ferendus.

*Volo, I am willing, I wish.*

|                        | INDICATIVE   | SUBJUNCTIVE   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| <i>Present.</i>        | <i>S. volo</i><br><i>vis</i><br><i>vult</i><br><i>P. volūmus</i><br><i>vultis</i><br><i>volunt</i>                             | <i>S. vēlim</i><br><i>velis</i><br><i>velit</i><br><i>P. velimus</i><br><i>velitis</i><br><i>velint</i>                   |
| <i>Imperfect.</i>      | <i>S. volebam</i><br><i>volebas</i><br><i>volebat</i><br><i>P. volebamus</i><br><i>volebatis</i><br><i>volebant</i>            | <i>S. vellem</i><br><i>velles</i><br><i>vellet</i><br><i>P. vellemus</i><br><i>velletis</i><br><i>vellent</i>             |
| <i>Future.</i>         | <i>S. volam</i><br><i>voles</i><br><i>volet</i><br><i>P. volemus</i><br><i>voletis</i><br><i>volent</i>                        |   |
| <i>Perfect.</i>        | <i>S. volui</i><br><i>voluisti</i><br><i>voluit</i><br><i>P. voluimus</i><br><i>voluistis [voluere</i><br><i>voluerunt and</i> | <i>S. voluerim</i><br><i>volueris</i><br><i>voluerit</i><br><i>P. voluerimus</i><br><i>volueritis</i><br><i>voluerint</i> |
| <i>Pluperfect.</i>     | <i>volueram, etc.</i>  | <i>voluissem, etc.</i>  |
| <i>Future Perfect.</i> | <i>S. voluero</i><br><i>volueris</i><br><i>voluerit</i><br><i>P. voluerimus</i><br><i>volueritis</i><br><i>voluerint</i>       |   |

INFINITIVE.

*Present, velle.*

*Perfect, voluisse.*

*Present Participle, volens.*

**Nōlo**, *I am unwilling.*

|                        | INDICATIVE  | SUBJUNCTIVE   |
|------------------------|---|---|
| <i>Present.</i>        | <i>S.</i> nolo<br>nonvis<br>nonvult<br><i>P.</i> nolūmus<br>nonvultis<br>nolunt | <i>S.</i> nolim<br>nolis<br>nolit<br><i>P.</i> nolīmus<br>nolītis<br>nolint       |
| <i>Imperfect.</i>      | nolebam, etc.   | <i>S.</i> nollem<br>nolles<br>nollet<br><i>P.</i> nollemus<br>nollētis<br>nollent |
| <i>Future.</i>         | nolam<br>noles, etc.  |   |
| <i>Perfect.</i>        | nolui, etc.   | noluerim, etc.  |
| <i>Pluperfect.</i>     | nolueram, etc.  | noluissem, etc.   |
| <i>Future Perfect.</i> | noluero, etc.   |   |

IMPERATIVE.

|              |                  |                  |             |  |
|--------------|------------------|------------------|-------------|--|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <i>S.</i> noli   | } <i>do not.</i> | <i>Fut.</i> | <i>S.</i> 2. nolīto, <i>you shall not.</i> |
|              | <i>P.</i> nolīte |                  |             | 3. nolīto, <i>he shall not.</i>            |
|              |                  |                  |             | <i>P.</i> 2. nolitōte,<br>3. nolunto.      |

INFINITIVE.

*Present*, nolle. *Perfect*, noluisse.  
*Present Participle*, nolens.

*Note.*---Nolo used to be ne-volo.

**Malo, I had rather, I prefer.**

|                        | INDICATIVE   | SUBJUNCTIVE   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| <i>Present.</i>        | <i>S. mālō</i><br><i>mavis</i><br><i>mavult</i><br><i>P. malūmus</i><br><i>mavultis</i><br><i>malunt</i> | <i>S. malim</i><br><i>malis</i><br><i>malit</i><br><i>P. malīmus</i><br><i>malītis</i><br><i>malint</i>       |
| <i>Imperfect.</i>      | <i>malebam, etc.</i>   | <i>S. mallem</i><br><i>malles</i><br><i>mallet</i><br><i>P. mallemus</i><br><i>mallētis</i><br><i>mallent</i> |
| <i>Future.</i>         | <i>malam</i><br><i>males, etc.</i>   |   |
| <i>Perfect.</i>        | <i>malui, etc.</i>   | <i>maluerim, etc.</i>   |
| <i>Pluperfect.</i>     | <i>malueram, etc.</i>  | <i>maluissem, etc.</i>  |
| <i>Future Perfect.</i> | <i>maluero, etc.</i>   |   |

INFINITIVE.

*Present, malle.*

*Perfect, maluisse.*

**Fio**, *I am made, I become.*

|                        | INDICATIVE   | SUBJUNCTIVE   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| <i>Present.</i>        | <i>S.</i> fio<br>fis<br>fit<br><i>P.</i> fimus<br>fitis<br>fiunt | flam<br>fias, etc.  |
| <i>Imperfect.</i>      | fiebam, etc.   | <i>S.</i> fiērem<br>fieres<br>fieret<br><i>P.</i> fieremus<br>fieretis<br>fierent |
| <i>Future.</i>         | flam<br>fies, etc.   |   |
| <i>Perfect.</i>        | factus sum, etc.   | factus sim, etc.  |
| <i>Pluperfect.</i>     | factus eram, etc.  | factus essem, etc.  |
| <i>Future Perfect.</i> | factus ero, etc.   |   |

#### IMPERATIVE.

|                 |                                  |                |  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|----------------|--|
| <i>Present,</i> | <i>S.</i> fi.<br><i>P.</i> fite. | <i>Future,</i> | <i>S.</i> 2. fito.<br>3. fito.<br><i>P.</i> 2. fitōte.<br>3. fiunto. |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|----------------|--|

#### INFINITIVE.

|                         |              |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Present,</i>         | fiēri.       |
| <i>Perfect,</i>         | factus esse. |
| <i>Future,</i>          | factum iri.  |
| <i>Past Participle,</i> | factus.      |
| <i>Gerundive,</i>       | faciendus    |

## EO, I go.

|                        | INDICATIVE  | SUBJUNCTIVE  |
|------------------------|---|--|
| <i>Present.</i>        | <i>S.</i> eo<br>is<br>it<br><i>P.</i> imus<br>itis<br>eunt                                      | <i>S.</i> eam<br>eas<br>eat<br><i>P.</i> eamus<br>eatis<br>eant                      |
| <i>Imperfect.</i>      | <i>S.</i> ibam<br>ibas<br>ibat<br><i>P.</i> ibamus<br>ibatis<br>ibant                           | <i>S.</i> irem<br>ires<br>iret<br><i>P.</i> iremus<br>iretis<br>irent                |
| <i>Future.</i>         | <i>S.</i> ibo<br>ibis<br>ibit<br><i>P.</i> ibimus<br>ibitis<br>ibunt                            |  |
| <i>Perfect.</i>        | <i>S.</i> ii<br>isti and iisti<br>iit<br><i>P.</i> iimus<br>istis and iistis<br>ierunt and iere | <i>S.</i> ierim<br>ieris<br>ierit<br><i>P.</i> ierimus<br>ieritis<br>ierint          |
| <i>Pluperfect.</i>     | <i>S.</i> ieram<br>ieras<br>ierat<br><i>P.</i> ieramus<br>ieratis<br>ierant                     | <i>S.</i> issem & iissem<br>isses<br>isset<br><i>P.</i> issemus<br>issetis<br>issent |
| <i>Future Perfect.</i> | <i>S.</i> iero <i>P.</i> ierimus<br>ieris    ieritis<br>ierit    ierint                         |  |

IMPERATIVE.

|                 |                              |                             |
|-----------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
|                 |                              | S. 2. ito.                  |
|                 |                              | 3. ito.                     |
| <i>Present,</i> | S. i<br>P. ite } <i>go !</i> | <i>Future,</i> P. 2. itōte. |
|                 |                              | 3. eunto.                   |

INFINITIVE.

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| <i>Present,</i> ire.                             |                            |
| <i>Perfect,</i> isse and iisse.                  |                            |
| <i>Future,</i> iturus esse.                      |                            |
| <i>Pres. Part.</i> iens ( <i>Gen.</i> euntis).   | <i>Fut. Part.</i> iturus.  |
| <i>Gerund</i> <del>ize</del> , eundi, -do, -dum. | <i>Supines,</i> itum, itu. |

Some of these compounds of *eo*, *e.g.* *adeo*, *to approach*, and *ineo*, *to enter*, are used in the passive.

INDICATIVE.—*Present*, *adeor*, *adīris*, *adītur*, *adīmur*, *adimini*, *adeuntur*. *Imperfect*, *adibar*. *Future*, *adibor*. *Perfect*, *adītus sum*. *Pluperfect*, *aditus eram*. *Future Perfect*, *aditus ero*.

SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Present*, *adear*. *Imperfect*, *adīrer*. *Perfect*, *aditus sim*. *Pluperfect*, *aditus essem*.

INFINITIVE.—*Present*, *adiri*. *Perfect*, *aditum esse*. *Past Participle*, *aditus*. *Gerundive*, *adeundus*.

## NOTES ON THE PIECES FOR TRANSLATION.

### I. p. 6.

*Carmeādes*, the name of a Greek philosopher.

*senectam*; *senecta* is another word of the same meaning as *senectus* (*senectūtis*).

*accubisset*; the subjunctive is due to the *cum*; in English the indicative is used. The ancient Romans and Greeks lay down at meals.

*cogitationibus inhaerens*; *cogitationibus* is dative. Notice that the two words go with what follows, and that they give the reason for his forgetfulness.

### II. p. 6.

*Myndum*; *Myndus* is a coast-town in Caria, in Asia Minor.

### III. p. 6.

*sermoni interesset*; *intersum* takes the dative. Verbs in which a preposition forms the first part generally do so. Compare *cogitationibus inhaerens* above.

*neque quidquam*, etc., "without himself talking at all."  
*aliquando*, "before now."

### IV. p. 11.

*Mulier* is the subject of *inquit*; *a Philippo* goes with *damnata*.  
This will have happened the day after the banquet.

### V. p. 12.

*puer*, "as a boy."

*Me miserum!* "Wretched boy that I am!"

*uno*, that is *mundo*; the ablative because *potior* takes that case. *Potior* is one of the verbs, called "deponent," which have an active meaning, though they are passive in form.

### VI. p. 12.

*ipsi*, dat. sing., "to him," Alexander.

*utebantur*; *utor* is like *potior* above; it takes the abl. and is deponent.

### VII. p. 19.

*Themistocles interroganti . . . respondit*, "Themistocles answered to one asking him, i.e. "when somebody asked Themistocles he answered."

*tu vero*, "what about yourself?" "what do *you* say?" The question is answered by a question, for the poet Homer is, as it were, the herald who proclaims Achilles victorious.



## VIII. p. 19.

p. 19. *cum* ; the conjunction, not the preposition.

20. *quibusdam ut sacrum exprobrantibus*, "when certain persons found fault with this proceeding as being cruel."

## IX. p. 20.

*percunctatus est* ; from *percunctor*, which is a deponent verb, and takes an object—*cos*.

*num dixissent*, "whether they had said."

## X. p. 20.

*dum . . . ambulat* ; we should say, "while he (the philosopher) *was* walking."

## XI. p. 20.

*num quid eorum quae in tonstrina essent*, "whether he . . . any of the things which were" (the reason why *essent* is in the subjunctive is explained farther on, p. 81).

*unguentorum*, etc., "for *he said* that he had."

*atque optimorum*, "and very good ones too."

*negavit*, "he said that he did not . . ."

## XII. p. 26.

p. 26. *Sic ut antehac*, etc., *i.e. sic valeo*, "My health is such that I have never before been worse," "I never felt so bad as I do now."

*Bono sis animo oportet*, "You ought to be of good courage," *i.e.* "to keep up your spirits."

*Quid morbi*, "What illness is it?"

*Nescio et hoc*, etc.; *hoc*, "on this account;" *periculosius* is an adverb.

*Et quidem*, etc., "Yes, and a great many too."

*ut fit*, "as usual."

*Alius negat*, One doctor says "no," another says "yes," another that he must think about it. One doctor gives a name to the malady, but another says that it is not that, while a third must take time to consider whether it is or is not.

*Diu est quod* ; *quod*, "that," "since;" *teneris* is present, but in English we would use the perfect.

27. *hoc mali*, like *quid morbi* above, "this of evil," "this evil."

## XIII. p. 34.

p. 34. *quidem*, "to be sure."

*qui extorqueat*, "to wrench."

35. *hic* ; adverb, in this point of giving holidays.

*idemque*, "and . . . too."

*oratorem*, "ambassador."

*Satis iam salveo*, "That's enough salutation!"

*Nihil aliud quam luditis*, "You do nothing but play."

- p. 35. *Scit tua prudentia*, "Your wisdom knows;" "you, in your wisdom, know."  
*Sane ut istud tenes*, "It is strange how you remember what makes for you (what suits your purpose)."  
 36. *si dederis verba; dare verba*, to give words (instead of things), means "to cheat, deceive."  
*O lepidum caput!* an endearing expression — "You splendid fellow!" or the like.

## XIV. p. 43.

*radicibus*; *utor* takes the ablative.

*vela tegetes vestem ac funes*, sails and mats, clothing and ropes.  
*scriptum*, i.e. *scriptum est*, "it was written," "men wrote."

## XV. p. 43.

44. *usu*; *careo* takes the ablative.

*Hebetes oculos*, etc., "It is said to have eyes, which are," etc.

## XVI. p. 54.

54. *Incolarum*, etc., supply *sunt*.  
*quae tradebuntur*, "its lessons."

## XVII. p. 59.

60. *qui cum*, "and when they."  
*quod . . . pararetur*; the subjunctive shows that this was the reason given for the request by the friend at the inn, "because he said," etc.

## XVIII. p. 65.

66. *illum somno impeditum*, etc., "He thought his friend did not answer because he was," etc.

## XIX. p. 72.

- veritus ut*, means "fearing that they would not."  
 73. *dives eadem*, etc., "the country is both rich and," etc.

## XXI. p. 87.

2. because from a horse's teeth you can tell its age.  
 8. we say: Birds of a feather, etc.  
 13. we say: There is no rose, etc.  
 14. something like: A bird in the hand, etc.  
 17. i.e. whatever others may think, we value what is our own.  
 26. i.e. we live and learn.  
 38. the Latin for: Necessity is the mother of invention.  
 40. and is cheated and deceived.  
 41. *habes, habebis*; if you have much or little, you will be thought much or little of.  
 52. *habent*, "treat."

## XXII. p. 104.

*iuncti pedes*, i.e. *sint iuncti*.

*huius rei*; he means "of the precepts I am giving you."

*Nunc flectendum erat genu*, "Now you should give a bow." (The boy does so.) "That's right!"

*admoveo manum patinae*; notice that every one helps himself out of the dish, and with his hand.

*Admoveo* is the future imperative. *Admove* would also do, but the other form is often used when the command refers, not to some particular occasion, but to any occasion which may in the future arise.

*si quid*; *quid* means "anything"; see *quis* in the dictionary at the end.

*si non sitis*; *sitis* is not from *sum*, but from *sitio*.

*loquentibus*, "those who speak to you."

*nisi rogatus*, "except when asked to speak."

*Num quid aliud vis?* "Do you want anything more of me?" i.e. "May I go now?"

## XXIII. p. 105.

*pueri pessimi et audaces*, "very naughty and daring boys as they were."

*gemitusque*; *gemitus* is acc. plur.

*huc illuc*; without an *et* between them; "this way and that."

*nobis* is dative, which is sometimes used to express the agent; "by us."

*rei*; not from *res*, but from *reus*.

*quam celerrime*, "as quickly as we can."

*precaturo*, "with the intention of begging for."

## XXIV. p. 133.

*insanos suos*; "his lunatics," i.e. the lunatics who were his patients at the asylum.

*rectene*; *recte* and *-ne*.

*ille alter*, "the other," i.e. the lunatic.

*Nesciebam*, etc., is of course said by the doctor.

## XXV. p. 133.

*Coriolanus*, a Roman, was advancing upon Rome in command of her enemies, the Volscians. But when his mother went out of the city and besought him to spare his native city, he led his troops away.

*sine*; from *sino*.

*captiva*, etc., "whether I have come as captive or . . ."

p. 134. *In hoc*; *hoc* is acc. neut. "to this"; what "this" is, is explained by *ut . . . viderem*.

*Potuisti*, "have you had the heart to?"

## XXVI. p. 134.

*M*; initial of *Marcus*.

*ob rem publicam prodendam*, "to betray the state."

*accepisset*; the subjunctive expressed that this was the alleged crime.

## XXVII. p. 134.

The moral of the fable is given in the first two lines.

*paenitentia*; abl. "when regret is too late."

*hunc*, the crow.

## XXVIII. p. 151.

*per aetatem*, "as far as age was concerned," *i.e.* he was old enough to speak.

*elinguīs*, "without a tongue, incapable of speech."

*spiritūs*; gen. after *impetu*.

## XXIX. p. 152.

*Bucēphālas*; the name is Greek, meaning "bull-headed."

*Id etiam*; the *id* means the story which follows.

## XXX. p. 152.

*in illum hiatus*, the chasm thus caused by the deluge of rain.

p. 153. *detractum ipse induit*; lit. he himself put on the ring having been drawn off the finger of the corpse, *i.e.* "he took the ring off and put it on his own finger."

*in concilium pastorum*, into the society of the shepherds, he joined the shepherds.

*erat autem*, "he was, I should say."

*converterat*; and not subj. after *cum*, as *discessisset* above, because *cum* means here "whenever."

*idem*, merely "and he."

*in locum*, "into its proper position."

*regem dominum*, "the king his master."

## XXXI. p. 153.

The Sibylline books were full of prophecies, and were, after this purchase, kept in the Capitol, at Rome, and consulted on critical occasions.

*immensum*, "a huge price."

*aetate*, by reason of her age, because she was so old.

p. 154. *conditi*; supply *sunt*, and so with *appellati*.

## XXXII. p. 166.

*Consules Romani s. d.*; the usual way of beginning a letter, *e.g.* *Balbus Gaio salutem dicit*.

p. 167. *sit quem*, let there be some one for us to be able to conquer with our arms. The Roman consuls proudly say that they would be unhappy if there were no enemy left to conquer.

*qui . . . peteret*, in order to ask.

*si . . . interfecisset*, if he should have killed ; we should say, however, "if he killed."  
*visum est ut*, "we have determined to inform you."  
*ne quid eiusmodi si*, "lest if anything of the kind happened."

## XXXIII. p. 167.

*erant autem*, etc., the books were Greek and full, etc.

## XXXIV. p. 194.

*agrum Pomptinum*, the Pomptine district, a marshy country not far from Rome, still called "the Pontine marshes."  
*si quis*, if any one, any one who.

## XXXV. p. 195.

*ad milites*, before the soldiers, in addressing them.  
*Hanc sibi oblatam*, etc. ; the order is (*Sertorius*) *institit persuadere omnibus*.

*consternatū* ; nom. sing., agreeing with *cerva*.

p. 196. *requisita*, when it was sought in vain.

*qui nuntiaverat* ; *qui* agrees with *eum* understood, "the man who."

*quod imperaverat significat*, "gives a slave a sign to do what he had ordered."

## XXXVI. p. 218.

## A.

*cantator fidibus*, player on the harp. It is not common for one noun depending on another to be in any other case than the genitive, p. 154.

p. 219. *ut notiores*, as being.

## B.

*sicut stabat canebatque*, "just as he was, when he stood singing," *i.e.* with the lyre in his hand and the grand dress on.

p. 220. *talem . . . qualis*, "in the same costume in which."

*rem sicuti acciderat narravit*, "related the adventure exactly as it had actually happened."

## XXXVII. p. 220.

*ita*, by playing the lyre.

*infelix* ; the poet addresses Arion, as he does the sailor below in the ninth line.

p. 221. *memorant* ; the order is *memorant delphina supposuisse se*.

## XXXVIII. p. 249.

## A.

*cui nomen Androclo fuit*; *Androclo* agrees with *cui* instead of with *nomen*, as you might expect, a curious but the regular construction with *nomen est*.

*videres*; you (or any one) might have seen, if you had been there.

## B.

p. 250. *sole medio*, "at mid-day."

*sed postquam introgressus*, etc., but the lion, when, after entering what proved to be his own lair, he saw me taking refuge in a far corner, came to me, etc.; *ut re ipsa apparuit* explains *suum*, the lion's entering showed that it was its home.

## XXXIX. p. 279.

## B.

At the battle of Lake Trasymene the Romans were defeated by Hannibal. *sciscitantes*, agreeing with *mulieres* understood.

*gratulantes*; you might have seen people collecting round the inquirers as they returned, either congratulating or consoling them.

## XL. p. 280.

In Aeneas' absence his camp is besieged by his enemy Turnus, leader of the Rutulians. The Trojans, Aeneas' followers, are therefore in great danger. Nisus and his young friend Euryalus set out on the perilous task of breaking through the besieging army to summon Aeneas. They both perish in the attempt. The Rutulians put their heads on spears for the Trojans to see. Euryalus' mother, who was in the Trojan camp, on seeing her son's head says what follows.

*Hunc ego te aspicio*, Is this you that I see? Is it thus that I see you? *illa requies*, "that" solace is the solace I promised myself in the past. *potuisti*, "have you had the heart to?"

*adfari extremum*, "to speak a farewell."

*heu terra ignota*, etc.; the order is, *heu iaces terra ignota* (abl.) *praeda* (as a prey) *data Latinis canibus alitibusque*.

*quo sequar?* "where shall I seek you?"

## XLI. p. 280.

*Hannibali victori*, "Hannibal after his victory."

p. 281. *ut scias*. The meaning is: to show you what has been gained by this battle, I promise you that four days from now, etc.

## XLII. p. 288.

*Strato*, though a doctor, was a slave, as was often the case in those days.

*uno . . . conscio* ; ablative absolute.

p. 289. *ne multa* ; a verb of saying (*dicam*) to be supplied, "in short."

XLIII. p. 289.

*in carcerem quodam modo*, "in prison as it were," not literally but practically.

XLIV. p. 290.

*argento atroque*, ablative of material, "made of."

*nolo iam*, "I don't want any longer."

XLV. p. 313.

*otiandi*, etc. ; Canius in telling this story used to say that he went to Syracuse to rest, not to do business, and yet that he did business, and very bad business too.

*hortulos*, a small estate, pleasure-grounds and house.

*Pythius ei* ; the *ei* comes after *dixit*.

*venales quidem*, etc., "that his estate was not for sale, but that Canius might use it as his own."

*promisisset*, promised to come, *i.e.* accepted the invitation.

*qui esset, ut argentarius*, "because he was, as a banker would naturally be."

*apparatum* ; understand *est*.

*quod ceperat* ; *i.e.* *quod piscium ceperat*.

*hic aquatio*, supply *piscium est*, a place for the fish to get their fresh water from.

*isti*, the fishermen.

p. 314. *Gravate ille primo* ; understand *agit*, he was reluctant at first to come to terms.

*Quid multa ?* understand *dicam*, Why should I say much ? to cut the matter short, in a word.

*nomina facit* ; *nomina facere* is to enter a name in a ledger whether as creditor or debtor ; here it means, Canius borrows the money.

*scalum nullum*, not a sign of a thole-pin, much less a boat ; a thole-pin used instead of a rowlock.

*quod sciam*, "so far as I know."

*quid faceret ?* "what was he to do ?" he could not do anything.

XLVI. p. 314.

A.

*inmiscentque manus manibus*, their hands go in and out in the fight, "they make their fists meet in the melee."

*ille pedum melior motu* ; *ille* is Dares, *motu* means "quick movement."

*tarda trementi genua labant*, lit. his slow-moving knees are unsteady to him trembling; pronounce *genua* as *genva*.  
*nisque immotus eodem*, "in the same strained posture."  
*corpore*, by bending his body aside.

p. 315. *ostendit dextram*, put forth his right hand.

## B.

*studiis*, eagerly.

*it clamor caelo*; *caelo*, to heaven; in prose it would have to be *ad caelum*.

*nunc ille sinistra*; the *ille* need not be translated. (It means something like "terrible boxer that he was.")

*passus*, i.e. *passus est*.

*alias*, different; i.e. that you no longer have the best of it, but that Entellus has.

## XLVII. p. 331.

Repeated with slight alterations from XVII. p. 59.

*quod . . . pararetur*; the reason for the subjunctive here is given in a note on XVII.

p. 332. *quid posse esse foedius*; the explanation of the infinitive *posse* here is given in the footnote of p. 327.

## XLVIII. p. 332.

*curat*; the subject is Caesar.

*ut flumen transirent*; the clause explains what is meant by *id*, "namely, to cross the river."

p. 333. *persequi*; supply *nos* or *Helvetios*.

*ita . . . didicimus ut*; the clause introduced by *ut* explains what is meant by *ita*.



# LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

TO THE

## EXERCISES AND TRANSLATION.

*Obs. 1. Words that occur in the Exercises are printed in **thicker** type. (Many of these occur also in the Translation.)*

*Obs. 2. A figure after a word denotes the declension or conjugation to which it belongs. The gender of nouns which follow the rules is not given.*

**A, ab**, *by* or *from* (with abl.); it is not used for *by* before things.

Ab ictu (in XLVI.), *away from the blow, out of reach of blows.*

abācus (2), *a side-table.*

**abduco**, abduxi, abductus (3), *to lead away, take away, draw back.*

**ābeo**, abivi and abii, abītum, abire, *to go away, depart.* See eo, p. 344.

abicio, abiēcī, abiectus, abicēre, *to throw out.*

**abiit**, from abeo.

ablēgo (1), *to remove.*

abominandus, *terrible.*

abrumpo, abrūpi, abruptus (3), *to break off, to end.*

**absens** (absentis), adj., *absent.*

**absolvo**, absolvi, absolutus (3), *to absolve, find not guilty, acquit*; often used with the genitive of the charge on which a man is acquitted; furti absolutus est, *he was acquitted on a charge of theft.*

absque, prepos. with abl., *without.*

**abstulit**, from aufero.

**absum**, *I am absent, am away from.*

absūmo, absumpsi, absumptus (3), *to destroy.*

abundantia (1), *abundance.*

ac, *and.*

accēdo, accessi (3), *to approach.*

accersitus, from accerso.

accerso, accersivi, accersitus, accersēre, *to summon, fetch.*

accessit, from accedo.

**accidit** (3), *it happens*; it may also be perfect, accidit, *it happened.*

accīdo, accidi (3), *to happen.*

**accipio**, accēpi, acceptus, accipēre, *to receive, take in.*

accōmmōdus, adj., *suited.*

accubisset, pluperf. subj. of accumbo, *had lain down, reclined.*

The Greeks and Romans lay down, instead of sitting down, to meals.

accurātus, adj., *careful*; accuratius, *with great care, very carefully.*

accurro, accurri (3), *to run up.*

accūsō (1), *to accuse.*

ācer, acris, aere, adj. (comp. acrior, sup. acerrimus), *keen, energetic.*

ācerbus, -a, -um, adj., *bitter, melancholy.*

ācidus, -a, -um, adj., *bitter.*

ācies (5), *line of battle.*

acriter, adv., *keenly, energetically.*

actio (actionis), *action (at law), prosecution.*

actus, from ago.

ad, prep. with acc., *to (of motion to), according to, with a view to, at, for, before.* Ad solis occasum, *at sunset*; ad tempus, *up to time, in time*; ad diem, *on the right day*; ad hunc modum, *after this fashion, thus*; ad urbem proficiscitur, *he sets out for the city.*

addo, addidi, additus (3), *to add.*

addūco, adduxi, adductus (3), *to lead to, bring to.* Adductus, *influenced by, i.e. in consequence of, attracted by.*

ādeo, adivi and -ii, aditum, adire, *to come to, approach, go to.*

adeo, adv., *quite, absolutely.*

adesse, see adsum.

adfēro, adtūli, adlātus (also written affero, attuli, allatus), *to bring to.*

adfinis, adj., *connected with, chargeable with.*

adfluo, adfluxi (3), *to flow towards.*

adfor (1), dep., *to address*; adfari extremum, *to address for the last time.*

adhībeo (2), *to give, furnish, supply.*

adhuc, adv., *at present, as yet, up to this time.*

adicio, adiēci, adiectus, adicēre, *to add.*

adiectis, from adicio.

adiit, from adeo.

aditus (4), *approach, a means of approach.*

adiungo, adiunxi, adiunctus (3), *to join on, attach to.*

adiuturum, from adiuvo.

adiūvo, -iūvi, -iūtus (1), *to help.*

adlōquor, adlocūtus, adloqui (3), *to address, to address a remark to.*

admirābilis, -e, adj., *astonishing.*

admirātio (-ōnis), *admiration, astonishment*; admirationi esse, *to cause astonishment.*

admīror (1), dep., *to admire, to wonder.*

admitto, admisi, admissus (3), *to admit.*

admōveo, -mōvi, -mōtus, *to move.*

adnitor, adnisi and adnexus (3), dep., *to strive, work.*

adno (1), *to swim up.*

adolesco, adolēvi, adultus (3), *to grow up, grow.*

adolēvit, from adolesco.

adorior, adortus (4), dep., *to attack.*

adparātus (4), *luxury, preparations.*

adprehendo, adprehendi, adprehensus (3), *to arrest.*

adrīdeo, adrisi, adrisum, *to smile at.*

adsentātor (-ōris), *flatterer.*

adsultus (4), *assault, means of attack.*

adsum, *to be present*; adsum tibi, *I help you (I am present for you).*

ādūlescens (adulescentis), *young, a young man.*

adūlor (1), dep., *to flatter, fawn upon.*

adultus, from adolesco.

advēnio, advēni, adventum (4), *to come to, approach.*

adventus (4), *arrival, approach, coming.*

adversarius (2), *adversary, enemy.*

advōlo (1), *to fly towards, or to.*

aedes (aedium), plur., *a house.*

aedīfico (1), *to build.*

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick, sickly, weary.*

**aegerrime**, adv., *with great difficulty.*

**aegre**, adv., *with difficulty.*

**aegrōto** (1), *to be ill.*

**aemulatio** (-ōnis), *emulation, rivalry.*

**aēnēus**, adj., *made of brass, brazen.*

**aequaevus**, adj., *of the same age.*

**aequālis**, -e, *equal in age; a friend.*

**aequor** (aequōris), neut., *water; plain.*

**aequorēns**, adj., *having to do with the sea; aequorea aqua, sea-water.*

**aequus**, adj., *even, equal; aequo animo, with resignation.*

**aes** (āeris), neut., *brass, money; aes alienum (other people's money), debt.*

**aestas** (aestātis), *summer.*

**aestimo** (1), *to value, estimate.*

**aetas** (aetātis), *age.*

**affēro**, attūli, allātus, *afferre, to bring (to).*

**āge**, imper. of ago, *come!*

**āger** (agri), *a field, land, territory.*

**agger** (aggēris), *a mound, a rampart.*

**agmen** (agmīnis), *column (of an army).*

**agnosco**, agnōvi, agnītus (3), *to recognise.*

**āgo**, ēgi, actus (3), *to do, to be active or busy, to drive; vitam agere, to spend one's life; causam agere, to plead one's cause, to make one's defence; satis agere, to have enough (or more than enough) to do; agere cum aliquo, to treat with somebody. In XIII., nequidquam mecum egeris, you will have treated (pleaded) with me in vain.*

**aio**, *I say, affirm, say "yes."*

**alacritas** (alacritātis), *ardour, eagerness, alacrity.*

**albus**, adj., *white.*

**ales** (alitis), *bird.*

**Alexander** (Alexandri), *Alexander.*

**aliēnus**, adj., *belonging to another; aes alienum (another person's money), debt; alienus, subst., a stranger.*

**aliō**, adv., *to another place.*

**aliquando**, adv., *sometimes, before now, once upon a time.*

**āliquantus**, adj., *some, considerable; aliquantum pecuniae (or nummorum), a considerable sum of money; aliquantum progressus, having advanced a considerable distance.*

**āliquis**, aliquid, *some; aliquis, somebody; aliquid, something; aliquid cibi (something in the way of food), some food.*

**aliter**, adv., *otherwise.*

**alius**, adj. (gen. alius), *other, another. Alii . . . alii, some . . . others.*

**alo**, alui, alitus and altus (3), *to nourish.*

**alte**, adv., *on high.*

**alter** (gen. alterius), *a second, the other; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other; ille alter, the other.*

**alternus**, adj., *alternate; alternis pedibus, first on one foot, then on the other.*

**altus**, adj., *deep; altissima quaeque flumina, all the deepest rivers, very deep rivers; altum, subst., the deep (sea).*

**aluit**, from alo.

**alumnus** (2), *foster-son.*

**alvus** (2), fem., *stomach, belly.*

**amātus**, partic. of amo, *beloved; amicum amatumque, a friend and a favourite.*

**ambiguus**, adj., *doubting.*

**ambo**, ambae, ambo, *both.*

**ambulo** (1), *to walk.*

**āmficitia** (1), *friendship.*

**amictus**, partic. of amicio, *clothed.*

**āmicus** (2), *a friend; or adj., friendly; amicior, more friendly.*

- amitto**, amīsi, amissus (3), *to lose*.  
**amnis** (amnis), masc., *stream, river*.  
**amo** (1), *to love*.  
**amor** (amōris), *love*; *amori est mihi*, (something) *is dear to me*.  
**amphōra** (1), *a bottle*.  
**amplector**, amplexus (3), dep., *to embrace*.  
**an**, or (in a question): used in XLVII. in a simple question like *num*, *do you then?*  
**ancōra** (1), *anchor*.  
**angustus**, adj., *narrow*; *angusti est animi*, *it shows a narrow mind*.  
**anhelitus** (4), *panting*.  
**anilis**, -e, adj., *belonging to an old woman*; *curae aniles*, *an old woman's cares*.  
**anima** (1), *life*.  
**animadverto**, -verti (3), *to notice, observe*.  
**animal** (animālis), *an animal*.  
**anīmus** (2), *mind, heart, feelings*; *bono animo esse*, *to keep up one's spirits*; *animi*, plur., *anger*.  
**annāles**, plur., *annals*.  
**annon**, or *not*.  
**annus** (2), *year*.  
**anserinus**, adj., *belonging to the goose (anser)*; *ovum anserinum*, *a goose's egg*.  
**ante**, adv., *before*; prep. with *acus*, *before*.  
**antea**, adv., *before*.  
**antehac**, adv., *before this, before now*.  
**antepōno**, -pōsui, -pōsitus (3), *to prefer*.  
**antiquus**, adj., *old, ancient*.  
**anūlus** (2), *a ring*.  
**ānus** (4), *an old woman*.  
**anxius**, adj., *anxious, troubled*.  
**āpērio**, aperui, apertus (4), *to open, uncover*.  
**aperte**, adv., *openly*.  
**apertus**, partic. of *aperio*; *aperto capite*, *with uncovered head, with nothing on the head*.  
**aperuerunt**, from *aperio*.  
**appareo** (2), *to appear*.  
**appāro** (1), *to prepare*.  
**appello** (1), *to call*.  
**appēto**, appetivi, appetitus (3), *to try for, strive after*.  
**appōno**, appōsui, appōsitus (3), *to place by or near*.  
**appositus** (part. of *appono*), *placed before, placed near, laid near*.  
**apprehendo**, -di, -sus (3), *to stop, arrest*.  
**apprehensio**, from *apprehendo*.  
**approbo** (1), *to approve, show approval (of something)*.  
**apte**, adv., *fitly, rightly*.  
**aptus**, adj., *fitted, fit; tied*.  
**āpud**, prep. with acc., *with, among*.  
**āqua** (1), *water*.  
**aquatio** (-ōnis), *a place to get water at*; *hic aquatio est*, *the fish come here to get their fresh water*.  
**āquo** (1), *to get water*.  
**Arar** (Arāris), *the river Arar, now called Saone*.  
**arbitror** (1), dep., *to think, consider*.  
**arbor** (arbōris), fem., *tree*.  
**arceo**, arcui, arctus, *to keep off*.  
**arcessitus**, past part. of *arcesso* (perf. *arcessivi*), *to send for, summon*.  
**arctius**, adv., *more closely*.  
**ardeo**, arsi, *to burn*.  
**arduus**, adj., *tall; excessive*.  
**arēna** (1), *sand*.  
**argentaria** (1), *the business of a banker*.  
**argentarius** (2), *a banker*.  
**argentum**, *silver, money*.  
**Arīminum**, a town in Italy, now called *Rimini*.  
**Arīon** (Arīōnis), *Arion*.  
**Arīōnius**, adj., *belonging to Arion; nomen Arionium, Arion's name*.  
**arma** (2), plur., *arms, weapons*.  
**armarium**, *chest, safe (for valuables)*.

**armo** (1), *to arm, to furnish with arms.*

**arrectus**, *erect.*

**arrideo**, **arrisi**, **arrisum**, *to smile upon, look pleasant.*

**arrōgo** (1), *to boast.*

**ars** (artis), *art, science.*

**articulāte**, **adv.**, *articulately.*

**artificium**, *handicraft.*

**artius**, **adv.** (comp. of arte), *very soundly.*

**artus** (4), *joint (of the body).*

**arva** (2), **plur.**, *fields.*

**as** (assis), *an as, a small Roman coin; asse eorum est, is dear at a farthing.*

**aspectus** (4), *aspect, appearance.*

**aspicio**, **aspexi**, **aspectus**, **aspicere**, *to behold.*

**ast**, **adv.**, *but.*

**at**, *but; why?*

**Athēnae**, **plur.**, *Athens.*

**Atheniensis**, *an Athenian.*

**atque**, *and; atque optima quidem (in XI.), and excellent ones too.*

**atrox** (atrōcis), **adj.**, *fierce.*

**attāmen**, *but.*

**attentus**, **adj.**, *attentive.*

**attingo**, **attigi**, **attactus** (3), *to reach.*

**attollo** (3), *to lift up.*

**attulimus**, *from affero.*

**auceps** (aucēpis), *a bird-catcher.*

**auctio** (auctionis), *an auction, sale.*

**audācia** (1), *boldness, impudence.*

**audax** (audācis), **adj.**, *bold, impudent.*

**audeo** (2), *the perfect is deponent, ausus sum, to dare.*

**audio** (4), *to hear.*

**aufero**, **abstūli**, **ablātus**, **auferre**, *to take away.*

**aufugio**, **aufūgi**, **aufugere**, *to run away.*

**aura** (1), *air, breeze; aurae superae, the airs of heaven.*

**aureus**, **adj.** (ofaurum), *golden, gold.*

**auris** (auris), **fem.**, *an ear.*

**auritus**, **adj.**, *having ears; auritus testis, an ear-witness.*

**aurum** (2), *gold.*

**Ausōnis** (Ausonidis), **adj.**, *Ausonian; Ausonis ora, the Ausonian shore.—Ausonia is a name for the lower part of Italy.*

**ausus**, *from audeo.*

**aut**, *or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.*

**autem**, **adv.**, *but, however, again.*

**auxilium**, *help; auxilio mittere, to send for a help, i.e. as a help; auxilio tibi venio, I am coming to your aid.*

**avello**, **avelli**, **avulsus** (3), *to get somebody (or something) away, to tear away, to mangle.*

**aversus**, **part.** of **averto**, *turned away, averse, unfriendly, unsympathetic.*

**āverto**, **averti**, **aversus** (3), *to turn (something) away; averto periculum ab urbe, I turn the danger away from the city, I avert it; averto iter, I change the direction of the march, I turn away, go away.*

**avide**, **adv.**, *eagerly.*

**āvidus**, **adj.**, *eager, greedy.*

**āvis** (avis), **fem.**, *a bird.*

**āvoco** (1), *to call away.*

**Barba** (1), *a beard.*

**barbāri** (2), *the barbarians, foreigners.*

**beātus**, **adj.**, *happy, prosperous.*

**Belgae**, *the Belgae (a people of Gaul).*

**bello** (1), *to carry on war.*

**bellua** (1), *an animal, beast.*

**bellum**, *war.*

**bēnē**, **adv.**, *well; bene agere, to get on well.*

**beneficium**, *a benefit, a kindness.*

**benevolentia**, *kindness, goodwill.*

**bestia** (1), *a wild beast.*

**bibliothēca** (1), *a library.*

**bībo**, **bībi** (3), *to drink.*

bīnus, adj., *two each*.  
 bis, adv., *twice*.  
 blande, adv., *gently*.  
 blandimentum, *caress*.  
 bōnus, adj., *good*.  
 braccium, *arm (of the body)*.  
 brēvis, adj., *short*.  
 brevitās (brevitātis), *brevity*.  
 Britanni (2), *the Britons*.  
 Britannia, *Britain*.  
 bubulcus (2), *a ploughman, farm-labourer*.

Cādo, cecīdi, cāsum (3), *to fall*.  
 caecus, adj., *blind*.  
 caedes (caedis), *murder*.  
 caedo, cecīdi, caesus (3), *to kill*.  
 caelātus, *carved, chased*.  
 caelestis, caeleste, adj., *heavenly, divine*.  
 caelum, *the sky*.  
 caerūlus, or caerulēus, *dark-coloured (blue or green)*.  
 Caesar (Caesāris), *Cæsar*.  
 calamitas (-tatis), *calamity*.  
 calix (calicis), *masc., a cup*.  
 calumnia (1), *a false charge*.  
 camēlus (2), *a camel*.  
 Campānia, *a district in Italy*.  
 campus (2), *a plain*.  
 candeo (2), *to shine, glow*.  
 canesco (3), *to grow gray, get gray-headed*.  
 canīnus, adj., *like a dog*.  
 cānis (canis), *a dog*.  
 canistrum, *a basket*.  
 cāno, cēcīni, cantum (3), *to sing, sound*.  
 cantātor (cantatōris), *player, minstrel; cantator fidibus, a player on the harp*.  
 canto (1), *to sing*.  
 cantus (4), *song*.  
 capiendi, cibi capiendi causa, *for the sake of taking food (capiendi is gerundive of capio)*.  
 capillus (2), *hair of the head*.  
 cāpio, cēpi, captus, capere, *to take,*

*take possession of, to contain, to hold, grasp; consilium capere, to form a plan; terram capere, to make (reach) the land*.  
 capitālis, -e, adj., *res capitalis, a capital charge*.  
 Capitōlium, *the Capitol (a hill at Rome on which stood the temple of Juppiter and the Citadel)*.  
 captiva (1), *a female prisoner*.  
 captīvus (2), *a prisoner, captive*.  
 Cāpua, *Capua (a city in Campania, in Italy)*.  
 cāput (capitis), *a head; accuso hominem capitis, I bring a capital charge against a man; absolvo capitis, I acquit a man on a capital charge; condemno capitis, I condemn a man to death*. See p. 161. Sometimes caput is used for the person himself, as in XIII.  
 carcer (carcēris), *masc., prison*.  
 careo, carui, *to want, to go without something, to be without; governs an abl.*  
 carmen (carminis), *song, poem*.  
 Carnēades, *Carneades (a Greek philosopher)*.  
 caro (carnis), *fem., flesh*.  
 carpo, carpsi, carptus (3), *to pick, pick out, pluck, crop, feed on, graze on; carpere agmen, to attack a column (of an army)*.  
 Carthaginiensis, *a Carthaginian*.  
 Carināgo (Carthaginis), *Carthage*.  
 carus, adj., *dear*.  
 casus (2), *chance*.  
 Cassianus, bellum Cassianum, *the war in which Cassius was general*.  
 castellum, *fortress, fort*.  
 castigo (1), *to chastise, punish*.  
 castra (neut. plur.), *a camp*.  
 casus (4), *chance, accident, fate, disaster*.  
 Cātīlina (1), *Catiline (a conspirator who was checked by Cicero)*.  
 Cāto (Catōnis), *Cato*.

cauda (1), *tail (of an animal)*.  
 caupo (caupōnis), *an innkeeper*.  
 causa (1), *a cause, reason*; causā, abl., *for the sake of, because of*.  
 cāveo, cāvi, cautus, *to beware, to be on one's guard*.  
 cāvus, adj., *hollow*.  
 cecīdi, from cado; cecīdi, from caedo.  
 cecinit, from cano.  
 cedo, cessi, cessum (3), *to withdraw*.  
 celebro (1), *to celebrate*.  
 cēler, celēris, celere, adj., *quick, rapid*.  
 cēlērīter, adv., *quickly*.  
 celerrime, adv. (superl. of celer), *very quickly*; quam celerrime, *as quickly as possible*.  
 celsus, adj., *high*.  
 cēna (1), *dinner*.  
 cenātus, partic. (with deponent sense), *having dined or supped, after their supper*.  
 cēno (1), *to dine*.  
 censeo, *to be of opinion, to express an opinion*.  
 centum, *hundred*.  
 cepi, from capio.  
 cerno, crēvi, cernum (3), *to see, discern, prove*.  
 certāmen (certaminis), *a contest*.  
 certe, adv., *at any rate*.  
 certus, -a -um, *certain, sure, trustworthy*; Caesarem certiozem facio, *I inform Caesar*.  
 cerva (1), *a hind*.  
 cervix (cervicis), *neck* (often in plural only).  
 cessatus, from cesso. In XIII. si quid cessatum est, *if there has been any idling*.  
 cesso (1), *to cease, rest, to be idle, to delay*.  
 cētēri, *the rest, the other*.  
 charta (1), *a leaf of paper*.  
 chorda (1), *a string*.  
 cībus (2), *food*; cibi, *food of different kinds, the dishes on the table*.

Cīcēro (Cicerōnis), *Cicero (a great Roman writer and statesman)*.  
 circa, adv., *about*.  
 circīter, adv., *about*.  
 circueo, -ivi and -ii, -itum, -ire (or circumeo), *to go around*.  
 circum, prep. with acc., *around*.  
 circumfundo, -fudi, -fusus (3), *to pour around*; circumfundi obviis, *to surround those they met*.  
 circumpōno, -pōsui, -positus (3), *to put around*.  
 circumscēo (1), but -secui, *to cut round, to cut a round hole*.  
 circumspicio, -spexi, -spicere, *to look around at*.  
 circumsto, circumstēti (1), inf. circumstare, *to stand around, surround*.  
 circus (2), *circus*.  
 cithāra, *harp, lyre*.  
 cito, adv., *quickly*.  
 citus, adj., *quick*.  
 civilitas (civilitatis), *civility*.  
 cīvis (civis), *a citizen, a fellow-citizen*.  
 cīvitas (civitatis), *a state*.  
 clādes (cladis), *a defeat*.  
 clam, adv., *secretly*.  
 clāmo (1), *to call out, shout*.  
 clāmor (clamōris), *shout, shouting*.  
 clarus, adj., *bright, celebrated, distinguished, splendid*.  
 classis (classis), *a fleet*.  
 claudio, clausi, clausus (3), *to shut*.  
 claudus, adj., *lame*.  
 clāva (1), *a club*.  
 clementer, adv., *gently, in a kindly way*.  
 clementia, *kindness*.  
 coactor (coactōris), *collector of money, auctioneer's clerk*.  
 coactus, see cogo.  
 coepi, *I have made a beginning, I began*.  
 cogitatio (-ōnis), *thought, reflection*.

- cogito (1), *to think, plot.*  
**cognitus**, from cognosco.  
 cognōmen (cognominis), *an additional name.*  
**cognosco**, cognōvi, cognitus (3), *to learn, hear*  
**cognōvi**, from cognosco.  
**cōgo**, cōgi coactus (3), *to drive, compel, force; cogit agmen, he brings up the rear, comes last.*  
**cohors** (cohortis), *a company of soldiers, a cohort.*  
 collectus, partic. of colligo.  
**colligo**, collēgi, collectus (3), *to collect; se colligunt, they collect themselves, rally, or, they collect their thoughts; hoc esse collectum mali, that this indisposition was contracted, that you caught this illness.*  
**collis** (collis), masc., *hill.*  
**collōco** (1), *to post, place, station.*  
**collōquium**, *a conference.*  
 collōquor, collocutus (3), dep., *to talk with, converse with.*  
**collum**, *the neck.*  
**cōlor** (colōris), *colour.*  
 cōmae, *the hair.*  
 comēdo, -ēdi, -ēsum (3), *to eat.*  
**cōmes** (comitis), *companion.*  
 comesse, see comedo.  
**cōmitātus**, *accompanied by.*  
**comitem**, from comes.  
 commemorō (1), *to mention, recount.*  
 commendatio (-onis), *recommendation.*  
 commilitō (commilitōnis), *fellow-soldier.*  
 commīsēror (1), dep., *to ask for pity.*  
 commiserunt, from committo.  
**committo**, commisi, commissus (3), *to join together, combine; committere praelium, to join battle; to commit, entrust, trust, commit (an offence).*  
 commodum, *advantage.*
- commōrior, commortuus (3), dep., *to die together.*  
 commōtus, *led, moved, deeply affected, alarmed.*  
 commōveo, commōvi, commōtus, *to move, influence, affect; suspicio commovetur in aliquem, suspicion is directed against some one.*  
 communis, -e, adj., *common.*  
 compareo (2), *to appear.*  
 complexus (4), *embrace.*  
 complūres (neut. complura, gen. complurium), *very many.*  
 compōno, compōsui, compositus (3), *to make up, compose.*  
 compositus, partic. of compono, *made up, false.*  
 comprehendo (3), *to seize.*  
**concedō**, concessi (3), *to grant, to withdraw, depart.*  
 concido, concīdi (3), *to fall heavily, to fall dead.*  
**concilium**, *a meeting, assembly.*  
 concipio, concēpi, conceptus, concipere, *to form.*  
 conclāmo (1), *to cry out, raise a cry.*  
**conclāve** (conclavis), *a room.*  
**condemno** (1), *to condemn; often used with a genitive of the charge on which a man is condemned, or of the penalty to which he is condemned:—furti condemnatus est, he was condemned for theft; capitis condemnatus est, he was condemned to death.*  
 conditio (conditionis), *condition, terms.*  
**condo**, condīdi, conditus (3), *to put together, compose, found; store; bury.*  
**confectus**, part. of conficio, *exhausted.*  
**confēro**, contūli, collātus, conferre, *to carry together, to bring, to bear; se conferre, to betake oneself; sermonem cum aliquo*



- conferre, *to fall into conversation* ;  
ne conferte culpam, *do not throw  
the blame.*
- conficio**, confēci, confectus, con-  
ficere, *to finish, to get something  
done* ; in XIV. confici, *to be  
drawn up* ; in XVI. confectus,  
*worn out, exhausted.*
- confidentia (1), *self-possession.*
- congēro, congressi, congestus (3), *to  
bring together.*
- congrēdiōr, congressus, inf. con-  
gredi, *to meet, to fight, engage.*
- congrēgo (1), *to herd or flock to-  
gether, gather together, to collect.*
- conicio, conieci, coniectus, con-  
icere, *to throw, cast.*
- coniectus, from conicio.
- coniungo**, coniunxi, coniunctus  
(3), *to join, unite.*
- coniunx (coniūgis), *wife.*
- conor**, conatus, dep., *to try, en-  
deavour.*
- conpendium, *an abridgment.*
- conquisitus, adj., *exquisite, choice.*
- conscendo**, conscendi, conscensum  
(3), *to go up, mount up, embark  
on a ship.*
- consciūs, adj., *conscious, conspiring,  
being an accomplice or confidant* ;  
conscia turba, *band of con-  
spirators.*
- consecutus**, from consequor.
- consentio, consensi, consensum (4),  
*to agree.*
- consēquor**, consecūtus (3), dep., *to  
follow close, overtake.*
- consēro, consernui, consertus (3), *to  
engage, join battle.*
- conservus (2), *a fellow-slave.*
- consilium**, *strategy, plan, measure,  
idea, proposal, prompting, insti-  
gation.*
- consisto, constiti, constitum (3), *to  
stand, to take one's stand.*
- consolor, consolātus, dep., *to con-  
sole.*
- conspēctus** (4), *sight, presence.*
- conspicatus, partic. of conspicor,  
*having seen, when it sees.*
- constantia (1), *constancy, persist-  
ence.*
- constat**, constitit, *it is well known,  
it is acknowledged.*
- consterno (1), *to strike with terror.*
- constitit, from constat, as in  
XXXI. ; or consisto, as in  
XXXVII. and XLVI.
- constituo**, constitui, constitutus  
(3), *to determine, arrange, settle,  
appoint.*
- construo, construxi, constructus  
(3), *to pile up, construct.*
- consueras, from consuesco, con-  
tracted for consueveras.
- consuesco, consuevi, consuetus (3),  
*to be accustomed.*
- consul**, consulis, *a consul* (a Roman  
official).
- consulātus** (4), *the consulship.*
- consūlo, consului, consultum (3),  
*to consult.*
- consurgo, consurrexi, consurrectus  
(3), *to rise up.*
- contemno**, contempsi, contemptus  
(3), *to despise.*
- contempserat, from contemno.
- contemptus (4), *contempt* ; per  
contemptum, *in contempt.*
- contendo**, contendi (3), *to hasten ;  
to entreat.*
- contigit, *it happened, it befell.*
- contingo, contigi (3), *to touch, to  
meet, to arrive.*
- continuus, adj., *continual.*
- contionor (1), dep., *to deliver a  
speech, to speak.*
- contra**, prep. with accus., *against.*
- controversia (1), *discussion, quarrel.*
- contueor, contuitus, dep., *to look  
upon.*
- contulit, from confero.
- contumelia, *insult.*
- convalesco**, convalui (3), *to grow  
strong, recover.*
- convēnio**, convēni, conventum, *to*

- come together, assemble, meet, to agree.*  
 conversus, from *convertō*.  
 convertō, *converti, conversus* (3), *to turn.*  
 convictus, from *convincō*.  
 convincō, *convici, convictus* (3), *to conquer thoroughly, to convince, to convict.*  
*convīva* (1), *a guest.*  
*convivium, dinner, dinner-party, feast, banquet.*  
*convōcō* (1), *to call together.*  
*cōpia* (1), *supply, stock, means, opportunity, resources; copiae, forces (of an army).*  
*copiōsus, adj., well-supplied, laden.*  
*coram, prep. with abl., or adv., in the presence of, openly.*  
*Cordubenses, the people of Cordūba (now Cordova).*  
*Corinthius, adj., Corinthian.*  
*Corinthus* (2), *fem., Corinth (a city in Greece).*  
*corōna* (1), *a crown, wreath, chaplet.*  
*corōno* (1), *to crown.*  
*corpus* (*corpōris*), *body.*  
*corrumpo, corrūpi, corruptus* (3), *to corrupt.*  
*corrūo, corruī* (3), *to tumble, fall to the ground.*  
*corruptus, from corrumpo.*  
*corvus* (2), *a crow.*  
*cotidiānus, adj., daily.*  
*cotīdie, adv., every day, daily.*  
*cras, adv., to-morrow.*  
*crassus, adj., thick.*  
*creber, crebra, crebrum, adj., frequent, continual.*  
*credītus, partic. of credo, entrusted.*  
*crēdo, credīdi, credītum* (3), *to believe, trust; credo tibi, I believe you.*  
*credulitas (-tatis), credulity.*  
*creo* (1), *to create, appoint.*  
*crepida* (1), *a sole, sandal.*  
*crepīto* (1), *to crackle, rattle.*
- creresco, crevi, cretum* (3), *to grow, increase, develop.*  
*crimen (crimīnis), charge, offence.*  
*crīnis (crinis), masc., a hair; crines, the hair.*  
*crocodilus* (2), *a crocodile.*  
*cruciātus* (4), *torture.*  
*crudēlis, -e, adj., cruel.*  
*crudēlitas (-tatis), cruelty.*  
*crudus, adj., raw.*  
*cruentus, adj., blood-stained.*  
*cruor (cruōris), blood, thick blood.*  
*crus (crūris), leg.*  
*cubiculum, a room.*  
*cubītum, the elbow; a cubit.*  
*cuius, gen. of qui or quis; cuius audaciae, what impudence!*  
*culmen (culmīnis), roof.*  
*culpa* (1), *a fault, charge.*  
*culpo* (1), *to blame, find fault with.*  
*cum, conjunction, when, as (often with subjunctive mood); cum primum, as soon as ever; cum, preposition with abl., with, along with, in company with.*  
*cunctus, adj., all.*  
*cunēus* (2), *wedge.*  
*cupīditas (-tatis), cupidity, avarice.*  
*cupīdus, adj., desirous, covetous.*  
*cupio, cupii, cupēre, to desire, wish.*  
*cur, why?*  
*cura* (1), *care; curae est mihi, it is a care or anxiety to me.*  
*curo* (1), *to attend to, to have something done; curat pontem faciendum, he has a bridge made.*  
*curro, cucurri, cursum* (3), *to run.*  
*cursim, adv., hastily.*  
*cursus* (4), *running, gallop, course; cursum tenere, to hold on your course; cursum facere, to take a course.*  
*custodio, to guard, to place in custody.*  
*custos, custōdis, keeper, guardian.*  
*cutis (cutis), skin.*  
*cyāthus* (2), *cup.*  
*Cyclōpes (acc. Cyclopas), the Cyclopes.*

cymba (1), *a boat.*

Damnatus, -a, -um (past part. of damnare), *having been condemned, found guilty.*

damnum (2), *loss.*

dare, inf. of do.

de, prep. with abl., *of, concerning, about, from; qua de causa, for what reason, for which reason.*

dēbeo, *I owe, I ought.*

debilis, -e, adj., *weak, disabled.*

debitum, *debt, obligation, duty.*

dēcem, *ten.*

deceo (2), *to befit, become.*

deceptus, from decipio.

decerno, decrēvi, decrētus (3), *to decree.*

decido, decidi (3), *to fall down.*

dēcīmus, adj., *the tenth.*

dēcīpio, decēpi, deceptus, decipere; *to deceive.*

decoctus, from decoquo, *boiled down.*

decor (decōris), *beauty.*

dēdi, perfect of do.

dēdo, dedīdi, dedītus (3), *to give up, surrender; deditus, given up to, devoted to.*

dēdūco, deduxi, deductus (3), *to lead down, withdraw, to bring; gladium deducere, to draw a sword.*

deerit, from desum.

defecisset, see deficio.

defendo, defendi, defensum (3), *to defend.*

defēro, detūli, delātus, deferre, *to carry down.*

dēfīcio, defēcī, defectum, deficere (3), *to be wanting, fail, run short.*

defixus, part. of defigo, *fixed on; turned down.*

defluo, defluxi (3), *to fall off.*

defuerit, from desum.

degusto (1), *to taste, have a taste of.*  
deicio, deiēcī, deiectus, deicere, *to throw down, cast.*

dēin, adv., *then, afterwards.*

dēinceps, adv., *afterwards, from that time.*

dēinde, adv., *then.*

delectatio (-onis), *delight, amusement.*

dēlecto (1), *to amuse, delight.*

delectum, from deligo.

delectus (4), *a levy (of soldiers); or partic. of deligo.*

deliberandum, *that the question must be considered.*

delibēro (1), *to deliberate, consider.*

dēlīgo, delēgi, delectus (3), *to choose, select.*

delinquo, deliqui, delictus (3), *to offend, do wrong, fall short, fail.*

deliqui, from delinquo.

deliro (1), *to be stark-mad.*

delitescō, delitui (3), *to lie hid.*

delituit, from delitescō.

delphin (delphīnis), *a dolphin.*

delphīnus (2), *a dolphin.*

dementia (1), *madness.*

demissus, from demitto, *bent down, in XIX.*

demitto, demisi, demissus (3), *to let down, bend down.*

demonstro (1), *to point out.*

demulceo, demulsi, demulsus, *to stroke.*

demum, adv., *at last; post Alexandri demum victorias, not till after, etc.*

dēnīque, adv., *at last.*

dēns (dentis), masc., *a tooth.*

densus, adj., *thick.*

denuo, adv., *anew, again.*

depello, depūli, depulsus (3), *to drive away, to deter.*

dēpōno, depōsui, depositus (3), *to lay aside, give up.*

depositus, from depono.

deprecor (1), dep., *to beg off, intercede, beg to be let off.*

deprehendo,prehendi, deprehensus (3), *to catch, detect.*

deprehensus, from deprehendo.

depŭli, from depello.  
 derideo, derisi (2), *to laugh (derisively) at.*  
 descendo, descendi, descensum (3), *to go down, descend.*  
 descisco, descivi (3), *to revolt.*  
 desĕro, deserui, desertus (3), *to desert.*  
 desertum, *a desert, a solitary place.*  
 desertus, from desero.  
 desiderium, *grief, regret; desiderium eius, grief for him.*  
 desidĕro (1), *to require, desire, regret.*  
 desilio, desilui, desultum (4), *to leap down.*  
 desipio, desipĕre, *to be foolish, idiotic.*  
 despicio, despexi, despectus, despicĕre, *to look down upon, despise.*  
 destituo, destitui, destitutus (3), *to forsake, abandon.*  
 dstrictus (partic. of destringo), *drawn.*  
 desum (de and sum), *to be wanting, to fail.*  
 detergeo, deteresi, deteresus (2), *to wipe away.*  
 deterreo, *to deter, frighten away.*  
 detractus, from detraho.  
 detrahō, detraxi, detractus (3), *to draw off.*  
 detrŭdo, detrusi, detrusus (3), *to thrust down.*  
 detulerant, from defero.  
 deuro, deŭssi, deustus (3), *to burn up.*  
**Deus** (2), nom. plur. di, *God.*  
 devĕho, devexi, devectus (3), *to carry down.*  
 deversor (deversōris), *a lodger, guest.*  
 deversorium, *an inn.*  
 devertō, deverti, deversus (3), *to turn aside from one's journey, to put up, lodge.*  
 devexit, from deveho.

devolvo, devolvi, devolutus (3), *to roll down, hurl.*  
 devoro (1), *to devour.*  
 dextra (1), *the right hand.*  
 di, see Deus.  
**Diāna**, *Diana* (a goddess).  
 dico, imperative of dico.  
 dico, dixi, dictus (3), *to say, tell, to appoint; ne dicam, not to say, I will not say.*  
**dictātor** (dictatōris), *a dictator.*  
 A dictator was appointed at Rome to save the state in times of great difficulty. His power was absolute, but it lasted only six months.  
 dictito (1), *to say often (or to many people).*  
 dictum, *a saying, remark.*  
 dictus, from dico.  
 didici, from disco.  
 didūco, diduxi, diductus (3), *to open.*  
**dies** (5), in the singular masc. or fem., in plural masc. only, *a day; ad diem, on the proper day.*  
**difficilis**, -e, adj., comp. difficilior, sup. difficillimus, *difficult; in XIII. difficillimus means very difficult to get at or persuade, churlish.*  
 digitus (2), *finger, toe.*  
 dignitas (dignitatis), *dignity.*  
**dignus**, adj. *worthy; dignus laude, abl., worthy of praise; dignus est qui laudetur, he is worthy to be praised, he deserves to be praised.*  
 digrĕdior, digressus, digrĕdi, dep., *to part, to go away.*  
 digressus, from digredior.  
 dilābor, dilapsus (3), dep., *to fall to pieces.*  
**diligens** (diligentis), adj., *diligent, industrious.*  
**diligenter**, adv., *diligently, industriously.*

**diligentia** (1), *diligence, industry*.  
**diligo, dilexi, dilectus** (3), *to love*.  
**dimicatio** (-ōnis), fem., *struggle*.  
**dimissus**, from **dimitto**.

**dimitto, dimisi, dimissus** (3), *to dismiss, leave*.

**dirimo, dirēmi, diremptus** (3), *to put a stop to*.

**dis**, dat. or abl. plur. of **deus**.

**discēdo, discessi, discessum** (3), *to go away, to part asunder; a me discessit, he left me*.

**discipŭlus** (2), *a pupil*.

**disco, didici** (3), *to learn*.

**discubuerunt**, from **discumbo**.

**discumbo, discubui, discubitus** (3), *to go to bed*.

**dissero, disserui, dissertus** (3), *to speak, discourse*.

**diu**, adv., *for long, for a long time; diutius, for some time; diu est quod teneris, for how long have you been afflicted? non diutius, no*

**diutinus**, adj., *long*. [longer.

**diversus**, adj., *different*.

**dives, divitis**, adj., *rich*.

**divinitus**, adv., *divinely, by a God*.

**divinus**, adj., *divine, godlike*.

**divitiae**, *riches, wealth*.

**divitissimus**, superl. of **dives**.

**divus** (2), *a god; divom* is gen. plur.

**do, dēdi, dātus** (1), *to give, grant, yield*. [The person to whom one gives something must always be put in the dative: *I give you money, do tibi pecuniam*.] **Dare verba** means *to cheat, deceive* (to give words instead of things); **poenas dare**, *to pay the penalty, to suffer punishment*.

**dōceo, docui, doctus**, *to teach*.

**docilitas** (**docilitātis**), *docility, teachableness*.

**doctus**, -a, -um, *learned*.

**doleo** (2), *to grieve*.

**dōlor** (**dolōris**), *pain, sorrow, grief; dolore captae urbis, through grief at the capture of the city*.

**dolōsus**, adj., *cunning, deceitful*.

**dōlus** (2), *craft, stratagem*.

**dōmi**, *at home*.

**domīna** (1), *a mistress*.

**domīnor** (1), dep., *to be master*.

**dōmīnus** (2), *master, owner; Domine, Sir!*

**domītus**, from **domo**, *to tame*.

**domo, from home; or domo, domui,**

**domītus, domare, to tame**.

**domum, home; i.e. to go home, domum ire**.

**dōmus**, fem. (2 and 4), *house, home*.

**donātus**, partic. of **dono**, *given; donatus equus, a gift-horse*.

**donec**, conj., *till, until*.

**dono** (1), *to give, present*.

**dōnum, gift, present; dono dare, to give as a gift**.

**dormio, to go to sleep, to sleep**.

**dorsum, a back**.

**draco** (**dracōnis**), *a snake*.

**dubīto** (1), *to doubt*.

**dubium, doubt; procul dubio, far from doubt, undoubtedly, certainly**.

**dubius**, adj., *doubtful, uncertain*.

**ducenti**, -ae, -a, *two hundred*.

**duces; either dūces from dux, or dūces, fut. of duco**.

**dūco, duxi, ductus** (3), *to lead, to take, to consider; ducit agmen, he leads the line or column; i.e. he goes first*.

**dulce**, adv., *sweetly*.

**dulcis, dulce**, adj., *sweet*.

**dum; with Indicative while, with subjunctive until**.

**duo, duae, duo, two**.

**duodecim, twelve**.

**duodequadraginta, thirty-eight**.

**duodeviginti, eighteen**.

**duplex** (**duplīcis**), adj., *double*.

**duplicem, from duplex**.

**dure, adv., harshly; durius, rather harshly**.

**durus, adj., hard, harsh**.

**dux** (**dūcis**), *leader*.

E, also ex, prep. with abl., *from, out of, from among.*

ea, from is.

eadem, from idem.

ecquid, *whether? whether . . . anything?*

edissĕro, edisserui, edissertum (3), *to explain.*

edito, from edo.

ēdo, ēdi, esum (3), *to eat*; or ēdo, edīdi, edītus (3), *to give out, to lift, to raise, to utter.*

edūco, eduxi, eductus (3), *to lead out, draw out, deliver.*

effĕro, extūli, elātus, efferre, *to carry out or away, to lift up, raise.*

efflo (1), *to breathe out.*

effundo, effūdi, effusus (3), *to pour out, shed, empty, unload.*

egĕo (2), *to want, with abl.*

egeris, from ago.

egi, from ago.

ēgo, I.

ēgrĕdior, egressus, egrĕdi (3), dep., *to go out, depart, leave, disembark.*

egregius, adj., *excellent, distinguished.*

egressus, from egredior.

ei, dative of is.

eieĕto (1), *to spit out.*

eiusmodi (eius modi), *of that kind, such.*

elābor, elapsus (3), *to glide out, evade.*

elapsus, from elabor.

elĕgo, elĕgi, electus (3), *to pick out, choose.*

elephantus (2), *an elephant.*

elephas (elephantis), *an elephant.*

elĕvo (1), *to lift up.*

elīdo, elisi, elisus (3), *to crush.*

elōquor, elocūtus (3), dep., *to speak out.*

emitto, emīsi, emissus (3), *to let drop.*

ĕmo, ĕmi, emptus (3), *to buy.*

emptor (emptōris), *a buyer, customer.*

emptus, from emo.

en, see I

ĕnim, adv., *for.*

ensis (ensis), masc., *sword.*

eo, ivi and ii, itum, ire, *to go*, see p. 344; infitias ire, *to deny*; eo, adv. of is, *thither, there, on this account*; eo quod, *on this account that, i.e. because.*

Epirus (2), *Epirus, a country in Northern Greece.*

ĕpistŭla (1), *a letter.*

epŭlae, *a banquet*; inter epulas, *in the course of the banquet.*

epŭlor (1), dep., *to feast. [cavalry.*

ĕques (equitis), *a horseman*; equites, equinus, adj., *belonging to a horse.*

ĕquītātus (4), *cavalry.*

ĕquus (2), *a horse.*

ereptus, from eripio.

ergo, *therefore.*

erĭpio, erĭpui, ereptus, eripĕre, *to drag out, rescue, deliver.*

erōdo (3), *to gnaw away, eat away.*

erro (1), *to wander.*

error (errōris), *mistake, error.*

erumpo, erŭpi, eruptus (3), *to burst forth.*

eruo, erui, erŭtus (3), *to drag out.*

ĕruptio (eruptionis), *a breaking out, sally (from a besieged town).*

erŭtus, from eruo, *was drawn out.*

Erymanthus, *Erymanthus (a mountain in Arcadia).*

esuriens, pres. part. of esurio, *being famished, hungry.*

ĕsurio (4), *to be hungry.*

et, conj., *and*; et . . . et, both . . . and; et ego, *I too, I also.*

ĕtiam, *also, even*; etiam atque etiam, *again and again.*

etiamsi, *even if.*

etsi, conj., *although.*

euntem, acc. of iens, pres. part. of eo, prep. with abl., *from out of, in consequence of.*

exanimō (1), *to make half dead; to expire, die.*

**excēdo**, excessi, excessum (3), *to go out, go beyond, exceed*; *excedo ex urbe, I leave the city*; in XX. cum excessero, *when I (shall) have gone* (i.e. *when I am dead*).  
**excello** (3), *to excel, to be distinguished*.  
**excessero**, from *excedo*.  
**excīdo**, excīdi (3), *to fall out*; **excīlo**, excīli, excisus (3), *to cut out or off*.  
**excito** (1), *to arouse, excite, promote*.  
**excusatio** (-ōnis), *excuse*.  
**exemplum**, *example*; *hoc exemplo, in this form, to this effect, in these words*.  
**exeo**, exivi and exii, exitum, *to go out, go forth, evade*.  
**exerceo** (2), *to exercise*; *corpus exercere, to exercise the body, to take bodily or physical exercise*.  
**exercitus** (4), *army*.  
**exiguus**, -a, -um, *petty, insignificant*.  
**exilium**, *exile*.  
**eximius**, adj., *distinguished*.  
**exinde**, adv., *from then, after that*.  
**existimo** (1), *to think, fancy*.  
**exitus** (4), *going out, exit, end*.  
**exior**, exortus, dep., *to rise*.  
**exōro** (1), *to prevail upon or persuade some one by entreaty*.  
**expello**, expūli, expulsus (3), *to expel, drive out, banish*.  
**expērior**, expertus (4), dep., *to try, make trial of, prove*.  
**expono**, exposui, expositus (3), *to expose, put out*.  
**expressi**, from *exprimo*.  
**exprīmo**, expressi, expressus (3), *to squeeze out, wring out, extort permission*.  
**exprōbro** (1), *to find fault with, censure*.  
**expugno** (1), *to take by storm*.  
**expulsus**, from *expello*.  
**exsanguis**, -e, adj., *bloodless, exhausted*.

**exsēco**, exsecui, exsecare, *to cut out, to cut a hole in*.  
**exseetio** (-ōnis), *a cutting out, the cutting of a hole*.  
**exsecuit**, from *exsēco*.  
**expecto** (1), *to expect, await*.  
**expiro** (1), *to expire, breathe out one's life*.  
**exto**, extiti, extare, *to stand forth, to come forward*.  
**extrūo**, extruxi, extructus (3), *to loud*.  
**extemplo**, adv., *at once*.  
**externus**, adj., *outside, foreign*.  
**exterritus**, partic. of *exterreo*, *being very frightened*.  
**extērus**, adj., *outside, foreign*.  
**extinguo**, extinxi, extinctus (3), *to extinguish*; in XX. *extinguitur, he expires*.  
**extorqueo**, extorsi, extortus, *to wrench, wrest, extort*.  
**extra**, prep. with acc., *out of, beyond*.  
**extrāho**, extraxi, extractus (3), *to draw out, pull out*.  
**extrēmus**, adj., *extreme, last*; *address extremum, to address for the last time*.  
**exul** (exūlis), *an exile*.  
**exūro**, exussi, exustus (3), *to burn up*.  
**exussit**, from *exuro*.  
**Faber** (fabri), *a smith, a maker*.  
**fabūla** (1), *a fable, story*.  
**facētus**, adj., *witty*.  
**facies** (5), *face, appearance*.  
**fācile**, neut. of *facilis*, *easy*; also adv., *easily*.  
**fācilis**, adj., comp. *facilior*, sup. *facillimus*, *easy, ready*.  
**facinus** (facinōris), *event, crime*.  
**fācio**, feci, factus, *fācere, to make, do*; *potestatem facere, to give permission, a chance*; with a genitive of price, *facio* means, *I value*; *parvi facio, I value*

- at a low price, I think little of ;  
in XIII. quod pro te facit, *that which makes for you*, i.e. *that which serves your purpose*.
- factitō (1), *to do something repeatedly ; studiose aliquid factitare, to be very fond of doing something*.
- factum, *an act, deed*.
- fallo, fefelli, falsus (3), *to deceive ; me mea opinio fallit, my belief deceives me*, i.e. *I am wrong in my belief (or idea) ; me fallit, it escapes me*, i.e. *I do not notice*.
- falso, adv., *falsely*.
- falsus, part. of fallo ; falsus sum, *I am mistaken*.
- falsus, adj., *false*.
- fāma (1), *fame, report ; fama est, there is a rumour*.
- fāmes (famis), *hunger, famine*.
- familiaris (-is), *friend, acquaintance*.
- familiāris, *a friend*.
- familiaritas (-tatis), *familiarity*.
- fānum, *a shrine*.
- fari, infin. of for.
- fascis (fascis), *a bundle*.
- fāteor, fassus, dep., *to confess*.
- fatigatus, partic. of fatigo, *tired, fatigued*.
- fatur, from for.
- fauces (faucium), *throat*.
- fāveo, fāvi, fautum, *to favour, with dat.*
- febris (febris), *fever*.
- feci, from facio.
- fefelli, perf. of fallo.
- felix (felicitas), *happy, fortunate*.
- fēmīna (1), *a woman*.
- fenestra (1), *a window*.
- fēra (1), *a wild animal*.
- fere, adv., *almost, generally*.
- feriae, *holidays*.
- ferinus, adj., *belonging to a wild beast ; vita ferina, a wild beast's life*.
- ferme, adv., *almost, about*.
- fero, tūli, lātus, ferre, *to bring, carry, take, to bear, endure, to relate, say ; see p. 338*.
- ferōcia (1), *ferocity*.
- ferox (ferōcis), adj., *proud, haughty, fierce*.
- ferre, infin. of fero.
- fērus, adj., *wild, fierce*.
- ferveo (2), *to glow*.
- fessus, adj., *tired*.
- festinatio (-ōnis), *hurry*.
- festīno (1), *to hasten, make haste*.
- festinus, adj., *hastening*.
- fiat, subjunctive of fio, *let it be so ! by all means !*
- fidēlis, *faithful*.
- fides (5), *faith, pledged word, honesty, belief ; or fides (3), plur. strings, harp, cithara*.
- fidibus, from fides (3).
- fiducia (1), *confidence*.
- fidus, adj., *faithful*.
- fiebat, from fio.
- fieri, infin. of fio.
- fiero, fut. perf. of fio.
- fiet, fut. of fio, *it shall be done, I will do so*.
- figo, fixi, fixus (3), *to pierce, stab*.
- fīlia (1), *daughter*.
- filius (2), voc. fili, *son*.
- finio (4), *to finish*.
- fīnis (finis), masc., *end ; fines, plur. the boundaries (of a country), the country (itself), land, territory*.
- fio, factus, *to be made, become, to happen ; fieri potest, it can happen, it is possible ; ita fit, thus it comes about or happens ; qui fit ? how does it come about ? quid te fiat ? what is to be done with you ?*
- firmus, adj., *firm*.
- fistūla (1), *a reed-pipe*.
- fit, from fio.
- fixus, from figo.
- flamma (1), *flame*.
- flecto, flexi, flexus (3), *to bend ; flectendum erat genu, you ought*



- to bend the knee, you ought to make a bow.
- floreo, florui, to flourish.
- flos** (flōris), flower.
- fluctuo (1), to wave.
- fluctus** (4), a wave.
- fluō (1), to swim about.
- flumen** (flumīnis), river.
- focūlus (2), a brazier.
- foedus** (foedēris), treaty; adj., **foedus**, -a, -um, shocking, shameful.
- folium, a leaf.
- for, fātus (1), dep., to speak.
- foras**, adv., out of doors; foras eo, I go out of doors; foris sum, I am out of doors.
- fore**, the fut. inf. of sum; dicit fore ut convalescam (he says it will come about or happen that I recover), he says that I shall recover.
- fores** (forum), plur. fem., doors.
- forma (1), beauty, shape, make.
- formīdo (formidinis), fear.
- formōsus, adj., beautiful, handsome.
- forsitan, perhaps.
- fortasse**, perhaps.
- forte, adv., by chance.
- fortis**, forte, adj., brave, strong.
- fortiter**, adv. of fortis, bravely.
- fortūna (1), fortune.
- fortunātus, adj., fortunate, happy.
- forum**, a market-place.
- fossa** (1), a ditch.
- fovea (1), pit, pitfall, snare.
- fractus, partic. of frango.
- frāgor (fragōris), breakage, smashing.
- frango, frēgi, fractus (3), to break.
- frāter** (fratris), brother.
- fregisse, from frango.
- frēmītus (4), roar.
- frēnum, curb, bit.
- frētus, adj., relying on.
- frigus** (frigōris), cold.
- frons (frontis), forehead.
- fructus (4), fruit, produce.
- fruges (frugum), plur., fruit, produce.
- frumentor** (1), dep., to fetch corn, to forage.
- frumentum**, corn.
- frustra**, adv., in vain.
- fuderunt**, from fundo.
- fūga** (1), flight, rout.
- fūgio**, fūgi, fugēre, to fly, flee, escape.
- fugitivus, adj., run-away.
- fūgo** (1), to put to flight.
- fui**, perf. of sum.
- fulgeo, fulsi, to flash.
- fumus (2), smoke.
- fundo**, fūdi, fusus (3), to pour, shed, rout, disperse.
- fundus (2), bottom.
- funis (funis), masc., a rope.
- funus (funeris), a dead body; funus or funēra, funeral, burial.
- furtim, adv., by stealth, secretly.
- furtum**, theft; furtum facere, to commit a theft.
- futūrus**, from sum, about to be, coming; futura, the future.
- Gaius** (2), Caius (a common Roman name).
- gālĕa (1), a helmet.
- Gallia**, Gaul (the country, now France).
- Gallicus**, adj., Gallic, French; Gallice, adv.; Gallice loqui, to speak French.
- Gallus** (2), a Gaul.
- gaudeo** (2), (the perf., gavīsus sum, is dep.), to rejoice; hoc gaudeo, I rejoice at this.
- gaudium, joy; gaudia, expressions of joy.
- gavīsus, from gaudeo.
- gemītus (4), groan.
- gēna (1), cheek.
- genere**, from genus.
- Genāva** (1), Geneva.
- gens** (gentis), race, nation.

genu (4), *the knee*.

genuisse, see gigno.

genuit, see gigno.

gēnus (genēris), *kind, nation, tribe, class, family*.

Germānus, *a German*.

gēro, gessi, gestus, *to do, to discharge duties, bear, carry*; bellum gerere, *to carry on war*.

gessi, from gero.

gestus, past part. of gero.

gigno, genui, genitus (3), *to bear*; gignor, *to be the son of*, with abl.

gladiator (-ōris), *gladiator*.

glādius (2), *a sword*.

glōria (1), *glory*.

grādus (4), *a step, rank, position*.

Graece, adv. of Graecus, Graece scire, *to know Greek*.

Graecus, adj., *Greek*; subst., *a Greek*.

grandis, grande, adj., *great, grand, sumptuous*; grandia ingrediens, *advancing with great strides*.

grando (grandinis), fem., *hail*.

grātia (1), *gratitude, favour*; gratiae, *thanks*; gratias agere, *to return thanks*.

gratiōsus, adj., *popular*.

gratulabundus, adj., *congratulating*.

grātūlor, gratulatus, dep., *to congratulate*, with dat.

grātus, adj., *welcome, popular, acceptable*.

gravāte, adv. *reluctantly*; in XLV. gravate ille primo, *he is reluctant at first (supplying agit, he treats with reluctance at first)*.

grāvis, grave, *heavy, severe, weighty, effectual*.

grāvissime, superl. of graviter.

grāviter, adv., *heavily, severely, badly*; graviter ferre, *to be annoyed, to be put out about a thing, to be distressed*.

gregātīm, adv. of grex, *by troops, herds*.

gressus (4), *a step*.

grex (grēgis), masc., *flock, troop, number*.

gubernātor (-oris), *steersman*.

Habēna (1), *rein*.

hābeo (2), *to have, to treat*; bene habet (it has itself well), *that's right, that will do*; orationem habere, *to deliver a speech*; in-super habere, *to make light of, to slight*; habeor, *to be held, considered*. So habes habebēris means, *you have much or little, then you are much or little thought of (i.e. men are valued according to their wealth)*.

habitācūlum, *a dwelling*.

habito (1), *to dwell, inhabit*.

habitus (4), *habit, custom, condition*.

Haedui, the Haedui, *a tribe in Gaul*.

haereo, haesi, haesum, *to stick to*.

Hammon, in XX. ad Hammonem, *to Jupiter Hammon (i.e. to his temple in Africa)*.

Hannibal (Hannibālis), *Hannibal, a great Carthaginian general*.

hasta (1), *a spear*.

haud, adv., *not*.

haudquaquam, adv., *by no means, not at all*.

haurio, hausi, haustus, *to draw in, inhale*.

haustus, from haurio; or noun (4), *a draught*.

hebes (hebētis), adj., *dim, dull*.

Helvētīi, the Helvetii, *a tribe of Gauls living near the Lake of Geneva*.

Hercūles (Herculis), *Hercules*.

heres (herēdis), *heir*.

hēri, adv., *yesterday*.

hēros (herois), *a hero*.

heu, *alas!*

heus, *holloa! ho!*

hians, pres. part. of hio, *open*,

*gaping*; ore hiante, *its mouth being wide open.*

hiātus (4), *chasm.*

**hibernus**, adj., *winter*; e.g. hibernae noctes, *winter nights*; hiberna (castra being understood), *winter quarters.*

**hic**, pron., *this*; hunc ego te aspicio, *is this you that I behold?* adv., *here, in this place, in this matter*; in XIII. *on this occasion.*

**hiemo** (1), *to pass the winter, to winter.*

**hiems** (hiēmis), *winter.*

*hinc*, adv., *from this place, hence.*

**hio** (1), *to gape, yawn open.*

**hirtus**, adj., *shaggy.*

**Hispania** (1), *Spain.*

**histōria** (1), *history, inquiry.*

**hōdie**, adv., *to-day.*

**hōmo** (homīnis), *a man, a person.*

**honestas** (honestatis), *honourable conduct*; vir summae honestatis, *a man of most honourable character.*

**honestus**, adj., *honourable, honest.*

**hōnor** (honōris), *honour, respect.*

*honorifice*, adv., *respectfully.*

**hōra** (1), *hour.*

*horreum*, *a barn, storehouse.*

**hortor** (1), dep., *to encourage, urge.*

**hortūlus** (2), *a small garden, grounds, house and grounds.*

**hortus** (2), *a garden.*

**hospes** (hospitis), *a host, friend* (who will entertain you, whom you visit).

**hospita** (1), *a stranger.*

**hospitium**; esse in hospitio, *to be in a friend's house.*

**hostia** (1), *a victim.*

**hostis** (hostis), *an enemy*; hostes, *the enemy* (i.e. a hostile army).

**huc**, adv., *hither, to this place*; huc illuc, *hither and thither, anywhere.*

**hucusque**, adv., *up to this time, to this day.*

**huiusmodi**, or huiuscemōdi, *of this kind.*

**humānus**, adj., *human.*

**humērus** (2), *a shoulder.*

**humi**, adv., *on the ground.*

**humus** (2), *fein., the ground.*

**I**, imperat. of eo.

**iaceo**, **iacui**, **iacēre**, *to lie down, to fall.*

**iacēre**, from **iacio**; **iacēre**, from **iaceo**.

**iācio**, **iēcī**, **iactus**, **iacēre**, *to throw.*

**iacto** (1), *to throw, throw out*; spread, say; multa iactata esse, *that many reports have been spread.*

**iam**, *already.*

**iamdiu**, adv., *now a long while, long*; iamdiu te audio, *I have been listening to you a long while.*

**iamdudum**, *already, for a long time, all this while.*

**ibi**, adv., *there.*

**ibidem**, adv., *in the same place or room.*

**ibo**, from eo.

**ichneumon**, *the Egyptian mongoose or ichneumon.*

**ictus** (4), *a blow, stroke*; or partic. of ico, ici, ictus, *to strike.*

**id**, from is.

**Ida** (1), *Ida, a mountain in Phrygia.*

**idecirco**, adv., *on that account.*

**idem**, eadem, **īdem**, *the same*; idem, often *he too, and he*; in XIII. *idemque, and also.*

**īdōnēus**, adj., *suitable, fit, adapted.*

**igītur**, adv., *therefore.*

**ignārus**, adj., *ignorant, unaware.*

**ignis** (ignis, abl. igni), masc., *fire.*

**ignōro** (1), *I am ignorant, I am not aware*; hanc rem ignoro, *I am ignorant of this affair.*

ignotus, adj., *unknown*.  
 ilico, adv., *on the spot*.  
 ille, pron., *that*. illic, *there*.  
 illicitus, adj., *forbidden, unlawful*.  
 illuc, adv., *thither*.  
 imbellis, adj., *unwarlike, peaceable*.  
 imber (imbris), *a shower, rain*.  
 immanitas (-tatis), *hugeness, terrible proportions*.  
 immensus, adj., *large, immense*.  
 immissus, *flying, darting*; in XV. *dashing itself*.  
 immitis, adj., *ungentle, fierce*.  
 immitto, immisi, immissus (3), *to let in, to plunge in*.  
 immo, adv., immo cotidie, *why, every day to be sure*; in XLI. *by no means, nay rather* (the word corrects what has just been said either to assert something more strongly or to deny it, so that it may mean either *by all means* or *by no means*).  
 immōbilis, -e, adj., *immovable, fixed*.  
 immortalis, adj., *immortal*.  
 inmōtus, adj., *unmoved*.  
 impēdimenta, *baggage*.  
 impēdio, *to impede, hinder*; somno impeditus, *burdened with sleep, because he was so sound asleep*.  
 impello, impūli, impulsus (3), *to drive against*.  
 impendo (2), *to overhang, with dative*.  
 imperātor (-ōris), *general*.  
 imperium, *order, command, empire, authority*.  
 impēro (1), *to command*, with dat.  
 impetro (1), *to accomplish, obtain, to get leave, to get what you want*.  
 impētus (4), *charge, attack, elasticity*.  
 impleo, implēvi, impletus, *to fulfil, fill full, to fill*.  
 impōno, impōsui, impōsitus (3), *to put on, put on board, embark*; vectigal civitati imposuit, *he imposed a tax on the state*.

improviso, adv., *unexpectedly, without warning*.  
 improvisus, adj., *unforeseen*.  
 imprūdens, adj. (imprudentis), *unknowing, unwitting*.  
 impulsus, partic. of impello.  
 in, prep. with accus., *into, on to, against*, with abl., *in, on*.  
 inaniter, adv., *vainly*.  
 inbellis, adj., *unwarlike, peaceable*.  
 incēdo, incēsi, incessum (3), *to walk, to walk on*.  
 incendo, incendi, incensus (3), *to set on fire, to burn*; incensus cupiditate, *inflamed or fired with avarice or cupidity*.  
 incertus, adj., *uncertain, doubtful*.  
 incido, incīdi (3), *to fall into*.  
 incipio, incēpi, inceptus, incipere, *to begin*.  
 incito (1), *to urge, incite*.  
 inclāmo (1), *to call out to*.  
 inclītus, adj., *famous*.  
 inclūdo, inclusi, inclusus (3), *to shut up*.  
 incognītus, adj., *unknown*.  
 incōla (1), *an inhabitant*.  
 incōlo, incolui, incultus (3), *to inhabit, live in*.  
 incōlūmis, adj., *safe, unhurt*.  
 incommōdum, *disaster*.  
 increpo (1), increpui, increpītus, *to blame, rebuke*.  
 incursio (-onis), *onslaught*.  
 inde, adv., *thence, then*.  
 iudex (iudicis), *sign*.  
 indicium, *a sign, indication*.  
 indico (1), *to give information, tell*.  
 Indīcus, adj., *Indian*.  
 indūo, indui, indūtus (3), *to put on*; induor, *I clothe myself*.  
 industria (1), *industry*; de industria, *on purpose*.  
 industrius, adj., *energetic, diligent*.  
 īneo, *to enter upon*; consilium inire, *to form a plan*.  
 infans (infantis), *a child; unable to speak*.

**infectus**, adj., *undone*; *re infecta*, *without getting what one wanted done, baffled*.

**infelix** (infeliciis), adj., *unhappy*.

**inferior** (inferioris), adj., *inferior, lower*.

**inferus**, adj., *below*, comp., *inferior, lower*; *inferi*, *those below, the dead*.

**infestus**, adj., *dangerous, unfriendly*.

**infimus**, *lowest*.

**infirmus**, adj., *weak*.

**infitiæ**, *denial*; *infitiæ ire*, *to deny*.

**infractus**, from *infringo*, *exhausted, broken*.

**ingemino** (1), *to redouble*; in XLVI. multa cavo lateri ingeminant, *they deal blow upon blow on the*, etc.

**ingemo**, *ingemui* (3), *to groan deeply*.

**ingēnium**, *intellect, intelligence, ability, the wits*.

**ingens** (ingentis, abl. ingenti, nom. plur. neut. ingentia), *huge, immense*.

**ingēnuus**, adj., *well-bred*.

**ingrēdiōr**, *ingressus*, *ingrēdi*, *to walk, advance, enter*; *grandia ingrediens*, *advancing with great strides*.

**ingressus**, from *ingredior*.

**inhaerens**, pres. part. of *inhaereo*, *intent upon, absorbed in*.

**inicio**, *iniēci*, *iniectus*, *iniecere*, *to throw upon, throw into*.

**iniectus**, from *inicio*, *thrown over or into*.

**inimicitia**, *unfriendliness*; *Gaii inimicitiae regis*, *Caius' unfriendly feelings towards the king*.

**inimicus**, subst., *an enemy*; adj., *unfriendly*.

**iniquus**, adj., *unfair, unjust, cruel*; subst., *a cheat*.

**inīitium**, *a beginning*.

**initurns**, from *ineo*, *about, or destined to win, or earn*.

**iniuria** (1), *a wrong, an injury, injustice*; *Gallorum iniuriæ Caesaris*, *the wrongs done by the Gauls to Caesar*.

**iniussu**, *without the order of*.

**iniustus**, adj., *unjust*.

**inmiscéo** (2), *to mix*; *inmiscēt manus manibus*, *they mix hands with hands*, i.e. *they make their fists meet in the fight*.

**inmotus**, partic. of *inmoveo*, *unmoved*.

**innixus**, partic. of *innitor*, dep., *leaning upon, propping himself up*.

**innocens** (innocentis), adj., *innocent*.

**innoxius**, adj., *guiltless, blameless*.

**innumerābilis**, adj., *innumerable*.

**inopinans** (inopinantis), adj., *unexpected, not expecting*.

**inquiero**, *inquisivi*, *inquisitus* (3), *to ask questions*.

**inquisissent**, contracted for *inquisivissent*, from *inquiero*.

**inquit**, *he said, said he*.

**inritus**, adj., *in vain*.

**insānus** (2), *a lunatic*.

**inscendo**, *inscendi* (3), *to mount*.

**insequor**, *insecutus* (3), dep., *to follow*.

**insideo**, *insēdi*, *insestum* (2), *to sit upon*.

**insidiæ**, *stratagems*.

**insidiōsus**, adj., *artful, insidious*.

**insido**, *insēdi*, *insestum* (3), *to occupy*.

**insignis**, -e, adj., *distinguished, marked, noticeable*.

**insilio**, *insilui*, *insultum*, *to spring upon*.

**insimūlo** (1), *to accuse*.

**insisto**, *institi* (3), *to stand upon, take one's stand, set to work to, to persist in*.

- inspecto (1), *to look on.*  
 insperatus, adj., *unhoped for*; insperata, *unexpected things, the unexpected.*  
 inspicio, inspexi, inspectus, inspicere, *to look into, inspect, examine.*  
 instinctus, from instinguo.  
 instinguo, instinxi, instinctus (3), *to inspire.*  
 instituo, institui, institutus (3), *to resolve.*  
 insto (1), *to insist, to press*; si instabitur, *if it is insisted on, if you are pressed.*  
 instruo, instruxi, instructus (3), *to lay, draw up*; instructus, *furnished, stocked.*  
 insula (1), *an island.*  
 insuper, adv., *above*; insuper habere, *to make light of, to slight.*  
 insurgo, insurrexi (3), *to rise up.*  
 intellectu, supine of intellego.  
 intelligo, intellexi, intellectus (3), *to understand, to see.*  
 intentus, adj., *intent, fixed.*  
 inter, prep. with accus., *between, among, during, in the course of*; obsidibus inter se datis, *hostages having been exchanged*; inter se loquuntur, *they speak one to another.*  
 intercdo, intercessi, intercessum (3), *to come between, intervene.*  
 interdum, adv., *sometimes.*  
 interea, adv., *meanwhile.*  
 interemit, from interimo.  
 interesset, from intersum.  
 interest, *it is important, it is of importance, it matters, see p. 168.*  
 interfectus, from interficio.  
 interficio, -feci, -fectus, -ficere (3), *to kill, slay, put to death.*  
 interim, adv., *meanwhile.*  
 interimo, interemi, interemptus (3), *to kill.*  
 interitus (4), *end, death, destruction.*  
 intermitto, -misi, -missus (3), *to cease.*  
 internicio (internicionis), *slaughter.*  
 interpellator (-oris), *a disturber, a bore.*  
 interritus, adj., *fearless.*  
 interrogatus, part. of interrogo, *having been asked.*  
 interrōgo (1), *I ask, question.*  
 intersum, *to be present at (during), with dat.*  
 intimus, adj., *inner*; intimo vulnere, *at the bottom of the wound.*  
 intra, prep. with acc., *within.*  
 intrepide, adv., *fearlessly.*  
 intro (1), *to enter.*  
 introduco, -duxi, -ductus (3), *to bring in, or within, to introduce.*  
 introeo, -ivi and -ii, -itum, *to go in, enter.*  
 introgredior, -gressus, -grēdi, dep., *to enter.*  
 introiti, from introeo.  
 introisset, from introeo.  
 introrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptus (3), *to burst in.*  
 intuentes, pres. part. of intueor, *to gaze at.*  
 intueor (2), dep., *to look at, behold, gaze at.*  
 inultus, *unavenged.*  
 inusitatus, adj., *unusual, extraordinary.*  
 inutilis, adj., *useless.*  
 invado, invasi (3), *to rush upon.*  
 invēnio, invēni, inventus, *to come upon, to find out, discover.*  
 invertō, inverti, inversus (3), *to turn towards.*  
 invictus, adj., *invincible, proof against.*  
 invideo, invidi, invisus, *to envy, with dat.*  
 invidia (1), *envy, unpopularity.*  
 invisus, adj., *hated.*  
 invito (1), *to invite.*  
 invitus, adj., *unwilling.*  
 ioco (1), *to joke.*

**lōve**, used as abl. of Juppiter.

**ipse**, *self*; ipse dico, *I myself say it*; ipse dicis, *you yourself say it*; ipse dicit, *he himself says it*.

**Ipse** in XLIII., *voluntarily, of his own accord*; so ipsae in XLIV.

**ira** (1), *wrath, anger*.

**irascor**, iratus (3), *dep., I am angry, with dat.*

**iratus**, *angry, wroth*.

**ire**, from eo.

**irent**, from eo.

**iri**, from eo, used to form the fut. inf. passive; dixit se victum iri, *he said that he would be conquered*.

**irruo**, irruī (3), *to full upon*.

**is**, ea, id, *this*.

**iste**, ista, istud, *that*.

**istuc**, adv., *to that place, thither*.

**ita**, adv., *so, thus*.

**Italia**, *Italy*.

**itaque**, *so*.

**item**, adv., *likewise*.

**iter** (itīnēris), neut., *journey, march, track*; iter facio, *I march*.

**itērum**, adv., *again*.

**itinere**, from iter.

**itur**, pres. ind. pass. of eo, *a journey is made*.

**iubeo**, iussi, iussus, *to order, command, tell*.

**iucundus**, adj., *pleasant*.

**iudex** (iudicis), *a judge*; me iudice (I being judge), *in my opinion*.

**iudico** (1), *to judge*.

**iugum**, *a yoke*.

**iumentum**, *a beast of burden*.

**iunctus**, from iungo, *joined close together*.

**iungo**, iunxi, iunctus (3), *to join, harness*.

**iunior** (iunioris), comp. of iuvenis, *younger*.

**iure**, abl. of ius, *by right, properly*.

**iuro** (1), *to swear*.

**ius** (iuris), *right*; iureiurando, *by an oath*.

**iussi**, from iubeo.

**iussu**, abl. of iussus, *by order*.

**iuste**, adv., *properly, rightly*.

**iustitia** (1), *justice*.

**iustus**, adj., *just, right*.

**iuvēnis** (iuvenis), *a young man, a youth*.

**iuventa** (1), *youth*.

**iuventus** (iuventūtis), fem., *youth, the time of youth*.

**iūvo**, iūvi, iutus (1), *to help*; iuvat, *it delights, it is a pleasure*.

**iuxta**, prep. with acc., *near*.

**Labi**, inf. of labor.

**Labiēnus**, Labicnus (an officer under Caesar).

**labium**, *lip*.

**labo** (1), *to give way*.

**lābor** (labōris), *toil, labour*.

**lābor**, lapsus (3), *dep., to glide, flow*.

**labōro** (1), *to work*; et hoc laboro periculosius, *and on this account my illness is more dangerous*.

**lac** (lactis), *milk*.

**Lacedaemonii**, the *Lacedaemonians* (a people in Greece).

**lacer**, lacēra, lacerum, adj., *torn to pieces, lacerated*.

**laccio**, laccessivi, laccessitus (3), *to provoke*.

**Laconicus**, adj., *Laconian* (belonging to Laconia in Greece).

**lacrima** (1), *a tear*.

**lacūnar** (lacunāris), *ceiling*.

**laetor** (1), *dep., to be glad*.

**laetus**, adj., *glad, joyful*.

**lanio** (1), *to mangle, lacerate*.

**lapis** (lapidis), masc., *a stone*.

**lassitudo** (lassitudinis), *fatigue*.

**latebrae**, plur., *a hiding-place*.

**latebrōsus**, adj., *secluded, out of the way*.

**Latine**, adv., *in Latin*; Latine reddo, *I turn, translate into Latin*; Latine scio, *I know Latin*.

**Latinus**, adj., *Latin, Roman.*

**latro** (1), *to bark.*

**laturus**, used as fut. part. of *fero.*

**lātus** (latēris), *a side.*

**lātus**, adj., *broad*; or past part. of *fero*, *carried.*

**laudo** (1), *to praise.*

**laus** (laudis), *praise.*

**lautus**, adj., *rich.*

**lāvo**, lāvi, lotus (1), *to wash.*

**laxamentum**, *relaxation.*

**laxatus**, part. of *laxo*, *loosened, loose.*

**lectus** (2), *bed, couch*; or partic. of *lego.*

**legatio** (-ōnis), *embassy.*

**legātus** (2), *envoy, ambassador*; or the second in command, *the lieutenant of a general or governor.*

**legibus**, from *lex.*

**lēgio** (legionis), *a legion, a regiment.*

**lēgo**, lēgi, lectus (3), *to choose, pick out*; *read.*

**lenio** (4), *to soothe, console.*

**lenīter**, adv., *softly.*

**lente**, adv., *slowly.*

**leo** (leōnis), *a lion.*

**lepīdus**, adj. In XIII. *O lepidum caput! you splendid fellow!*

**letum**, *death.*

**lēvo** (1), *to relieve.*

**lex** (lēgis), *law.*

**libens** (libentis), adj., *willing.*

**liber** (libri), *bark; book.*

**liber**, libēra, liberum, *free*; libēri, *the free, (and in distinction to slaves) the children.*

**liberālis**, adj., *liberal, generous.*

**liberatus**, partic. of *libero*, *set free, delivered.*

**liberi**, see *liber.*

**libēro** (1), *to set free, deliver.*

**libertas** (libertātis), *liberty, freedom.*

**libri**, see *liber.*

**librine**, *i.e. libri-ne.*

**libro** (1), *to poise.*

**licet**, impersonal verb, *it is allowed*; *licet mihi, it is allowed to me, it is permitted me, I may.*

**ligno** (1), *to get wood.*

**lignum**, *wood.*

**ligo** (1), *to bind*; *gressus ligare, to fetter, impede their steps, advance, motion.*

**limen** (limīnis), *threshold.*

**lingua** (1), *tongue, language.*

**linquo**, liqui (3), *to leave.*

**littēra** (1), *a letter (of the alphabet)*; *litterae, a letter (i.e. an epistle), and literature.*

**litus** (litōris), *shore, coast.*

**locuples** (locuplētis), *rich.*

**lōcus** (2), plur. *lōca, place, post, ground, part*; in *loco*, *on the proper occasion*; *obscuro (or summo) loco natus, born in an obscure (or high) position, of humble (or noble) birth*; *parentis loco est puero, he is in the position of father to the boy.*

**locūtus**, from *loquor.*

**Londīnium**, *London.*

**longe**, adv., *by far, far*; *longius, further, farther.*

**longus**, adj., *long, tall.*

**lōquor**, locūtus (3), dep., *to talk, say, speak.*

**lorum**, *a rope.* lotus, see *lavo.*

**lucrum** (2), *gain.*

**luctator** (-ōris), *a wrestler.*

**luctus** (4), *mourning, woe*; *luctus (plur.), expressions of woe, signs of mourning.*

**ludendum**, from *ludo* (3), *to play, playing.*

**ludo**, lusi, lusum (3), *to play.* In XIII. *nihil aliud quam luditis, you do nothing but play.*

**lugeo**, luxi, luctum, *to mourn.*

**luna** (1), *the moon.*

**Lusitānus** (2), *a Lusitanian (Lusitania is the western part of Spain).*

**lulus** (4), *play.*



**Lutetia**, *Paris*.

**lux** (lūcis), *light, light of day, dawn*; *prima luce, at first light, at early dawn*.

**Lydia** (1), *Lydia*.

**lyra** (1), *a lyre*.

**lyricus**, adj., *belonging to the lyre*.

**Macēdo**, Macedōnis (3), *a Macedonian*.

**macies** (5), *leanness, wasting, decay*.

**macūlo** (1), *to stain*.

**maestus**, adj., *sad*.

**māgis**, adv., *more*.

**māgister** (magistri), *a master, a teacher*.

**magnificentia** (1), *magnificence*.

**magnificus**, a, um, *magnificent, splendid*.

**magnitudo** (magnitudinis), *size, greatness*.

**magnopere**, adv., *greatly*.

**magnus**, adj., comp. maior, sup.

maximus, *great, large, big, loud*;

maior natu, *greater by birth*,

elder; magni facio, *I value*

highly; quam maximis potest

itineribus, *by as long marches*;

as he can, by forced marches;

maxime, *very greatly, especially*.

**maiestas** (maiestatis), *majesty, splendour*.

**māior** (maiōris), comp. of magnus, *bigger, greater, elder*; **maiōres**, *ancestors*.

**māla** (1), *jaw*.

**māle**, adv., *badly*.

**maledicus** (2), *an abusive or foul-mouthed person*.

**maleficium** (2), *a crime*.

**maleficus**, adj., *wicked*.

**mallesne**, i.e. malles-ne.

**mallet**, imperf. subj. of irregular verb malo.

**mālo**, *I prefer, would rather*, see p. 342.

**malum** (2), *an evil, affliction*.

**mālus**, adj., *bad, evil*.

**mandatum** (2), *a command, charge*.  
**mando** (1), *to entrust, consign, send a message*: mando, mandī, mansus (3), *to chew*.

**mānē**, neut., indeclinable, *morning*; or mānē, imperative of maneo.

**māneo**, mansi, mansum, *to remain, stay*.

**manifestus**, adj., *clear, obvious*.

**māno** (1), *to stream, flow*.

**manserimus**, from maneo.

**mansuetus**, adj., *tame*.

**mānus** (4), fem., *a hand, a hand-ful, a band of soldiers, the trunk (of an elephant)*.

**māre** (maris), *the sea*.

**mārītīmus**, adj., *maritime, having to do with the sea*.

**marmor** (marmōris), *marble*; marmora, *slabs of marble*.

**Massilia** (1), *Marseilles*.

**mater** (matris), *a mother*.

**materne**, i.e. mater and ne.

**maternus**, adj., *belonging to a mother*; maternae aedes, *your mother's house*.

**matūre**, adv., *in good time, early*.

**matureseco**, -rui (3), *to ripen*.

**matūrus**, adj., *mature, ripe*.

**mavult**, from malo, *I prefer*.

**maxilla** (1), *jaw*.

**maximus**, see magnus.

**me**, accus. of ego; me miserum, *wretched person that I am!*

**mecum**, i.e. cum me, *with me*.

**medicamentum**, *medicine*.

**medicīna** (1), *treatment*.

**medicus** (2), *a doctor*.

**meditans**, partic. of meditor (1), dep., *practising*.

**medium**, *the middle*.

**mēdius**, adj., *middle*; media nocte, *at midnight*; media urbs, *the middle of the city*; sole medio, *at noon*.

**Megāra** (2), neut. plur., *Megara* (a town in Greece).

**mel** (mellis), *honey*.

- mēlior**, used as comparative of bonus, *better*.  
**membrāna**, a *skin*.  
**membrum**, a *limb*, a *member* (of the body).  
**memento**, imperative of meminī.  
**meminī**, a perfect with present meaning, *I remember*, takes genitive of the person.  
**memor** (memōris), adj., *mindful*, *remembering*.  
**mēmōria**, *memory*, *narrative*, *account*; memoria teneo, *I hold in my memory*, *I remember*.  
**memōro** (1), *to mention*, *record*, *tell*, *recount*.  
**mendacium**, a *lie*.  
**mens** (mentis), *the mind*.  
**mensa** (1), a *table*.  
**mensis** (mensis), masc., a *month*.  
**mentior**, mentitus, dep., *to tell lies*.  
**mercātor** (-ōris), a *merchant*.  
**mercātus** (4), *market*.  
**merces** (mercēdis), fem., *bride*.  
**mercor** (1), dep., *to purchase*.  
**meridiānus**, adj., *mid-day*.  
**merīdies** (5), *midday*.  
**merito**, adv., *deservedly*.  
**merx** (mercis), *goods*, *wares*.  
**mēto**, messui, messus (3), *to reap*.  
**mētus** (4), *fear*.  
**meus**, adj., *my*, *mine*.  
**mi**, vocative of meus.  
**mihi**, dative of ego.  
**miles** (militis), a *soldier*.  
**militaris**, adj., *military*; res militaris (sing.) should be translated *military affairs* (plur.)  
**mille**, adj., a *thousand*; mille pueri, *a thousand boys*; mille passus, *a thousand paces* (i.e. a mile). The plural milia (so spelt), *thousands*, is a substantive, and therefore cannot agree with another substantive; 3000 boys is tria milia puerorum, *three miles tria milia passuum*.  
**minax** (minācis), adj., *threatening*.  
**minime**, adv., *by no means*; minime vero, *no*, *certainly not*.  
**minimus**, used as superl. of parvus, *very little*; hunc librum minimi facio, *I value this book at very little*, *I think very little of this book*.  
**minister** (ministri), *servant*, *minister*.  
**ministrātor** (-oris), *servant*.  
**ministro** (1), *to supply*, *serve*.  
**minor** (minōris), used as comp. of parvus, *smaller*; minoris, *at a lower price*.  
**minus**, adv., *less*.  
**minūtus**, adj., *small*; in rebus minutis, *among some trifles*.  
**mirābilis**, -e; adj., *wonderful*, *strange*.  
**mirāculum**, *miracle*, *strange tale*.  
**mirandum**, from miror; neque mirandum, *nor is it to be wondered at*, *no wonder*.  
**miror** (1), dep., *to wonder*.  
**mirus**, adj., *wonderful*.  
**misceo**, miscui, mixtus, *to mix*.  
**miser**, misēra, misērū, *unhappy*, *wretched*.  
**misereor** (miseritus), dep., *to have pity upon*, *with the gen.*  
**misēria** (1), *misfortune*, *unhappiness*.  
**miseritus**, from misereor.  
**misērōr** (1), dep., *to pity*.  
**miserrimus**, superl. of miser.  
**missi**, from mitto.  
**missus**, from mitto.  
**Mithridātes** (-is), *Mithridates*.  
**mitis**, adj., *gentle*.  
**mitto**, misi, missus (3), *to send*, *to put*.  
**mixtus**, from misceo.  
**mobilis**, adj., *movable*, *fickle*, *changeable*.  
**moderātus**, adj., *moderate*.  
**modēror** (1), dep., *to alleviate*.  
**modeste**, adv., *modestly*.  
**mōdo**, adv., *only*; da modo, *just*

*give me ; modo . . . modo, sometimes . . . sometimes.*

**mōdus** (2), *manner, way ; hunc in modum loquitur, he speaks as follows (in this way) ; eius modi, of this (the following) kind, in this manner, as follows ; quonam modo, in a sort of way, so to say ; negat ullo modo fieri posse, he says that it is utterly impossible (literally, he denies that it can in any way come about).*

**moenia** (2), plural only, *walls, city-walls.*

**mōles** (molis), *size, weight ; moles* (plur.), *munitions of war.*

**molestus**, adj., *troublesome.*

**momordit**, from *mordeo*.

**moneo** (2), *to warn, advise.*

**monitus**, from *moneo*.

**mons** (montis), *a mountain.*

**montānus**, adj., *belonging to a mountain ; montana castella, mountain fastnesses.*

**monumentum**, *a chronicle.*

**mōra** (1), *delay, reason for delay.*

**morbus** (2), *a disease, malady ; quid morbi est, what kind of malady is it ?*

**mordeo**, **momordi**, **morsus**, *to bite.*

**more**, from *mos*, *in the manner of, like.*

**mores**, from *mos*.

**mori**, from *morior*.

**mōrior**, **mortuus**, inf. *mori*, fut. partic. *moriturus*, dep., *to die.*

**mōror** (1), dep., *to delay.*

**mors** (mortis), *death.*

**mortuus**, from *morior*.

**mōs** (mōris), *manner, custom, fashion ; more meo, in my usual fashion.*

**Moses** (Mosis), *Moses.*

**motus**, from *moveo* ; or **motus** (4), *motion.*

**mōveo**, **mōvi**, **mōtus**, *to move, stir, rouse, influence, raise, excite, set in motion.*

**mox**, adv., *soon.*

**mulceo**, **mulsi**, *to soothe.*

**mulier** (mulieris), *a woman.*

**multitudo** (-inis), *a large number, crowd, multitude.*

**multo**, adv., *by far, long, much.*

**multum**, adv., *much, a good deal ; multum timere, to be very much afraid.*

**multus**, adj., *much ; multi, many ; multum temporis (much of time), much time ; ne multa (dicam), in short ; quid multa ? why should I say much ? why should I make a long story of it ? in a word.*

**mundus** (2), *world.*

**munera**, from *munus*.

**munio**, *to fortify.*

**munus** (muneris), *a gift.*

**murex** (muricis), *purple-dye, purple.*

**murmur** (murmuris), *murmur.*

**murus** (2), *a wall.*

**mutatus**, from *muto*.

**muto** (1), *to change.*

**mutuo**, **mutuatus** (1), dep., *to borrow.*

**mutus**, adj., *silent, dumb.*

**mutuus**, adj., *mutual.*

**Naetus**, from *nanciscor*.

**nam**, *for.*

**namque**, *for.*

**nanciscor**, **nactus** (3), dep., *to find, get.*

**nares** (narium), fem., *the nostrils.*

**narro** (1), *to relate, tell.*

**nascor**, **natus sum** (3), *to be born.*

In XIV. *nascitur*, *is produced, grows.*

**natio** (nationis), *a nation, people.*

**nātus**, -a, -um, *having been born ; novem annos natus, nine years old ; or natus* (2), *a son, or* (4), *birth.*

**nauta** (1), *a sailor.*

**navīgium**, *a boat, ship.*

**nāvigo** (1), *to sail*

**nāvis** (navis), *a ship.*

**ne** ; **nē**, *lest, in order that . . .*

*not, not to; impero tibi ne facias, I order you not to do it; ne dixeris, don't say; ne multa (dicam), not to make a long story, in short; ne . . . quidem, not . . . even: -ne asks a question, without suggesting what the answer should be, e.g. Vidistine Gaium, have you seen Gaius?*

**Neapōlis** (Neapolis), *Naples*.

**nec, nor.**

**nēco** (1), *to kill, murder.*

**nēgo** (1), *to deny; nego me scire, I say that I do not know. In XII. alius negat alius ait, means one doctor says no, another yes, i.e. one says that one thing is the matter with me, another says that it isn't that.*

**negotior** (1), *dep., to work, to do business.*

**nēgōtium**, *business.*

**nēmo** (acc. neminem, dat. nemini, gen. nullius, abl. nullo), *nobody, no one.*

**nequaquam**, *adv., by no means.*

**nēque**, *neither; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor; sometimes neque means but not, and not, and yet.*

**nequeo, nequivi** (like eo), *to be unable.*

**nequiquam** or **nequidquam**, *adv., in vain.*

**nescio**, *not to know, to be ignorant of; nescio quis, some one.*

**neve, nor.**

**nex** (nēcis), *death.*

**Nicopōlis**, *abl. Nicopoli, Nicopolis.*

**nihil**, *indeclinable, nothing; nihil cibi, no food (nothing in the way of food); nihil boni, nothing good.*

**nihilum** (2), *nothing; pro nihilo, as nothing, as of no importance; nihili facio, I value at nothing, think nothing of.*

**nimbus** (2), *cloud.*

**nimīrum**, *adv., to be sure.*

**nīmīs**, *adv., too.*

**nīmīus**, *adj., too much, excessive.*

**nīsi**, *unless, if . . . not.*

**nīsus** (4), *effort; nisu in eodem, in the same strained posture.*

**nītor**, **nīsus** and **nīxus** (3), *dep., to try, to rely on; or nītor (nītōris), brightness, gloss.*

**nīxus**, *from nītor.*

**nōbīlis**, *adj., famous, renowned, noble.*

**noceo** (2), *to hurt, harm, do harm to (governs dative).*

**nodus** (2), *knot, coil, impediment.*

**nōli**, *imperative of nolo, be unwilling to; so, e.g. noli antepōnere, do not prefer.*

**nolo**, **nolui**, **nolle**, *to be unwilling; see p. 341.*

**nomen** (nomīnis), *a name; in XLV. nomina facit means, he (Canius) borrows the money; see the note.*

**nomīno** (1), *to name, appoint, nominate.*

**non, not.**

**nondum**, *not yet.*

**nonne** is used in asking a question when you want to suggest the answer "yes"; e.g. *nonne venies? you will come, will you not?*

**noscīto** (1), *to recognise.*

**nosco**, **nōvi**, **nōtus** (3), *to become acquainted with, get to know.*

**noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum**, *our; nostri, our men, soldiers, or army; or nostri may be gen. plur. of ego.*

**nostī**, *a contraction of novisti; see novi.*

**nōto** (1), *to mark, indicate, to ensure.*

**nōtus**, *known; notior, better known.*

**novācūla** (1), *a razor.*

**nōvem**, *nine*.

**nōvi**, a perfect with present meaning, *I know*; see *nosco*.

**novisse**, from *novi*.

**nōvus**, adj., *new*; *quid novi est?* *what is the news?* (literally, *what of new is there?*)

**nox** (noctis), *night*.

**nuclēus** (2), *the kernel*.

**nugamentum**, in XIII. *nug. hominis*, *this absurd little creature*.

**nullus**, adj. (gen. *nullius*), *no, none*; in XLV. *scalmum nullum videt*, *he sees no sign of a thole-pin* (much less a boat); *quod eos nullos videret*, *because he saw not a sign of them* (the fishermen).

**num** asks a question so as to suggest the answer "*no*," e.g. *num librum meum amisisti?* *you have not lost my book, have you?* But in indirect questions it means only *whether*; e.g. *rogavit num librum amisisset*, *he asked me whether I had lost the book*.

**numen** (*numīnis*), *divine power, deity*.

**numēro** (1), *to count*.

**numērus** (2), *number, quantity*; *hostium numero habetur* (he is reckoned in the number of our enemies), *he is regarded as an enemy*.

**nummus** (2), *a coin, money*.

**nunc**, *now*.

**nunquam**, adv., *never*.

**nuntio** (1), *to announce, inform, relate, bring news*.

**nuntius** (2), *a messenger, a message*.

**nuper**, adv., *lately*.

**nusquam**, adv., *nowhere*.

**nutus** (4), *nod, will, pleasure*; *ad eius nutum*, *according to his good pleasure, as he ordered*.

**nux** (*nucis*), *a nut*.

**Ob**, prep. with acc., *on account of, for the purpose of*.

**obēdio** (4), *to obey*.

**oblatus**, from *offero*.

**oblecto** (1), *to amuse*.

**oblītus**, from *obliviscor*.

**obliviscor**, *oblītus* (3), dep., *to forget*; sometimes with gen.

**obscurus**, adj., *obscure*; *obscuro loco natus*, *born in an obscure position, of humble birth*.

**obsequium**, *complaisance*.

**obses** (*obsīdis*), *a hostage*.

**obsessus**, from *obsideo*.

**obsīdeo**, *obsēdi*, *obsessus*, *to besiege, block up*.

**obsides**, from *obses*.

**obstinātus**, adj., *stubborn, obstinate*.

**obsto** (1), *to stand in the way*.

**obtestor** (1), dep., *to entreat*.

**obtīneo**, *obtinui*, *obtentus*, *to hold*.

**obtuli**, from *offero*.

**obturbo** (1), *to trouble, distract*.

**obviam**, adv., *to meet*.

**obvius**, adj., *meeting*; *omnes*

*obvii*, *everybody as he met them*;

*obvii*, *anybody you meet*.

**occasio** (*ocasiōnis*), *opportunity, occasion*.

**occāsus** (4), *setting*.

**occīdo**, *occīdi*, *occisus* (3), *to kill*.

**occisio** (*occisiōnis*), *murder*.

**occūpo** (1), *to seize*.

**oceānus** (2), *the ocean*.

**octāvus**, adj., *eighth*; hence a name, *Octavus*.

**octo**, *eight*.

**oculātus**, adj., *having eyes*; *oculatus testis*, *an eye-witness*.

**ōcūlus** (2), *an eye*. In XV. *hebetes oculos*, etc., *it is said to have eyes which are, etc.*

**odi**, a perfect with present meaning, *I hate*.

**odium** (2), *hatred, hate*; *odio est mihi*, *he is hateful to me*.

**odor** (*odōris*), *odour, smell*; *odores*, *incense, etc.*

**offero**, *obtūli*, *oblātus*, *to offer, to*

*give*; offerre se, to *present one-self*.  
**officium**, *duty*.  
 olim, adv., *once upon a time*.  
 Olympia, *Olympia*, a place in Greece where games and sports were held.  
 Olympiācus, adj., *Olympian*; Olympiacum certamen, *the Olympian contest*.  
**omnis**, adj., *all, every*; in XVI. omni vi, *with every kind of effort*.  
**onērārius**, adj. to onus, *carrying a burden*; naves onerariae, *ships carrying a freight, merchant vessels*.  
 onēro (1), *to load, burden*.  
**ōnus** (onēris), *a burden, load*.  
 opēra (1), *aid, attention*; dare operam, *to take care, to do one's best*.  
**opēris**, from opus.  
 opes (opum), plur., *riches, means*.  
 opīmus, adj., *rich, succulent*.  
**opīnio** (opiniōnis), *opinion, idea, impression*; celerius opinione, *quicker than they expected*.  
 opīnor (1), a verb having passive form with active meaning, *to fancy*.  
 opīpāre, adv., *sumptuously*.  
 opis, see ops.  
**oportet**, an impersonal verb; me oportet, *it behoves me, I ought*; sis oportet, in XII., *you must be*.  
 oppērior, dep., *to wait for*.  
 oppēto, oppetīvi, oppetitus (3), *to meet, encounter*.  
**oppīdum**, *town*.  
 opportunitas (-tatis), *fortunate property*.  
 oppugno (1), *to storm*.  
 ops (but the nominative is not used; gen. opis), *help*; plur. opes, *wealth*.  
**optīme**, adv. of optimus, *very well*.  
**optīmus**, adj. (used as superlative of bonus), *very good, best*.

opulentus, adj., *rich*.  
**ōpus** (opēris), *work, task*; aliquid mihi opus est, *I want something*; temporis opus esse, (he said) *that he wanted time*.  
 ōra (1), *shore*.  
 orācūlum, *an oracle*.  
**orātio** (orationis), *speech, oration*.  
**orātor** (oratoris), *orator, ambassador*.  
**ordo** (ordinis), masc., *order, rank, row*; ordine, *duly, in order*; ex ordine, *one after another*.  
 ore, from os, oris.  
 oriens (orientis), *the East*.  
 orior, ortus, dep., *to rise*.  
**ornamentum**, *an ornament*.  
 ornātus (4), *apparel*.  
 orno (1), *to adorn, decorate*.  
**ōro** (1), *to ask for, beg for, pray for*.  
 ortus (4), *rise, rising*; or partic. of orior.  
 os (oris), neut., *mouth*; ore hianti, *its mouth being open*; or os (ossis), neut., *a bone*.  
 oscūlum, *a kiss*; in osculis, *in the midst of kisses*.  
 ostendo, ostendi, ostensus (3), *to show, point out, display*.  
 otior (1), dep., *to rest, to have a holiday*.  
 ovans, partic. of ovo, *triumphing, in triumph*.  
 ovis (ovis), fem., *a sheep*.  
 ovum, *an egg*.  
**Pacem**, from pax.  
 pactum, *manner*.  
**paene**, adv., *almost*.  
 paenitentia (1), *repentance, regret*.  
 paenituit, from paenitet, an impersonal verb, me paenitet (it repents me), *I regret*.  
 pāgus (2), *village, canton*.  
 pāla (1), *bezel, hollow (of a ring)*.  
 palam, adv., *openly*.  
 palla (1), *a cloak*. pallium, *a cloak*.

**palma** (1), *the palm of the hand, or the palm-tree.*

**palus** (palūdis), fem., *marsh.*

**paluster**, -tris, -tre, adj. (of palus), *marshy.*

**pancratiastes**, -ae (1), *a pancratiast, i.e. one who was practised in the pancration, which was a mixture of a wrestling and a boxing match.*

**papae** ! *indeed !*

**papȳrus** (2), *papyrus.*

**par** (paris), adj., *like, similar.*

**pararetur**, from paro.

**paratus**, from paro, *prepared, ready.*

**parco**, peperci (and parsi), parsum (3), *to spare, takes the dat.*

**parcus**, adj., *niggardly.*

**pārens** (parentis), *a parent.*

**pāreo** (2), *to obey, with dat.*

**pares**, from par.

**pario**, pepēri, partus, parēre, *to produce, lay, breed.*

**pāro** (1), *to prepare, get ready, plot.*

**pars** (partis), *part, quarter, direction, portion (of food).*

**parsi**, from parco.

**partus**, partic. of pario, *produced, acquired, got.*

**parum**, adv., *too little, not at all ; parum honorifice, disrespectfully, with too little respect.*

**parvus**, adj., *small, little ; parvi facio, I value at a low price, I think little of ; parvo (abl. of price), for little, cheap.*

**pascua** (2), *pastures.*

**passus** (4), *a pace ; mille passus, a thousand paces, i.e. a mile.*

**pastor** (pastōris), *a shepherd.*

**patefacio**, -feci, -factus, -facēre, *to bring to light, clear up.*

**patefactus**, part. of patefacio.

**pāter** (patris), *a father.*

**pati**, infin. of patior.

**patienter**, adv., *patiently.*

**patina** (1), *a dish.*

**pātiōr**, passus, pati, *to suffer, endure, allow, permit.*

**patria** (1), *country, native country.*

**pauci**, adj., *a few, only a few.*

**paucitas** (paucitatis), *fewness.*

**paulatim**, adv., *by degrees, gradually.*

**paulo**, adv., *a little.*

**pauper** (paupēris), *poor.*

**pax** (pācis), *peace ; si id liceat pace tua (if this is allowed by your permission), if you give your permission.*

**pectus** (pectōris), *breast, chest.*

**pecūnia** (1), *money, sum of money.*

**pecus** (pecūdis), fem., *one of a flock (e.g. a sheep) ; or pecus* (pecōris), neut., *a herd.*

**pēdes** (pedītis), *a foot soldier ; or plur. of pes.*

**peius**, adv., *worse.*

**pello**, pepūli, pulsus (3), *to drive.*

**pendo**, pependi, pensus (3), *to pay.*

**penetro** me (1), *I betake myself.*

**penitus**, adv., *thoroughly.*

**penna** (1), *wing.*

**penso** (1), *to weigh, to consider.*

**peperci**, from parco.

**per**, prep. with acc., *through, by means of, along, during ; per somnium, in a dream ; per aetatem, as far as his age was concerned ; per contemptum, in contempt.*

**percrebesco**, percrebui (3), *to get known.*

**percunctor** (1), *a verb with passive form but active meaning, I inquire strictly.*

**Perdiccas** (Perdiccae), *Perdiccas (one of the generals of Alexander the Great).*

**perditus**, see perdo.

**perdo**, perdidi, perditus (3), *to lose, destroy, waste, ruin ; perditus, lost, abandoned.*

**perdomitus**, from perdomo.

**perdōmo**, perdomui, perdomitus, *perdomare, to thoroughly subdue.*

**pereo** (per and eo), *to perish, to be killed.*

**pererro** (1), *to wander over.*

**perficio**, perfēci, perfectus, perficere, *to do completely, carry out, accomplish.*

**perfōdio**, perfōdi, perfossus, *to pierce through, transfix.*

**perfōro** (1), *to make a hole in.*

**perfossus**, from perfodio.

**perfunctus**, from perfungor.

**perfungor**, perfunctus (3), dep., *to finish, takes the abl.*

**Pergāmus**, *Pergamus* (a city in Mysia, in Asia Minor).

**pergo**, perrexī, perrectum (3), *to go, advance, go forward.*

**periculōsus**, adj., *dangerous.*

**pericūlum**, *danger, trial.*

**perii**, from pereo.

**peritus**, adj., with genitive, *skilled in, experienced in.*

**perimensus**, partic. of permetior, dep., *to traverse.*

**permitto**, -misi, -missum (3), *to allow, permit.*

**permulti**, adj., *very many.*

**perniciēs** (5), *ruin, destruction, fate.*

**perpetuus**, adj., *perpetual, continual.*

**perquiro**, -quisivi, -quisitus (3), *to make careful inquiry; perquiritur, careful inquiries are made.*

**Persae** (Persarum), *the Persians.*

**persēquor**, persecūtus (3), dep., *to follow after, persecute.*

**persevēro** (1), *to insist, persist, persevere.*

**persuadeo**, persuasi, persuasum, *to persuade; takes dative,— persuadeo tibi ut venias, I persuade you to come; persuasum est mihi, I have been persuaded or convinced, I am convinced.*

**pertaesum est**, perf. of impersonal pertaedet me, *it irks me, I am tired of; me illius vitae per-*

*taesum est, I was tired of that life.*

**perterritus**, *very alarmed; pavore perterritus, stricken with fear.*

**pertimeo**, -timui, *to be very much afraid.*

**pertinax** (pertinācis), *persistent.*

**pertineo**, *to belong.*

**pervēnio**, pervēni, perventum, *to reach, arrive, come up, go to, come into somebody's hands.*

**pes** (pēdis), *a foot.*

**pessimus**, used as superlative of malus, *very bad, worst.*

**pestilentia** (1), *a pestilence, plague.*

**petivi**, from peto.

**pēto**, petivi, and petii, petitus, petere (3), *to seek, ask, make for, go to; peto a te, I ask you.*

**philosōphā** (1), *philosophy.*

**philosōphus** (2), *a philosopher.*

**Phoebus** (2), *Phoebus, also called Apollo, god of music and poetry.*

**pictus**, from pingo.

**pietas** (pietātis), *kindness, generosity.*

**piger**, pigra, pigrum, *lazy.*

**pīla** (1), *a ball.*

**pīlum**, *a dart.*

**pingo**, pinxi, pictus (3), *to paint, embroider.*

**pinus** (4), *pine-tree, or a ship (made of that wood).*

**piscātor** (-oris), *a fisherman.*

**piscīna** (1), *a fish-pond.*

**piscis** (piscis), masc., *a fish.*

**piscor** (1), dep., *to fish.*

**plācet**, *pleases; placet mihi, it pleases me.*

**plācide**, adv., *quietly.*

**plāne**, adv., *clearly, distinctly.*

**planta** (1), *a plant.*

**plaustrum** (2), *a waggon.*

**plebs** (plēbis), *the common people.*

**plēnus**, adj., *full.*

**plerumque**, adv., *generally.*

**plerusque**, adj., *the greater part or number.*



**pluit**, *it rains.*

**pluma**, *a feather.*

**plumbëus**, adj. (of **plumbum**, *lead*), *leadën.*

**plumo** (1), *to have feathers.*

**plura**, from **plus**, *more things.*

**plurimum**, adv., *very much.*

**plurimus**, used as superlative of **multus**, *very many, very much*; **plurimi facio**, *I value at a very high price, very highly, I think a great deal of*; **plurimo**, abl. of price, *for a very large sum.*

**pluris**, gen. of **plus**, *of more value, worth more, at a higher price, for more.*

**plus**, adv., *more*; or adj., **plus** (**pluris**), **plures**, **plura**.

**poculum**, *a cup.*

**poëma** (**poemätis**), *a poem.*

**poena** (1), *punishment, penalty.*

**pollex** (**pollicis**), *thumb.*

**pondus** (**ponderis**), *weight.*

**pōno**, **pōnui**, **pōsitus** (3), *to put, place, put on, serve.*

**pons** (**pontis**), masc., *a bridge.*

**poposci**, from **posco**. [*devastate.*

**popūlor** (1), dep., *to lay waste,*

**popūlus** (2), *a people.*

**porrigo**, **porrexī**, **porrectus** (3), *to stretch out, reach out, hand.*

**porta** (1), *a gate*; **ad portas**, *at the*

**portus** (4), *a harbour.* [*gates.*

**posco**, **poposci** (3), *to demand.*

**positus**, partic. of **pono**.

**possum**, **potui**, **posse**, *I am able*; see p. 335.

**post**, adv., *afterwards, after that*; prep. with acc., *after.*

**postea**, adv., *afterwards, after that.*

**posterior** (-oris), adj., *following, later.*

**postërus**, adj., *next.*

**posthac**, adv., *henceforth, in future.*

**postquam**, conj., *after that.*

**postrëmus**, adj., *last.*

**postridie**, *on the following day.*

**postulätum**, *a demand.*

**potestas** (**potestatis**), *power, authority*; **potestatem facere**, *to give leave or opportunity*; **pugnandi potestatem mihi facit**, *he gives me an opportunity of fighting, he offers me battle.*

**potior**, **potitus**, dep., *to acquire, get, gain possession of*; the verb is active in meaning though passive in form.

**potitus**, from **potior**.

**praebeo** (2), *to give, afford.*

**praeëdo**, **praeëssi**, **praeëssum** (3), *to go before, precede, have the precedence of.*

**praeëpit**, from **praeëpio**.

**praeëps** (**praeëpitis**), *headlong, head foremost.*

**praeëptor** (**praeëptoris**), *master, teacher.*

**praeëpio**, **praeëpi**, **praeëptus**, **praeëpere**, *to order*, with dat.

**praeëpito** (1), *to dash, dart.*

**praeëpue**, adv., *principally, especially.*

**praeclüdo**, **praeclüsi**, **praeclusus** (3), *to stop up.*

**praeo** (**praeönis**), *a herald.*

**praeda** (1), *booty.*

**praedico**, **praedixi**, **praedictus** (3), *to tell beforehand, foretell, predict*; or **praedico** (1), *to give out.*

**praedo** (**praedönis**), *a pirate.*

**praefectus** (2), *commander.*

**praeficio**, **praefëci**, **praefectus**, **praeficere**, *to set over, set in command*; **Gaium urbi praefecit**, *he sets Caius over the city, makes Caius governor of the city.*

**praeifulgeo**, **praeifulsi**, *to shine forth or brightly.*

**praefuturus**, from **praesum**.

**praelium**, *a battle, engagement.*

**praemisit**, from **praemitto**.

**praemitto**, **praemisi**, **praemissus** (3), *to send before, or first, to send forward.*

**praemium** (2), *a reward.*

**praeparo** (1), *to prepare*; **praeparetur**, *let it be prepared, let preparations be made.*

**praesentia** (1), *the present.*

**praesidium**, *a garrison, a protection.*

**praesto**, **praestiti**, **praestitum** (1), *to stand before, stand out, be superior to*; **praestant tibi**, *they are superior to you*; **praestat**, *it is better*; *to keep (a promise, etc.).*

**praesto**, adv., *ready.*

**praesum**, *to be in command, with dat.*

**praeter**, prep. with acc., *except, besides, beyond.*

**praetor** (**praetōris**), *a praetor (a Roman official).*

**praevideo**, **praevidi**, **praevisus**, *to foresee.*

**precario**, adv., *by entreaty, by mere favour, or sufferance.*

**preces** (**precum**), plur., *prayers.*

**precor** (1), dep., *to pray, ask for.*

**prēmo**, **pressi**, **pressus** (3), *to press, pinch, push hard, drive*; **oculos pressi**, *I have closed his eyes.*

**pretium** (2), *price, money.*

**primo**, adv., *at first.*

**primum**, adv., *first*; **cum primum**, *as soon as ever.*

**primus**, adj., *first*; **prima luce**, *at daybreak (at the first light).*

**princeps** (**principis**), *chief, a chief or principal person.*

**prior** (**priōris**), *former, preceding, superior*; **prius**, adv., *before.*

**pristinus**, adj., *former.*

**prius**, adv., *before.*

**priusquam**, conj., *before that*; the **prius** and **quam** are sometimes separated as in XLI.

**pro**, prep. with abl., *in front of, in proportion to, instead of, for, for the sake of*; **pro nihilo**, *as nothing, as of no importance.*

**prōbus**, adj., *honest.*

**procēdo**, **processi**, **processum**, *to advance, go forward.*

**procēritas** (-tātis), *height.*

**processerat**, from **procēdo**.

**proclāmo** (1), *to shout out, proclaim.*

**procul**, adv., *far, far off*; **procul dubio** (far from doubt), *without a doubt, certainly.*

**prodesset**, from **prosum**.

**prodest**, from **prosum**.

**prodidisse**, from **prodo**.

**proditio** (**proditionis**), *treason.*

**proditus**, from **prodo**.

**prodo**, **prodidi**, **proditus** (3), *to betray, deliver, hand down.*

**prodūco**, -**duxi**, -**ductus** (3), *to lead forth.*

**proelium**, *battle.*

**profecto**, adv., *certainly, to be sure, I feel sure*; or **profecto** may be from **proficiscor**.

**profecturus**, fut. partic. of **proficiscor**.

**profectus**, from **proficiscor**, *having travelled, come.*

**proficiscor**, **profectus** (3), dep., *to set out start.*

**profiteor**, **professus**, dep., *to profess, make a profession of.*

**progrēdior**, **progressus**, **progrēdi**, dep., *to advance, go forward.*

**promissum** (2), *a promise.*

**promitto**, **promisi**, **promissum** (3), *to promise.*

**prope**, adv., *near, nearly*; prep. with acc., *near to.*

**propēro** (1), *to hasten.*

**propinquus** (2), *a relative, a relation.*

**propius**, adv., comp. of **prope**, *nearer.*

**propter**, prep. with accus., *on account of, because of*; adv., *near, close by, by his side.*

**propugno** (1), *to fight for, defend.*

**prorsus**, adv., *entirely, altogether, direct, straight.*

**prorumpo**, *prorūpi*, *proruptus* (3),  
to burst forth.

**prospectus** (4), *prospect*, *view*.

**prosp̄ere**, *adv.*, *successfully*, *prosperously*.

**prosum**, *prodes*, *prodest*, *prosumus*,  
*prodestis*, *prosunt*, *profui*, *pro-*  
*desse* (*i.e.* *pro* and *sum*, but  
whenever the *o* and *e* would  
come together a *d* is put in), *to*  
*profit*, *do good to one*.

**protinus**, *adv.*, *at once*, *straightway*.

**prov̄ēho**, *-vexi*, *-vectus* (3), *to carry*  
*forward*; *provehor*, *to advance*.

**provideo**, *providi*, *provisus*, *to look*  
*out for*, *provide*.

**provincia** (1), *province*, *country*.

**provoco** (1), *to appeal*.

**proximus**, *superl.* of *prope*, *nearest*,  
*next*, *very near*.

**prudentia** (1), *wisdom*. In XIII.  
*scit tua prudentia* (*lit. your*  
*wisdom knows*), *you in your*  
*wisdom know*, *you are so wise*  
*that you know*.

**pubes** (*pubis*), *youth*, *young men*.

**publice**, *adv.*, *publicly*.

**publicus** *adj.*, *public*.

**pudor** (*pudōris*), *shame*.

**puella** (1), *girl*.

**puer** (*puēri*), *a boy*, *a slave*. In  
V. *puer* means *when a boy*.

**pueritia** (1), *boyhood*.

**pugil** (*pugilis*), *a boxer*.

**pugna** (1), *a battle*.

**pugno** (1), *to fight*.

**pulcher**, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, *beauti-*  
*ful*, *pretty*.

**pulchritudo** (*-dīnis*), *beauty*.

**pulso** (1), *to strike*, *beat*, *batter*,  
*appeal to*.

**pulsus**, *from pello*.

**punio** (4), *to punish*.

**pupilla** (1), *the pupil* (of the eye).

**puppis** (*puppis*), *stern of a ship*, or  
*the ship itself*.

**purgo** (1), *to clear oneself*, *to make*  
*excuses*.

**puto** (1), *to think*.

**Pygmaei**, *the Pygmies*.

**Quadraginta**, *indeclinable*, *forty*.

**quadrupes** (*quadrupēdis*), *adj.*,  
*fourfooted*.

**quaero**, *quaesivi*, *quaesitus*, *to*  
*seek*, *look for*, *try to find out*, *to*  
*ask*, *inquire*; *ex me quaerunt*,  
*they ask me*.

*quaesitus*, *from quaero*.

*quaesivi*, *from quaero*.

**quaeso** (3), *I pray*.

**quaestus** (4), *gain*.

**qualis**, *adj.*, *of what kind*, *of which*  
*kind*; *talis . . . qualis*, *of such*  
*a kind . . . as*.

**quam**, *than*; *quam proxime pot-*  
*erat*, *as near as he could*; *quam*  
*celerrime*, *as quickly as possible*;  
or *quam* may be *acc. fem. sing.*  
of *qui*.

**quamdiu**, *as long as*, *all the while*  
*that*.

**quamobrem**, *for which reason*.

**quamquam**, *although*.

**quamvis**, *however*.

**quando**, *when*; *si quando*, *if ever*;  
in XL. *since*.

**quantus**, *how great?* *how much?*  
*tantus . . . quantus*, *as great*  
*. . . as*; *quanti*, *at what price?*  
*for what?* *for how much?* *quan-*  
*tum temporis*, *how much time?*

**quare**, *why?*

**quartus**, *adj.*, *fourth*.

**quasi**, *adv.*, *as it were*; *conj.*, *as*.

**quātio**, *no perf.*, *quassus*, *quatere*,  
*to shake*.

**quatt̄ior**, *four*.

**que**, *and*.

**quemadmodum**, *as*.

**quercus** (4), *fem.*, *oak*.

**quēror**, *questus* (3), *dep.*, *to com-*  
*plain*.

**qui**, *adv.*, *how?* *qui fit?* *how does*  
*it come about?*

**qui**, *quae*, *quod*, *gen.* *cuius*, *rela-*

tive pronoun, *who, which, what*; qua re in XVIII., *for which reason*. In English *that* is also used instead, or the rel. pronoun is entirely omitted: Amisi librum quem mihi dedisti is either *I have lost the book which you gave me*, or *I have lost the book that you gave me*, or *I have lost the book you gave me*. Followed by the subjunctive qui may be equivalent to *ut, to, in order to*; qui extorqueat, *to wring*.

Qui, quae, quod, is used instead of quis, quid in agreement with a substantive, both as an indefinite pronoun with ne, num, si, and as an interrogative; si qui puer loquitur, *if any boy is talking*; qui puer loquitur? *what boy is talking?*

quia, conj., *because*.

quicquam or quidquam, neut. of quisquam, *anything*.

quid, see quis.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam, a certain, *a certain one*.

quidem, adv., *indeed*; ne . . . quidem, *not even*; optime quidem valeo, *I am well enough*; et quidem permultos (medicos consului), *indeed I have consulted a great many doctors*.

quidquam, neut. of quisquam, *anything*.

quidquid, neut. of quisquis, *anything whatsoever*; quidquid auri est, *whatever gold there is*.

quies (quiētis), fem., *quiet, rest*. quiesco, quiēvi, quiētus (3), *to be at rest, to repose*.

quiētus, adj., *quiet*.

quin, *but that, who . . . not, why . . . not*; see p. 293.

quindēcim, fifteen; quindecimviri, *the fifteen commissioners*.

quingenti, -ae, -a, *five hundred*.

quinquaginta, indeclinable, *fifty*.

quinque, *five*.

quintus, adj., *fifth*.

quis, quis, quid, is either (1) an interrogative pronoun, *who? what?* Quis venit? *who is coming?* Rogo quid faciat, *I ask what he is doing*, or *I ask why he is doing this*. Quid cibi est? *what food is there?* Quid morbi est? *what malady is it?* Quid? *why?*

(2) An indefinite pronoun, *any one, anything, any*. In this sense quis, quid are used with num, si, ne, cum, and nisi. Num quis venit? *is any one coming?* Si quid dicit, *if he says anything*. Rogo num quid faciat, *I ask whether he is doing anything*. Si quid est periculi, *if there is any danger*.

As to when qui is used instead of quis, see under qui.

quisnam, *who?* quonam modo, *in what possible way?*

quispiam, *some or other, anybody*.

quisquam, *any one*, used only in negative sentences.

quisque, *each*.

quisquis, *whosoever*.

quo, either (1) abl. of qui, used with comparatives, meaning *in order that*, see p. 283; or (2) adv., *whither? where?*

quoad, adv., *so far as*.

quod, adv., *because*; quod sciam, *so far as I know*. In XII. diu est quod, *is it a long time that or since?*

quomīnus, *in order that . . . not*, see p. 290.

quomōdo, *how?*

quondam, adv., *some time ago; sometimes*.

quoniam, *since*.

quōque, *also*.

quot, *how many? as many as*; quot pueri? *how many boys?*

quotannis, *every year*.

**quotidie** (also cotidie), adv., *every-day*.

**quoties**, *how often? as often as*.

quotus, -a, -um; quoto die, *on what days? at what intervals?*

Radix (radicis), *a root*.

rado, rasi rasum (3), *to shave*.

ramus (2), *a branch*.

rāpio, rapui, raptus, rapēre, *to snatch*.

rapuit, from rapio.

raserat, see rado.

**rātio** (rationis), *system, skill; ratione et consilio, by skilful strategy*.

rātus, partic. of reor, *having thought, thinking*.

recēdo, recessi, recessum (3), *to withdraw, retire, go away, fall upon, devolve*.

recīdo, recīdi, recasus (3), *to fall, to throw oneself upon*.

**recipio**, recēpi, receptus, recipēre, *to get back, receive again; se recipere, to betake himself again*.

recognitio (-ōnis), *recognition*.

recondo, recondidi, reconditus (3), *to put back, to hide*.

recordor (1), dep., *to remember, governs gen.*

rectene, recte and ne, recte, *rightly; recte valeo, I am quite well*.

recumbo, recubui (3), *to lie down again, to lie down*.

recupēro, *to recover*.

recurro, recurri, recursum (3), *to run back*.

recurvus, adj., *curved*.

**recūso** (1), *to object, make objections, refuse; non recusavit quominus venirem, he did not object to my coming*.

redactus, see redigo.

**reddidi**, from reddo.

**reddo**, reddīdi, redditus (3), *to give back, return, render, turn into, translate*.

**redeo**, redii, redire (see eo, p. 344), *to go back; return*.

redūces, from redux.

**redūco**, reduxi, rednetus (3), *to bring back, lead back, draw back*.

redux (redūcis), adj., *returning*.

refēro, rettūli, relatus, referre, *to bring back, relate, tell, see p. 338*.

**reficio**, refēci, refectus, reficēre, *to repair, refit*.

**rēgam**, from rego.

**rēgem**, from rex.

**regina** (1), *queen*.

rēgio (regiōnis), *part, region, district*.

regius, adj., *belonging to the king, royal; regia merces, a bribe from the king*.

regnum, *kingdom*.

rego, rexi, rectus (3), *to rule, command*.

rei, may be either from res or from reus.

reicio, reiēcī, reiectus, reicēre, *to throw back*.

**reipublicae**, from respublica.

religio (religiōnis), *religion, religious scruples*.

religo (1), *to tie, fasten*.

**relinquo**, reliqui, relictus (3), *to leave*.

reliqui may be either reliqui from relinquo, or reliqui from reliquus.

reliquus, adj., *remaining, left over*.

remāneo, remansi, *to remain, survive*.

remansit, from remaneo.

reminiscor (3), dep., *to remember*.

remitto, remisi, remissus (3), *to send back*.

remōtus, partic. of removeo, *remote, distant*.

**renuntio** (1), *to bring back word, declare, announce*.

repente, adv., *suddenly*.

repentinus, adj., *sudden. [to find]*.

**rēpērio**, repperi or rēperi, repertus,

**repĕto**, **repetivi**, **repetitus** (3), *to reseek, to go back again.*

**requies** (**requiĕtis**), *fem., rest, repose.*

**requiro**, **requisivi**, **requisitus** (3), *to require, ask for again, to look for.*

**res** (5), *thing, affair, matter, event, fact, result, prospect, proposal, possession; res bona, property; res capitalis, a capital charge; rebus Balbi favet, he favours the cause of Balbus; hoc quod res est, that which is the fact (the truth).*

**rescribo**, **rescripsi**, **rescriptus** (3), *to write back.*

**resĭdeo**, **resĭdi** (2), *to sit.*

**resolvo**, **resolvi**, **resolĕtus** (3), *to untie, unbind, loosen.*

**respondeo**,  **respondi**,  **responsum** (2), *to answer.*

**respublica** (**res** and **publica**), *the public interest, the state.*

**restituō**, **restitui**, **restitutus** (3), *to restore.*

**resto**, **restĭti** (1), *to remain.*

**retĭneo**, **retinni**, **retentus**, *to keep.*

**retrāho**, **retraxi**, **retractus**, *to draw back.*

**retro**, *adv., back.*

**rettulisset**, *see refero.*

**reus**, *adj., accused, guilty; reus fit, is put on his trial.*

**revello**, **revelli**, **revulsus** (3), *to tear out, tear away, pull out.*

**revertor**, **reversus**, *dep., to return, come back.*

**revincio**, **revinxi**, **revinctus** (4), *to tie.*

**revĭso** (3), *to revisit.*

**revŏlo** (1), *to fly back.*

**rex** (**rĕgis**), *a king.*

**Rhĕnus** (2), *the Rhine.*

**Rhodānus** (2), *the Rhone.*

**Rhŏdius**, *adj., belonging to Rhodes.*

**rideo**, **rĭsi**, **rĭsum**, *to laugh, to laugh at.*

**risus** (4), *laughter, a smile.*

**ritus** (4), *fashion, manner; avium ritu, like birds.*

**rŏgo** (1), *to ask, ask for; multa rogat, he asks many questions.*

**Roma** (1), *Rome.*

**Romānus**, *adj., Roman.*

**ruber**, **rubra**, **rubrum**, *red.*

**rumpo**, **rupi**, **ruptus** (3), *to break, burst.*

**rursus**, *adv., again.*

**rus** (**ruris**), *country; rure, in the country, from the country; rus, acc., to the country; rura, the green fields, the country.*

**rustĭcus**, *adj., country; rusticum deversorium, a country inn.*

**Sacerdos** (**sacerdŏtis**), *priest.*

**sacrarium**, *shrine, chapel.*

**saecŭlum**, *an age.*

**saepe**, *adv., often; saepius, more often, rather often, several times; saepissime, very often.*

**saeta** (1), *a hair (of an animal).*

**saevio**, **saevii**, *to rage, to vent one's rage; saeviens, raging.*

**saevus**, *adj., fierce, cruel.*

**salto** (1), *to dance.*

**salus** (**salŭtis**), *fem., health, safety, life; saluti erat nobis, he saved us; salutem dicere, to send greeting.*

**salŭto** (1), *to salute, to bid good-day. salve, imperat. of salveo, Hail! I hope you are well!*

**salveo**, *I am well; satis iam salveo, i.e. that's enough in the way of greetings.*

**salvus**, *adj., safe, well.*

**sancio**, **sanxi**, **sanctus**, *to sanction.*

**sane**, *adv. In XIII. sane ut tenes, how well you remember, to be sure!*

**sanguis** (**sanguinis**), *masc., blood.*

**sanies** (5), *matter (in a wound).*

**sanĭtas** (**sanitātis**), *health.*

**săpiens** (**sapientis**), *adj., wise; sapiens, a wise man.*

sapienter, adv., *wisely*; sapien-  
tissime, *very wisely*.

sapientia (1), *wisdom*.

sarcio, sarsi, sartus, *to repair*,  
*make good*.

sātis, adv., *enough, well*; satis  
agere, *to have enough (or more*  
*than enough) to do*.

satur, satūra, saturum, adj., *sated*,  
*having eaten enough*.

savior (1), dep., *to kiss*.

scalmus (2), *a thole-pin (instead of*  
*a rowlock to hold the oar)*; *scalum nullum videt, he sees*  
*not even a thole-pin (much less a*  
*boat)*.

scienter, adv., *skilfully, scientifi-*  
*cally*.

scientia (1), *science, knowledge*.

scilicet, *you see*.

scio, scivi and scii, scitum, *to*  
*know*.

sciscitor, sciscitatus, dep., *to in-*  
*quire, ask, question*.

scissus, from scindo.

scribo, scripsi, scriptus (3), *to*  
*write*.

scriptor (scriptoris), *writer*.

se, or sese, *himself, herself, itself*,  
*themselves*.

secum, se and cum.

secundus, adj., *second*.

secūrus, adj., *without anxiety for*.

secutus, from sequor.

sed, *but*.

sedēcim, *sixteen*.

sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, *to sit*.

sēdes (sedis), *a seat*.

sēges (segētis), fem., *a cornfield, a*  
*crop*.

segnior, comp. of segnis, *dull*.

segnis (segnis), adj., *sluggish, lazy*,  
*dull*.

segniter, adv., *sluggishly, lazily*.

sēmel, adv., *once*; semel et saepius,  
*once and again*.

semper, *always*.

senecta (1), *old age*.

senectus (senectūtis), fem., *old*  
*age*.

sēnex (senis), *an old man*.

sensim, adv., *gradually*.

sententia (1), *opinion, decision*.

sentio, sensi, *to feel, observe, notice*,  
*be aware of*; idem sentio, *I*  
*agree*.

septem, *seven*.

septimus, adj., *seventh*.

septuaginta, *seventy*.

Sequāna, *the Seine*.

sequor, secūtus, dep. (3), *to follow*.

serius, adj., *serious*.

sermo (sermōnis), *talk, conversa-*  
*tion, the word*.

serpens (serpentis), fem., *a serpent*,  
*snake*.

serrūla (1), *a small saw*.

Sertōrius, Sertorius (a Roman  
general).

sērus, adj., *too late, late*.

servitus (servitūtis), fem., *slavery*.

servo (1), *to keep, preserve*.

servus (2), *a slave, servant*.

sex, *six*.

si, *if*.

Sibyllinus, adj., *belonging to the*  
*Sibyl, Sibylline*.

sic, so. sicco (1), *to dry*.

Sicilia (1), *Sicily*.

Sicūlus, adj., *Sicilian*.

sicut, sicūti, *just as*.

significo (1), *to signify, indicate*,  
*explain, give exact instructions*.

signum, *a sign*; signa, *military*  
*ensigns, standards*.

silentium, *silence*.

silva (1), *a wood*.

sīmilis, adj., *like*; takes dat. or  
gen. (dat. rather of the thing,  
gen. of the person).

sīmul, adv., *together, at the same*  
*time*; simul atque, *at the same*  
*time as, as soon as*.

simulatio (-onis), *pretence*.

simūlo (1), *to pretend*.

sin, *but if*.

- sine**, prep. with abl., *without*; or imperat. of **sino**.  
**singŭlus**, adj., *each, separate, different*.  
**sinister**, **sinistra**, **sinistrum**, *left*; **sinistra**, *the left hand*.  
**sino** (3), *to allow*; **sine sciam** (in XXV.), *allow me to know, let me know, tell me*.  
**sinus** (4), *fold*; *bosom*; *bay*.  
**sis**, 2nd person subj., pres. of **sum**; or (= **si vis**) *if you please*.  
**sitio**, *to be thirsty*.  
**situs** (4), *neglect, decay*.  
**sobrius**, adj., *sober*.  
**soccus** (2), *a shoe*.  
**sōcius** (2), *friend, ally*.  
**Sōcrātes** (**Socratis**), *Socrates* (a Greek philosopher).  
**sol** (**sōlis**), *the sun*.  
**sōleo**, perf. **solitus sum**, *to be accustomed, to be wont*.  
**solito**, from **solitum**, *than usual*.  
**solitudo** (**solitudinis**), *solitude, or a solitude, a desert place*.  
**sollicitudo** (**sollicitudinis**), *concern, anxiety, solicitude*.  
**sōlor** (1), dep., *to console, soothe, relieve*.  
**sōlus** (gen. **solius**, dat. **solī**), *only, alone*.  
**solutus**, from **solvo**.  
**solvo**, **solvi**, **solūtus** (3), *to loose, cut loose, put off* (a ship), *pay a sum of money*.  
**somnium**, *a dream*.  
**somnus** (2), *sleep*.  
**sonitus** (4), *a sound*.  
**sonōrus**, adj., *sonorous, loud sounding*.  
**sōnus** (2), *a sound*.  
**sordidus**, adj., *degrading*.  
**sōror** (**sorōris**), *sister*.  
**sospes** (**sospitis**), adj., *safe and sound*.  
**spargo**, **sparsi**, **sparsus** (3), *to scatter, cover*.  
**spatior** (1), dep., *to walk about*.  
**spātium**, *time*.  
**spēcies** (5), *a kind*.  
**specimen** (**speciminis**), *specimen, example*.  
**spectātor** (**spectatōris**), *spectator*.  
**spectātus**, adj., *tried, tested, proved*.  
**specto** (1), *to look on*.  
**spēcus** (4), fem., *a cave*.  
**spēro** (1), *to hope, hope for, expect*.  
**spes** (5), *hope*.  
**spiritus** (4), *breath, spirit*.  
**squaleo** (2), *to be foul*.  
**stadium**, *a race-course*.  
**stātīm**, adv., *at once*.  
**statuo**, **statui**, **statūtus** (3), *to determine, settle*.  
**stercus** (**stercōris**), *dung, manure*.  
**sterno**, **strāvi**, **stratus** (3), *to spread*.  
**stirps** (**stirpis**), *root, splinter of wood*.  
**sto**, **stēti**, **stātum** (1), *to stand*; cum **Sertorio stare** (*to stand with S.*), *to take Sertorius' part or side*.  
**stomāchor** (1), dep., *to be angry*.  
**stragŭlum**, *coverlet*.  
**stratus**, from **sterno**.  
**studeo** (2), *to study, desire, be anxious*.  
**studiose**, adv., *regularly, zealously*.  
**studium**, *study, pursuit*; **studia**, *party-spirit, partisanship*.  
**stultitia** (1), *folly*.  
**stultus**, adj., *foolish*.  
**stupefacio**, **stupefeci**, **stupefactus**, **stupefacere**, *to astonish*.  
**stupor** (**stupōris**), *folly*.  
**suadeo**, **suasi**, **suasum**, *to persuade, with dat.*.  
**sub**, prep., with abl. (and acc.), *under*; **sub adventu**, *just before the approach*; in XL. **sub pericula missus**, *sent to meet dangers*; **sub Tartara**, *to Tartarus*.  
**subdidit**, from **subdo**.  
**subdo**, **subdidi**, **subdītus** (3), *to put oneself under*.



subdōlus, adj., *cunning, deceitful*.  
 subdūco, -dūxi, -ductus (3), *to remove*; subducito te, *retire, withdraw*.

subeo, subii, subitum, subire, *to enter*.

subīcio, subiēci, subiectus, subicere, *to subject, conquer*; gloria subiectae Galliae, *the glory of having subjected Gaul, of the conquest of Gaul*.

subīto, adv., *suddenly*.

sublatu, see tollo.

subornandus, *must be provided, instigated*.

subvénio, subvēni, subventum, *to come to somebody's assistance, to help*; subvenio tibi, *I help you*.

succēdo, successi (3); si non successerit, *if all does not go well, i.e. if I don't succeed*.

succurro, succurri (3), *to occur*.

succus (2), *sap.*

sufficio, suffēci, suffectum, sufficere, *to be sufficient, enough*.

suffragium, *vote*.

suggēro, suggessi, suggestus (3), *to bring up, carry up*.

suggestum, *platform*.

Sulmonenses, *the people of Sulmo* (a place in Italy).

summa (1), *sum, total*.

summus, adj., *highest, greatest*; in summa quercu (on the oak where it is highest, *i.e.*), *at the top of the oak*; summo loco natus, *born in a high position, of noble birth*.

sūmo, sumpsi, sumptus (3), *to take*.

sumptus (4), *expense*.

sūper, prep. with acc. or abl., *above, over*.

superbia (1), *pride, arrogance*.

superior (-oris), adj., *higher, former*.

supēro (1), *to exceed, surpass*.

superstes (superstitis), adj., *surviving, saved*.

superstitem, from superstes.

supērus, adj., *above*.

suppono, supposui, suppositus (3), *to put under*.

supra, adv., *above, over, on the top*; prep. with acc., *above, beyond*.

suprēmus, adj., *last*.

surdus, adj., *deaf*.

surgo, surrexi, surrectum (3), *to rise, get up*.

surrexi, from surgo.

suscipio, suscepī, susceptus, suscipere, *to undertake, take charge of, undertake the charge of*.

suscito (1), *to arouse, excite*.

suspendo, suspendi, suspensus (3), *to hang, suspend*.

suspicio (-ōnis), *suspicion*.

suspīcor (1), verb with passive form and active meaning, *to suspect*.

sustulit, see tollo.

sutor (sūtōris), *shoemaker, cobbler*.

suus, adj., *his own, etc.*; sui, *his (her or their) friends and relations*.

Syracusānus, adj., *Syracusan*.

T. as the initial of a name stands for *Titus*.

taberna (1), *inn, hotel, tavern, shop*.

tabūla (1), *a tablet*.

tāceo, *to be silent*.

Tacnārum, a promontory in Laconia in the south of Greece.

taeter, taetra, taetrum, *dirty, foul*.

talentum, *a talent*.

talīs, adj., *such, of such a kind*.

tam, adv., *so, so much*; tam . . . quam, *as well . . . as, both . . . and*.

tāmen, *however*.

tamquam si, *as if*.

tandem, *at last*.

tanti (gen. of tantus), *for such a price*; tanti . . . quanti, *for such a price as, for as much as*.

**tantum**, adv., *so, so much, only*; in **tantum**, *equally, proportionately*; **tantum est militum**, *there are so many soldiers*.

**tantus**, adj., *such, so great, so much*; **tanti**, *for as much* (gen. of price).

**tardo** (1), *to make slow, retard*.

**tardus**, adj., *slow*; **tardius**, *slower than it might, rather slowly*.

**Tarentinus**, adj., *inhabitant of Tarentum*; **Tarentini quidam iuvenes**, *some young men of Tarentum*.

**Tartārus** (2), plur. **Tartara**, *Tartarus, i.e. the infernal regions, the lower world*.

**taurus** (2), *a bull*.

**te**, acc. of **tu**.

**tecum**, *te and cum*.

**tēges** (**tegētis**), fem., *a mat.*

**tēgo**, **texi**, **tectus** (3), *to cover*.

**tela** (1), *a loom*; or plur. of **telum**.

**tellus** (**tellūris**), fem., *the earth*.

**telum**, *a dart, javelin*; **tela**, *arms, weapons*.

**temēre**, adv., *at random, anywhere*.

**tempēro** (1), *to spare, refrain*.

**tempestas** (**tempestatis**), *weather*.

**templum**, *a temple*.

**tempus** (**tempōris**), *time*; **tempore**, *at the proper time*; **tempora** (in XLVI.), *the temples* (of the forehead).

**temulentus**, *intoxicated, drunk*.

**teneo**, **tenui**, **tentus**, *to hold*.

**tenēre**, adv., *tenderly, dearly*.

**tenūis**, adj., *thin*.

**tergum**, *a back, the rear of the army*; **a tergo**, *in the rear*.

**terminus** (2), *end*.

**terra** (1), *earth, land, ground, floor*.

**terreo**, **terrui**, **terrītus**, *to frighten*.

**terrestris**, adj., *belonging to the land, land*.

**terrificus**, adj., *terrible*.

**tertius**, adj., *third*.

**testis** (**testis**), *a witness*.

**texo**, **texui**, **textus** (3), *to weave, plait, build*.

**textilis**, adj., *woven*.

**Themistōcles** (-is), *Themistocles* (a great Greek statesman).

**Tibēris** (3), *the Tiber*.

**tibi**, *from tu*.

**timeo** (2), *to fear*.

**tīmīdus**, *timid*.

**tīmor** (**tīmōris**), *fear*.

**tinctus**, *from tinguo*.

**tinguo**, **tinxi**, **tinctus** (3), *to dip, to dye*.

**tiro** (**tirōnis**), *a beginner*.

**tollo**, **sustūli**, **sublātus**, **tollēre**, *to raise, lift, remove out of the way*.

**tondeo**, **totondi**, **tonsus**, *to cut the hair, shave*.

**tonsor** (**tonsōris**), *hair-cutter, barber*.

**tonstricūla** (1), *a little female barber*.

**tonstrīna** (1), *a hair-cutter's shop*.

**torreo**, **torrui**, **tostus**, *to roast*.

**tōrus** (2), *muscle*.

**tot**, *so many*.

**totonderit**, *from tondeo*.

**tōtus** (gen. **totius**), adj., *the whole*.

**trādo**, **tradīdi**, **tradītus** (3), *to give over, hand over, deliver, relate, recount*; in XVI. **quae tradebantur**, *the things which were being delivered to him, the lessons he was being given*; **traditur caecus fuisse**, *it is related that he was blind*.

**tradūco**, **traduxi**, **traductus** (3), *to transport, carry across*.

**traho**, **traxi**, **tractus** (3), *to draw, bring, drag*.

**traicio**, **traieci**, **traiectus**, **traicēre**, *to put across, ship over, cross*.

**trans**, prep. with acc., *across*.

**transeo**, **transivi** and **transii**, **transītum**, *to go across, to cross, to peruse*.

**transfēro**, **trans** and **fero**, *to transfer, transplant, move, shift*.

**transfigo**, **transfixi**, **transfixus** (3),  
to pierce, *transfix*.

**transfixit**, from **transfigo**.

**transitūri**, *when about to cross*,  
from **transeo**.

**translatus**, see **transfero**.

**transporto** (**trans**, *across*, and  
**porto**, *I carry*), to put across,  
convey across.

**trahit**, from **traho**.

**tremō**, **tremui** (3), to tremble.

**tres**, **tria**, three.

**tribūnus** (2), *tribune* (a Roman  
official); **tribunus militum**, an  
officer.

**triduum**, a space of three days.

**triennium**, a space of three years.

**triginta**, thirty.

**Trinacrius**, adj., *belonging to Trin-*  
*acria* (another name of Sicily).

**tristis**, adj., *sad, gloomy*.

**trochilus** (2), a wren.

**Troia** (1), *Troy*.

**trūcido** (1), *murder*. **tu**, *thou, you*.

**tuli**, see **fero**. **tum**, *then*.

**tumultus** (4), *tumult, confusion*.

**tunc**, *then*. **tune**, *i.e. tu and -nē*.

**tunica** (1), a tunic, coat.

**turba** (1), a crowd.

**turbo** (1), to disturb, put to flight.

**turpis**, adj., *base, disgraceful*.

**turpiter**, adv. of **turpis**, *basely, in*  
*disgrace*.

**turris** (**turris**), tower.

**tutus**, adj., *safe*.

**tuus**, *thy, your*.

**tyrannus** (2), *tyrant*.

**Tyrius**, adj., *Tyrian* (belonging to  
Tyre).

**Uber** (**ubēris**), adj., *fruitful*.

**ubi**, *where? when? or where, when*  
(not interrogative).

**ubicunque**, *wherever*.

**ullus** (gen. **ullius**), adj., *any*.

**ultimus**, adj., *very distant*.

**ultra**, adv., *further, any more*.

**ultra**, adv., *of one's own accord*.

**una**, adv., *together*.

**unda** (1), *wave*.

**unde**, adv., *from where, whence*.

**undēcim**, *eleven*.

**undique**, adv., *on all sides*.

**unguentum**, *scent, perfume*.

**unguis** (**unguis**), masc., a nail,  
*claw*.

**universus**, adj., *universa, every-*  
*thing without exception, the*  
*whole*; **universi**, *all* (without  
exception).

**unquam**, *ever*.

**unus**, adj. (gen. **unius**), *one, alone*;  
**unus atque alter**, *one and another*,  
*one or two, two or three*.

**urbānus**, adj., *having to do with*  
*the city*; **res urbanae**, *city*  
*affairs, the doings of the city*.

**urbs** (**urbis**), a city.

**urgeo**, **ursi**, to press on (something).

**usque**, **usque ad**, up to, down to.

**usus** (4), *the use*.

**ut**, conj. (1), *that, in order to*;  
(2), *that, so that*; (3), *as*; **ut**  
**potero**, *as I shall be able, as well*  
*as I can*.

**uter**, **utra**, **utrum**, *which of two*  
*people?* **utrum**, introducing a  
double direct question, is not  
translated in English, but when  
it introduces an indirect double  
question it is translated *whether*.  
**Utrum hoc verum an falsum**  
**est?** *is this true or false?* **rogat**  
**me utrum hoc verum an falsum**  
**sit**, *he asks me whether, etc.*

**uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque**, *each*  
(of two).

**uti**, infin. of **utor**.

**utilis**, e, adj. (comp. **utilior**, sup.  
**utilissimus**), *useful*.

**utique**, *at any rate*.

**utor**, **usus sum** (3), *to use, to*  
*handle*; the verb is active in  
meaning though passive in form.  
It takes the ablative.

**utroque**, adv., *in either direction*.

utrum, *whether*; see *uter*.  
 uxor (uxōris), *wife*.

Vacūus, adj., *free from*.

vagina (1), *sheath*.

vāgus, adj., *wandering*.

valē, imperat. of valeo, *farewell!*

valens, *strong, powerful*.

vāleo, valui, valitum, *I am well*.

valetudo (valetudinis), *health*.

validus, adj., *strong*.

variūus, adj., *different*.

vastitudo (-dinis), *enormous size*.

vasto (1), *to lay waste, to waste*.

vastus, adj., *huge, immense*.

vecordia (1), *madness*.

vectigal (vectigālis), *a tax*.

vectus, from *veho*.

vehementer, adv., *hard, eagerly*.

veho, veki, vectus (3), *to carry*;

vehor, *I am carried, I ride*.

velim and vellem, from *volo*.

velle, infin. of *volo*.

velox, adj. (velōcis, comp. velocior), *quick*; velocius, adv., *more quickly*.

velum, *a sail*.

velut, conj., *as if, like*; velut hostias, *as if they were victims, as they do victims*.

venālis, adj., *for sale*; libri venales, *books for sale*.

venātus (4), *hunting*.

vendo, vendidi, venditus (3), *to sell*.

venēnum, *poison, a poisonous drug*.

venerandus, adj., *honoured, revered*.

venerim, from *venio*.

venia (1), *leave, permission, pardon*.

vēnio, vēni, ventum, *to come*.

vēnor (1), dep., *to hunt*.

venter (ventris), *stomach, belly*.

ventum est, perf. pass. of *venio*, used impersonally, *people came*.

ventus (2), *wind*.

venundo (-dedi, -datum), *to sell*.

ver (veris), neut., *spring* (the season).

verber (verbēris), neut., *a blow*.

verbum, *a word*.

vēreor, veritus, dep., *to fear*;  
 vereor ut (with subj.), *to fear that . . . not*.

veritas (veritātis), *truth*.

veritus, from *vereor*.

vero, adv., *but, however*; in transl. VII. tu vero, *what about yourself?*

verso (1), *to turn about*.

versus, prep. with acc., *towards*; or partic. of *verto*; or versus (4), *a verse*.

vertex (verticis), *the top*; a vertice, *from on high*.

verto, verti, versus (3), *turn, change*; se vertere, *to turn themselves, i.e. to turn their backs and flee*.

verum, *the truth*; or adv., *but*.

vērus, adj., *true*; veri similis, *like truth, probable*.

vescor (3), dep., *to feed, eat*; governs the abl.

vespère, or vespēri, *in the evening*.

vester, vestra, vestrum, *your* (plural).

vestigium, *a trace*; the sole of the foot.

vestio, *to clothe*.

vestis (vestis), *clothing, clothes*.

vestitus (4), *robes*.

vestri, from tu or vester.

vētus (vetēris), adj., *old, ancient*.

vi, from vis, omni vi, *with every kind of effort, with all one's might*.

via, *way, road, street*.

viātor (viatōris), *traveller*.

vibro (1), *to shake, brandish*.

vici, from vinco.

vicinus (2), *a neighbour*.

victor (victōris), *a conqueror*.

victoria, *victory*.

victum and victurus, from vinco or from vivo.

**victus** (4), *life, living, food*; or partic. of **vinco**.

**videlicet**, adv., *you see, of course, namely*.

**video**, **vidi**, **visus**, *to see*; **vide ut**, *see that you, mind you*; **videor**, *to seem, appear*; *to seem good, to be determined*.

**vigil** (**vigilis**), adj., *awake*; subst., *a guard*.

**vigiliae**, *guards, a watch*.

**vigilo** (1), *to be wide awake, watchful*.

**viginti**, indeclinable, *twenty*.

**vigor** (**vigōris**), *vigour*.

**vilitas** (**vilitātis**), *cheapness*.

**villa** (1), *a country house*.

**vincio**, **vinxi**, **vinctus**, *to bind*.

**vinco**, **vici**, **victus**, *to conquer*.

**vinctus**, from **vincio**.

**vinculum**, *a chain*.

**vinum**, *wine*.

**vinxit**, from **vincio**.

**vir** (**virī**), *a man, a great man*.

**vires**, plur. of **vis**, *strength, powers*.

**virgo** (**virgīnis**), *a girl*.

**virtus** (**virtūtis**), fem., *virtue, bravery, merits*.

**vis** (acc. **vim**, abl. **vi**, pl. **vires**, **virium**), *violence, force, strength, forcible intervention*; or 2nd pers. sing. ind. pres. of **volo**.

**viscera** (**viscerum**), neut. plur., *flesh*.

**visne**, **vis** and **-ne**.

**viso**, **visi**, **visus** (3), *to visit*; or

**viso** may be abl. of **visus**, the partic. of **video**.

**visum**, from **video**; or **visum** (2), *a sight, apparition*.

**visurus**, from **video**.

**vita** (1), *life*.

**vitis** (**vitis**), *a vine*.

**vitium**, *a fault, vice*.

**vito** (1), *to avoid, shun*.

**vitreus**, adj., *made of glass*; **vitrea**, *things made of glass, glass*.

**vivax** (**vivācis**), adj., *vigorous, quick*.

**vivo**, **vixi**, **victum** (3), *to live*.

**vivus**, adj., *living, alive, during life*.

**vix**, *scarcely*.

**vixi**, from **vivo**.

**vocatis**, from **voco**.

**voco** (1), *to call, summon*.

**volet**, fut. of **volo**.

**volo**, **volui**, **velle**, *to wish, want, be willing*; see p. 340; *quid sibi vult? what does it mean?*

**volūcris** (**volucris**), *a bird*.

**volūmen** (**voluminis**), *a roll*.

**voluntas** (**voluntatis**), *will, good-will*.

**voluptas** (**voluptātis**), *pleasure*.

**vos**, plur. of **tu**.

**vox** (**vōcis**), *voice, remark, saying*; *magna voce*, *in a loud voice, loudly*.

**vulnēro** (1), *to wound*.

**vulnus** (**vulnēris**), *a wound*.

**vulpes** (**vulpis**), *fox*.

**vult**, from **volo**.

**vultus** (4), *look, expression*.



## ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.

Words printed in *Italics* in the exercises are not to be translated into Latin.

*Obs.*—*A figure after a word denotes the declension or conjugation to which the word belongs.* m., f., n. stand respectively for masculine, feminine, neuter. i.e. stands for *id est*, that is. e.g. stands for *exempli gratia*, for instance.

**A great many friends**, *multi amīci*.

**a little** (p. 8), *paulo*.

**abandoned** (i.e. wicked), *perditus*.

**ability**, *ingēnium*.

**able**: to be able, *posse*, p. 335.

**about**, when it means "concerning," *de*, with abl.

**about to**, sign of the future; about to die, *moriturus*.

**above**, *supra* (adv.)

**absence**: in my absence, *me absente* (i.e. I being absent).

**absorb**: to be absorbed, *inhaerere* (*inhaesi, inhaesum*), see Trans. I.

**accompany**, *cōmitari*, deponent; accompanied by Caesar, *comitatus Caesare*.

**accuse**, *accūsō* (1).

**acquit**, *absolvēre, absolvi, absolūtus* (3).

**admire**, *admirari*, deponent.

**adopt**: to adopt a resolution or plan, *consilium inire* (*in-eo*; for *eo* see p. 344).

**advance**, *prōgrēdior*, deponent; *progressus, progredi*, p. 60.

**advise**, give advice, *mōnēre* (2); I

give you this one piece of advice, *hoc unum te moneo*; I advise you to come, *moneo te ut venias*; I advise you not to come, *moneo te ne venias*.

**affair**, *res* (5).

**affirm**, *dīco* (3).

**afraid**, to be, *tīmēre* (2).

**after** (prep.), *post*, with acc. After saying this, *hoc dicto*.

**again**, *rursus*.

**against** my will, *me invīto* (i.e. I being unwilling); **against**, *contra*, prep. with accus.

**agree**, *īdem sentire*.

**aid**, *auxilium*; he came to the aid of Labienus, *auxilio venit Labieno* (dat.)

**alarm**, to, *perterrēre* (2); **alarmed**, *perterritus*. alas! heu!

**Alexander**, *Alexander* (*Alexandri*).

**alive**, *vīvus, -a, -um*.

**all**, *omnis, omne*; by all means! *fiat!* (i.e. let it be so!); all of us returned, *omnes rediimus* (we all returned).

**alliance**, *societas* (*-tātis*).

**allies, socii** (plural).

**allow, patior**, deponent; *passus, pati*, p. 60. I am allowed, *licet mihi* (i.e. it is allowed me).

**alone, solus (solius)**.

**already, iam**.

**also, etiam**.

**always, semper**.

**ambassador, lēgātus** (2).

**amuse, dēlecto** (1).

**ancestors, māiōres** (gen. *maiorum*).

**anchor, ancōra** (1).

**ancient, antiquus**.

**and, et**.

**angry, I am**; or, I get angry, *irascor, irātus*, deponent (3).

**another, alter, altēra, alterum**; *alius*.

**answer**: to answer, make or give answer, *respondēre, respondi, responsum* (2); I answer you, *tibi respondeo*; have you given any answer? *num quid respondisti?*

**anxious**: I am anxious that, *hoc mihi curae est ut . . .* I am anxious to see, *mihi curae est ut videam*.

**any, any one, anything**. (i.) After *ne, num, si, nisi, cum*, use *quis, qua, quid*, for *any one or anything*. *Num quis aderat?* Was any one present? But use *qui, quae, quod* (instead of *quis, qua, quid*), for *any* if there is a substantive agreeing with it. *Num qui nauta aderat?* Was there any sailor present? (ii.) Otherwise (i.e. when there is no *ne, num, si, nisi, or cum*) for any one, use *quisquam*; anything, *quidquam* (or *quicquam*); any, *ullus* (gen. *ullius*, dat. *ulli*).<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Note especially the use of the neuter *quid* and *quidquam* with the partitive genitive: If there is any news, *si quid novi est*; he denied that there was any danger, *negavit quidquam esse periculi* (anything of danger).

Observe that *quisquam* and *ullus* occur only in negative sentences, or questions implying a negative answer.

**any longer, diutius**.

**appoint, constituo, -ui, -ūtus** (3).

I appoint a day for the conference, *constituo diem colloquio*. I appoint Labienus to the command of the legion, *Labienum legioni praeficio* (*praefeci, praefectus*) (3); I appoint Caius as governor of the city, *Gaium urbi praeficio*.

**approach**: the approach, *adventus* (4); to approach, *ādīre* (*ad-eo*; for *eo* see p. 344). I approach the king, *ad rēgem adeo*.

**Ariovistus, Ariovistus** (2).

**arms, arma** (*armorum*), neut. pl.

**army, exercitus** (4).

**arrival, adventus** (4); on Caesar's arrival, *adventu Caesaris*.

**arrive at, pervenire ad** with accus.

**art, ars** (*artis*), f.

**as, ut**; as soon as, *simul atque*; as usual, *ut fit*; for as much as, *tanti quanti* (genitives of price). As far as I can, *quantum possum*.<sup>1</sup>

**Asia, Asia** (1).

**ask** (a question), *rōgare* (1); ask or ask for, *pōto, petivi*, and *petii* (3). I ask for help, *auxilium peto*; I asked (or put) him many questions, *multa eum rogavi*; I asked Caius his opinion, *Gaium sententiam rogavi*; I asked him to come, *rogavi eum ut veniret*.

**asleep, to be, dormire** (4).

**assist, subvenire** (*-vēni, -ventum*) (4), with dative.

**assistance, auxilium**; I come to the assistance of a friend, *amico* (dat.) *auxilio venio*.

**at**: at home, *dōmi*; at last, *tandem*; at once, *statim*; at us, p. 65, *in*

<sup>1</sup> "As" may often be left out, a participle being used in the Latin; we saw him as he ran, *currentem vidimus*; as your king is captured the war is finished, *rege capto confectum est bellum*.



**nos**; at a higher (lower) price, see **price**.

**Athens**, *Athēnae* (1), plural only.

**attack**, *adōrior*, deponent; *adortus*, *adoriri*.

**audacious**, *audax* (*audācis*).

**audacity**, *audācia*.

**aware**: to be or become aware, *sentio*, *sensi*, *sensus* (4).

**away**: to be away, *abesse* (*absum*); he is away from the city, *abest ab urbe*.

**Back**: to give back, *reddere*, *reddidi*, *redditus*.

**backs**, *terga*, neut. pl. (2).

**bad**, *mālus*, comp. *peior*, superl. *peccimus*.

**baggage**, *impēdimenta*, neut. plur. (2).

**banish**, *expellere*, *expūli*, *expulsus* (3).

**barbarians**, *barbāri* (2).

**barber**, see Trans. XI.

**bare**: bare-headed, *aperto capite*.

**base**, *turpis* (*turpis*); the base Catiline, *Catilina*, *homo turpis* (or *turpissimus*).

**battle**, *pugna* (1).

**bear**: to bear, *ferre*, p. 338.

**beautiful**, *pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*.

**because**, *quod*; but the participle is often enough, p. 43, note.

**become**, *fieri*, p. 343. What will become of that boy? *Quid illo pūcro fiet?*

**beech-tree**, *fāgus*, f. [*antea*].

**before**, *ante*, prep. with accus.; adv.,

**beg**, *petēre*, *petivi*, *petitus*; he begs me for the book, *librum a me petit*.

**begin**: I have begun, I began, *coepi*, p. 69.

**beginning**, *inīitium*.

**Belgae**, *Belgae* (plural).

**believe**, *crēdo*, *credidi*, *creditum* (3); I believe you, *credo tibi*; but, I believe that you did it, *credo te fecisse*.

**belongings**: all your belongings, *tua omnia*.

**besiege**, *obsideo*, *obsēdi*, *obsessus* (2).

**best**, *optimus*.

**better**, *mēlior*, *melius*.

**bid**, *iūbeo*, *iussi*, *iussus* (2).

**big**, *magnus*; so big, *tantus*.

**bind**, *vincio*, *vinxi*, *vinctus* (4).

**bird**, *avis* (*avis*), f.

**blame**, *culpo* (1).

**blind**, *caceus*.

**block**, *obsideo*, *obsēdi*, *obsessus* (2).

**board**, to put on board a ship, *in navem imponere*.

**bone**, *os* (*ossis*), n.

**book**, *liber*, *libri*.

**born**, to be, *nascor*, *nasci*, *nātus*.

**both**, *et . . . and*, *et*.

**boy**, *puer* (*pueri*).

**brave**, *fortis*.

**bravely**, *fortiter*; more bravely, *fortius*.

**bravery**, *virtus* (*virtūtis*), f.

**bridge**, *pons* (*pontis*), m.

**bring**, *fēro*, p. 338. I bring (= I lead), *dūco*; I bring down, *dē-dūco*, *deduxi*, *deductus* (3); I bring a charge against, see **charge**.

**Britons**, *Britanni* (2).

**broad**, *lātus*.

**brother**, *frāter* (*fratris*).

**build**, *aedīfīco* (1); a man of large build, *homo magni corpōris* (of large body).

**burden**, *onus* (*onēris*).

**burn**, *incendo*, *incendi*, *incensus* (3).

**business**, *negōtium*.

**but**, *sed*.

**but that**, *quin*.

**buy**, *ēmo*, *ēmi*, *emptus* (3).

**by**, by a person, *a* and *ab* with the ablative; by a thing, the ablative without *a* or *ab*.

**Caesar**, *Caesar* (*Caesāris*).

**Caius**, *Gaius*.

call, *voco* (1).  
 call out, see Trans. XVIII.  
 call together, *convocare*.  
 camp, *castra* (2); plur. (because literally "tents").  
 can, I can, *possum*, p. 335; I cannot, *non possum*.  
 capital charge; to bring a capital charge against Caius, *capitis Gaium accusare*.  
 captive, *captivus* (2).  
 capture, to, *cāpere*. See p. 336.  
 capture of the city, "the captured city," see p. 154.  
 Capua, *Cāpua* (1).  
 carry, *fēro*, p. 338; I carry on war, *bellum gēro*.  
 Carthage, *Carthāgo* (*Carthaginis*), f.  
 Carthaginians, *Carthaginienses* (-ium).  
 Catiline, *Cātilīna*.  
 cattle, *pēcus* (*pecōris*).  
 cause, *res* (5). In Ex. 92, "the cause of Pompeius," see Ex. 91, 6. Cause, meaning reason, *causa*.  
 cavalry, *equitātus* (4).  
 certain, a certain one, *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*.  
 chance, *occāsio* (-onis); by chance, *cāsu*.  
 character, honourable character, *hōnestas* (-tātis), f.; kind character, *humānitas* (-tātis), f. A man of the kindest character, *vir summa humanitate*, or *summae humanitatis*.  
 charge, *impētus* (4); to charge, *impetum facere*; to bring a charge against Caius, *Gaium accusare*.  
 cheap, it is, *parvi est* (gen. of price).  
 choose, *lēgo*, *lēgi*, *lectus* (3), or *dēlēgo*, *dēlēgi*, *delectus*; I choose rather (I prefer), *mālo*, p. 342.  
 Cicero, *Cicēro* (*Cicerōnis*).

citizen, *civis* (*civis*).  
 city, *urbs* (*urbis*).  
 class, *gēnus* (*genēris*), n.  
 clever, *sāpiens*; very clever, *sapientissimus*.  
 cloud, *nūbes* (*nubis*), f.  
 cold, *frīgus* (*frigōris*), n.  
 collect, *collīgo*, *collēgi*, *collectus* (3).  
 come, *vēnio*, *vēni*, *ventum*. It comes about, *fit* (from *fio*); that is how it comes about, *ita fit*; I come back, *redeo*, -ire, -ii.  
 command: he is in command of the city, *prae-est urbi*; he will command the cavalry, *equitatui prae-erit*; he appoints Caius to the command of the army, *Gaium exercitui prae-ficit* (*prae-ficio*, -fēci, -fectus), (3).  
 companion, see comrade.  
 complain, *quēror* (deponent), *questus* (3).  
 compose, *condo*, *condidi*, *conditus* (3).  
 comrade, *cōmes* (*comitis*).  
 concerning, *de*, with abl.  
 condemn, *condemnare* (1); condemn to death, *condemno capitis*; condemn for theft, *condemno furti*.  
 conference, *collōquium*.  
 congratulations: I offer congratulations, *grātūlor*, deponent (1); I congratulate you, *gratulor tibi*.  
 conquer, *vinco*, *vici*, *victus* (3).  
 conqueror, *victor* (*victōris*).  
 consider, *pūto* (1); I am considered, *habeor*.  
 considerable: a considerable sum of money, *aliquantum pecūniae*; a considerable amount of gold, *aliquantum auri*.  
 consul, *consul* (*consulis*).  
 consulship, *consulātus* (4).  
 conversation, *sermo* (*sermōnis*); I get into conversation with a man, *cum homine sermonem confēro*.

**Corinth**, *Cōrinthus*, f.

**corn**, *frumentum* (2).

**corn**: I get corn, *frumento* (1).

**cost**, *sumptus* (4).

**council**, *consilium*.

**country**, as distinguished from the town, *rūs* (*rūris*); to the country, *rus*; in the country, *rure*. One's (native) country, *pātria* (1).

**courage**, *virtūs* (*virtūtis*), f.; a man of no courage, *nulla virtute homo*.

**Crassus**, *Crassus* (2).

**crops**, *frūges* (pl.), f.

**cross**, I cross, *transco*, p. 344.

**crowd**, *turba* (1).

**cruelty**, *crudēlitas* (*crudelitātis*), f.

**cry**, a, *clāmōr* (*clamōris*), m.

**cry out**, *clāmāre*.

**custom**, *mōs* (*mōris*); in accordance with the custom, *more* (abl.) It is the custom of the citizens to eat in the evening, *mos est civium ut vesperi edant*.

**Damage**, to, *nūcēre*, dat.

**danger**, *pēricūlum*.

**dare**, *audco*; the perfect, *ausus sum*, is deponent.

**darkness**, *tēnebrae*, pl.

**dart**, *tēlum*.

**daughter**, *filia*.

**day**, *dies* (5), (in sing. masc. and fem., in plur. masc. only). **Every-day**, *cotidie*; **day by day**, in *dies*; **to-day**, *hōdie*; **at day-break**, *prima luce* (at the first light).

**dead**, *mortuus*.

**dear** (beloved): How dear my country is to me! *Quanto amori patria est mihi!* (*amori*, dat. of *amor*, an object of affection).

**dear** (expensive): corn is dear, *frumentum est magni* (at a high price); very dear, *plurimi*.

**death**, *mors* (*mortis*), f.; **death**, **condemn to**, *condemnare cāpitis*.

**debt**, *aes alienum* (*aeris alieni*).

**deceive**, *fallo*, *fefelli*, *falsus* (3); or *decipio*, *decēpi*, *deceptus*, *decipere*.

**defeat**, *clādes* (*cladis*), f.

**defeat**, to, *vinco*, *vici*, *victus* (3).

**defend**, *defendo*, *defendi*, *defensus* (3).

**delay**: I delay, *mōror*, deponent; *moratus* (1).

**deliver** (a speech), *hābeo*.

**demand**, *postūlare*.

**deny**, *nēgo* (1).

**depart**, *ābeo*, p. 344.

**desire**, *cūpio*, *cupere*, *cupii* (p. 60).

**desirous**, *cūpidus*.

**despair**, to, *despēro* (1).

**despise**, *contemno*, *contempsi*, *contemptus* (3).

**determine**, *constituo*, *constitui*, *constitutus* (3).

**devoted**, *dēditus*.

**dictator**, *dictator* (3).

**did**, sign of perfect tense.

**die**, *morior*, *mortuus*, *mori*, p. 60.

**difference**, it makes a great, *multum interest*.

**different**, *ālius*.

**difficult**, *difficilis*, *difficile* (comp. *difficilior*, sup. *difficillimus*).

**diligence**, *diligentia* (1).

**direction**, in all directions, *undique* (adv.)

**discover**, *rēpērio*, *rēpēri*, *repertus*.

**disgrace**, *dēdēcus* (*dedecōris*), n.; this is a disgrace to you, *hoc tibi est dedecori*.

**disgraceful**, *turpis*, *turpe*.

**dismiss**, *dimitto*, *dimisi*, *dimissus* (3).

**distant**, to be distant or at a distance, *abesse*; at a great distance, *prōcul abesse*.

**distressed**: I am distressed at this, *hanc rem graviter fero*.

**do**, *āgo*, *ēgi*, *actus* (3), or *fācio*, *fēcī*, *factus* (3); do not do this, *nōli hoc facere* (i.e. be unwilling

- to do this), or *ne hoc fēceris*; what is to be done with you? *quid te fiat?* to do nothing but . . . see Trans. XIII.
- doctor**, *mēdicus* (2).
- dog**, *cānis* (*canis*), m.
- doings**, *res* (5); the doings of the town, *res urbānae*.
- doubt**, to, *dūbitare*; doubtful, *dūbius*; I don't doubt, or, it is not doubtful, *that* he did it, *non dubito*, or *non dubium est, quin fecerit*. There is no doubt = it is not doubtful.
- draw up an army**, *instruere āciem*; *acies* (5), f.; *instruere, instruxi, instructus* (3).
- dream**, *somnium*.
- drink**, *bibere, bibi* (3).
- drive back**, *rēpello, repūli, repulsus*, (3).
- drive out**, *expello, expūli, expulsus* (3).
- duty**, *officium*.
- Eager**, *āvidus*; eager for praise, *avidus laudis*.
- easily**, *fācile*. **easy**, *fācilis*.
- eat**, *ēdere, ēdi, ēsum*.
- eight**, *octo*.
- eighth**, *octāvus*. *Egypt, Aegyptus*
- elder**, *māior* (*nātu*).
- elect**, *ēligere, ēlēgi, electus*; or *creāre*.
- eleventh**, *undēcimus*.
- embark**, *i.e.* to put on board ship, *in nāvem impōnere*.
- encourage**, *hortor* (1), deponent.
- end**, *finis* (*finis*), m.
- endeavour**, *cōnor* (1), deponent.
- endure**, *fēro*, p. 338; or *pātior, pāti, passus*, deponent.
- enemy**, *hostis* (*hostis*), generally used in the plural; *hostis* means a public enemy, an enemy to the state. A private enemy, *i.e.* a person one dislikes, *inimicus* (the opposite of *amicus*).
- He is an enemy of yours, *inimicus est tibi*.
- enough**, *sātis*.
- enter**, *in-eo* (4). See p. 344, *eo*.
- entrust**, *committo, commisi, commissus* (3).
- escape**, *fūgio, fūgi, fūgere* (3), p. 60.
- even**, *etiam*: not even, *ne . . . quidem*. The important and emphatic word is put between *ne* and *quidem*. "I cannot even believe you" is, *Ne tibi credere possum*.
- evening**: in the evening, *vespère* and *vespèri*.
- ever**, *unquam*; ever before, *unquam antea*.
- every**: on every side, *undique*; everybody, *every one*, *omnes* (*i.e.* all men); everything, *omnia* (all things); every day, *cōtidie*.
- evil**: an evil, *mālum*.
- excel**, *praestare, praestiti, praestitum*; he excels the soldiers in courage, *militibus virtute praestat*.
- excellent**, *optimus*.
- exercise**: to exercise, *exercere*; to take exercise, *corpus exercere*.
- exhort**, *hortor* (1), deponent.
- expect**, *expecto* (1).
- eye**, *ocūlus* (2).
- Fact**, *res* (5).
- faithful**, *fidēlis*.
- fall**, *cādo, cecidi, cāsum* (3).
- famous**, *clārus*.
- far**, adv., *longē*; far from, *prō-cūl a*.
- fashion**, *mōs* (*mōris*), m.; in my (usual) fashion, *more meo*.
- father**, *pāter* (*patris*).
- favour**: to favour, *fāvère, fāvi, fautum*, with dative.
- fear** (noun), *tīmor* (*tīmōris*), m.
- fear**, to, *tīmēre* (2); or *vērēri* (2), deponent.

**feel**, *sentio, sensi, sensum* (4).  
**fellow**, *homo (hōmīnis)*.  
**fellow-citizen**, *civis (civis)*.  
**few**, *pauci*.  
**field**, *ager (agri)*.  
**fifth**, *quintus*.  
**fifty**, *quingenta*.  
**fight**, *pugnare* (1).  
**find**, *rep̄rio, rep̄eri, repertus* (4).  
**finish**, *conficio, confēci, confectus* (3), p. 60.  
**fire**, a fire, *ignis (ignis)*, m.; I set fire to, *incendo, incendi, incensus* (3).  
**first**, *primus*; **first** (the adverb), *primum*.  
**fish**, *piscis (piscis)*, m.  
**fit**, *idōnēus*.  
**five**, *quīnque*; five hundred, *quingenti, -ae, -a*.  
**fix**, *pōno, pōui, pōsitus* (3).  
**flee**, *fūgio, fūgi, fūgere* (3), p. 60.  
**fleet**, *classis*, f. **flight**, *fūga* (1).  
**flow**, *fluo, flui* (3).  
**flower**, *flōs (flōris)*, m. **fly**, see **flee**.  
**follow**, *sēquor, deponent, sēcūtus* (3).  
**following**, *proximus*.  
**folly**, *stultitia*.  
**food**, *cibus (cibi)*, m.  
**foolish**, *stultus*.  
**foot of mountain**, *mons īmus*.  
**for**: for a long time, *dū*; for as much as, *tanti, quanti*; to start for, *proficiscor (ad)*, and accus.; even, *etiam*; not even, *ne . . . quidem*, etc.; inquiry, to make the same inquiry (as), *īdem quacr̄re (quod)*. **forces**, *cōpiae*.  
**forget**, *obliscor, deponent; oblītus* (3). I don't forget you, *non tui obliscor*; I don't forget the occurrence, *rei (or rem) non obliscor*.  
**forgetful**, *immēmor (immēmōris)*.  
**form**: I form a plan, *consilium īneo*, p. 344.  
**fortify**, *mūnīre* (4).  
**found**: I found, establish, *condo, condidi, conditus* (3).

**fourth**, *quartus*.  
**free**, *liber, libēra, liberum*.  
**free**, to set free, *libērare*.  
**frequent**, *creber, crebra, crebrum*.  
**fresh**, *novus*.  
**friend**, *amicus* (2).  
**friendly**, it is; say, it is the way of a friend. See Section 47.  
**friendship**, *amicitia*.  
**from**, *a* and *ab*; *ab* necessarily before vowels. From the spot, *lōco*. He did it from kindness, *bēnēvolētiā fēcīt*.  
**front**, in front of, *pro*, with abl.  
**full**, *plēnus*; full of gold, *plenus auri*.  
**Gallic**, *Gallicus*.  
**garden**, *hortus* (2).  
**gate**, *porta* (1).  
**gather**, *carpo, carpsi, carptus* (3).  
**Gaul**, the country, *Gallia*; a Gaul, *Gallus*.  
**general**, *imp̄rator (imperatōris)*.  
**generally**, *f̄ere*.  
**Geneva**, *Genēva* (1).  
**German**, *Germānus* (2).  
**get**: I get back, *recipio* (3); to get up, see Trans. XVII.; to get into, see Trans. XVIII.  
**girl**, *puella*.  
**give**, *do, dēdi, dātus, dāre*; give back (return), *reddo, reddidi, redditus* (3); give over, give up, *dēdo, dēdidi, deditus* (3); give myself up, *me dedo*; I give orders, see **order**; give up an idea, lay aside a plan, *consilium dēpōn̄re*; to give battle, *praelium committ̄re (-misi, -missum)*.  
**glory**, *glōria* (1).  
**go**, *eo, iui or ii, itum, ire*, p. 344; go away, *abeo*; go back (return), *redeo*.  
**god**, *deus* (2), m.  
**gold**, *aurum*.  
**good**, *bōnus* (comp. *m̄lior*, superl. *opt̄imus*).

**governor**: to appoint some one as governor of the city, *aliquem urbi praeſicere*.

**grant**, *concēdere, concessi, concessus* (3); to grant a slave liberty, *seruo* (dat.) *libertatem concēdere*.

**great**, *magnus* (*māior, maximus, or summus*); **so great**, *tantus*; **a great many**, *multi*.

**greedy**, *avidus*; greedy for gold, *avidus auri*.

**Greek**, *Graecus*.

**grief**, *dolor* (*doloris*), *m*.

**ground**, *lucus* (2).

**grow**, *ſcio, factus*, p. 343.

**guard**: he left me to guard the city, *reliquit me praesidio* (for a protection) *urbi*.

**Haedui**, *Haedui*.

**hand**, *manus* (4), *f*.

**Hannibal**, *Hannibal* (*Hannibālis*).

**happen**: it happens, *accidit*; I happened to be present, *accidit ut adessem* (it happened that I was present). That is how it happens; *ita fit* (from *ſcio*, perfect, *factum est*). How does it happen? *Qui fit?*

**harbour**, *portus* (4).

**harm**, see *hurt*.

**hate**: I hate, *odi* (perfect with present meaning).

**hateful**: this is hateful to me, *hoc est odio mihi*.

**hatred**, *odium*.

**have** (possess), *habeo*; or the verb *esse* may be used, as, I have a dog, *est mihi canis*, a dog belongs to me.

**he**, *is* (*eius*) or *ille*, but "he" may generally be omitted.

**head**, *caput* (*capitis*); bare-headed, or with nothing on one's head, *aperto capite*.

**health**: enjoy better health, *melius valere*.

**hear**, *audio*.

**heart**, *animus* (2).

**help**, *auxilium*; **I help**, *adiuvo, adiūvi, adiutus, adiuvere*.

**Helvetii**, *Helvetii* (2).

**here**, *hic*. I am here, *adsum*.

**herself**, see *self*.

**hidden**, to be, *latere* (2).

**high price**, see *price*.

**hill**, *collis* (*collis*), *m*.

**himself**, see *self*.

**hinder**, *impedire*; I did not hinder him from speaking, *non impedii quominus loqueretur*.

**his, her** (when the person meant is subject of the sentence), *suus*; otherwise the genitive of *is, ea, id*.

**hold**, *teneo* (2); to hold a council, *consilium habere*; to be held (considered), *haberi*.

**home**: (to) home, *domum*; at home, *domi*.

**honour** (an honour), *honor* (*honoris*), *m*; he is an honour to the city, *honor est urbi*.

**honourable**, *honestus*; honourable character, *honestas* (*honestatis*), *f*; most honourable character, *summa honestas*.

**hope**, *spes* (5); I hope, *spero* (1); I hope for peace, *pacem* (acc.) *spero*; I hope to come, *spero me venturum*; I have great hopes, *magnam in spem venio*.

**horse**, *equus* (2).

**horseman**, *equus* (*equitis*).

**hostage**, *obses* (*obsidis*).

**hour**, *hora*.

**house**, *domus*<sup>1</sup> (4), *f*. To my house, *domum meam*; at my house, *domi meae*.

**how**: *qui* (adv.); how great? *quantus*? How many? *quot*? How many men? *quot homines*?

<sup>1</sup> Domus generally follows the fourth declension, except in the abl. sing. and the accus. and gen. pl., in which it follows the second.

For how much? *quanti?* How often? *quam saepe, quoties?* How much money will you give? *quantum pecuniae dabis?*

**humble**: of humble birth, *obscurō lōco nātus* (born in an obscure position in society).

**hundred**, *centum*.

**hunger**, *fāmes* (*famis*), *f*.

**hungry**, I am, *ēsūrio* (4).

**hurt**: to harm or do harm, *nōcēre* (dat., 2); he does me no harm, *nihil mihi nocet*.

**husband**, *vīr* (*vīri*).

**I**, *ēgo* (*mei*).

**idea**, *consilium*.

**idle**, *piger, pigra, pigrum*.

**if**, *si*; if any (one), *si quis*; if any (thing), *si quid*; if any news, *si quid novi*; if I were unwilling, say, I being unwilling, in abl. abs.

**ignorance**: I am in ignorance (of), I am ignorant (that), *nescio, nesciri* and *nescii, nescitum, nescire* (4).

**ignorant**, *ignārus*.

**illness**, *morbus* (2).

**immediately**, *statim*.

**impede**, *impēdio* (4).

**importance**: important, it is important (or, of importance) to Caesar, *Caesaris intērest*; it is important to me, *meā interest*; it is of no importance, *nihil interest*; it is very important (of great importance), *multum interest*; of the greatest importance, *maxime interest*; how important is it? *quantum interest?* See Section 45.

**impose**, *impōnēre, impōsui, impositus*; he imposes a tax on the state, *vectigal civitati imponit*.

**in**, *in* with abl.; but the ablative alone to express time, e.g. in winter, *hieme*; in vain, *frustra* (adv.)

**incite**, *incito* (1).

**inform**: give information to some one, to inform some one, *aliquem certiores facere*.

**inhabit**, *incolere, incolui, incultus* (3).

**inn**. See Trans. XVIII.

**inquire**, *quaero, quaesivi, quaesitus* (3). I inquire of somebody, *quaero ex aliquo*.

**inquiry**: to make the same inquiry (as), *idem quaerere* (*quod*).

**intelligence**, *ingenium*.

**into**, *in*, with accus.

**invention**. See Trans. XXI. 46.

**island**, *insula, f*.

**Italy**, *Italia*.

**Ithaca**, *Ithaca*.

**Joy**, *gaudium*.

**judge**, *iudex* (*iudicis*).

**judgment**: in my judgment, say, I being judge, in abl. abs.

**Julia**, *Iulia*.

**justice**, *iustitia* (1).

**Keep**, *servo* (1); a promise, *praesto* (1).

**kill**, *interficio, interfeci, interfectus* (3).

**kind**, *genus* (*generis*). Of such a kind, *eiusmodi*.

**kind character**, *humanitas*; kindest character, *summa humanitas*.

**kindness**, *benēvolentia*.

**king**, *rex* (*regis*).

**kingdom**, *regnum*.

**know**, *scio, sciri* and *scii, scitum*; or *nōvi*, a perfect with present meaning; or *cognosco, cognovi, cognitus* (3). To know Latin, *Latine scire*; to know Balbus, *Balbus novisse*; to know the way, *viam novisse*; these things being known, *his rebus cognitis*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Novisse* then is to know one thing or person from another by distinguishing marks; *scire*, to know something by learning the subject; *cognoscere*, to get information about something.

I do not know, *nescio*; it is well known, *constat*.

**Labour**, *lābor* (*labōris*), m.

**land**, *terra* (1); lands or territory, *agri* (pl. of *ager*).

**landlord**. See Trans. XVIII.

**large**, *magnus* (*maior*, *maximus*).

**last**: at last, *tandem*.

**Latin**: I know Latin, *Lātīnē scio*;

I turn into Latin, *Latīne reddo*.

**laugh**, *rīdeo*, *rīsi*, *rīsum* (2).

**launch**, *solvo*, *solvi*, *sōlūtus* (3).

**lay waste**, *vasto* (1).

**lazy**, *piger*, *pigra*, *pigrum*.

**lead**, *dūco*, *duxi*, *ductus* (3); to lead a life, *vītam āgēre* (*ago*, *ēgi*, *actus*) (3).

**leader**, *dux* (*dūcis*); under your leadership, *say*, you being leader, abl. abs.

**learn**, *disco*, *dīdici* (3); no future participle: having learned these facts, *his rebus cognītis*.

**learned**, *doctus*, i.e. taught, instructed. The learned Balbus, *Balbus vir doctus*.

**leave** (i.e. to leave behind), *rēlinquēre*, *reliqui*, *relictus*; in the sense to go away from (some one), *discedere ab* (*aliquo*), *discessi*, *discessum*; to leave, in the sense to come out of (a place), *excedere ex*, with abl.

**legion**, *lēgio* (*legiōnis*).

**less**, *minor*; less praise, *minus laudis*; for less (i.e. at a lower price), *minōris*.

**lest**, *ne*, with subjunctive following.

**let us rule**, *regamus* (subj.)

**letter**, *ēpistūla* (1).

**liberty**, *libertas* (*libertātis*), f.

**life**, *vīta* (1).

**lifetime**: in my lifetime, *say*, I being alive, in abl. abs., *me vīvo*.

**lift**, *tollo*, *sustūli*, *sublātus* (3).

**like**, *similis*, -e, with gen. of person,

gen. or dative of thing; superl. *simillimus*.

**listen to**, *audio* (4): *oratorem audiui*, I listened to the orator.

**little**, *parvus*; a little (adv.), *paulo*.

**live**, *vīvo*, *vixi*, *victus* (3).

**load**, *onus* (*onēris*).

**London**, *Londīnium*.

**long**, *longus*. For long, for a long time (or while), *dīu*, adv. (comp. *diutius*), or *iamdū* (used idiomatically with present tense. See Section 69).

**look for**, *quaerere*, *quaesivi*, *quaesitum*.

**lose**, *perdo*, *perdidī*, *perditus* (3).

**loud**, *magnus*.

**loudly**, *magna voce* (with a loud voice).

**love**, *amor* (*amōris*), m. I love, *amo* (1).

**low**: low price, see **price**: lowest, *infimus*.

**low-born**, *homo infimi gēneris* (of the lowest class).

**Maintain**: I maintain my opinion, *māneo in eādē sententiā*.

**make**, *fācio*, *fēci*, *factus*, *facere*, p. 60. I make a request, *pēto*;

I make the same request, *idem pēto*;

I make war, *bellum gēro*;

I make a speech, *orationem hābeo*;

they made Caius general, *Gaium imperatorem fecerunt*;

he was made general, *imperator factus est*.

**man**: *hōmo* (*hōmīnis*), *vīr* (*vīri*).<sup>1</sup>

But "man" may often be left out, the use of the masculine gender being enough; "many men" can be translated by *multi*. A young man, *iūvenis*; an old man, *sēnex* (*senis*).

<sup>1</sup> *Homo* means a human being, and includes women and children; *vīr* is a full-grown man, not a woman or child.



**manners**, *mōres* (*morum*), plural of *mos*, m.

**many**, *multi*; a great many boys, *multi pueri*; so many, *tot*; how many? *quot*?

**march**, I, *iter facio* (I make a journey).

**march**, a, *iter* (*itinēris*), n.

**marsh**, *pālūs* (*palūdis*), f.

**master**, i.e. owner, *dōmīnus* (2); a teacher, *māgister* (*magistri*), or *praeceptor* (*praeceptoris*).

**matter**, *res* (5). It does not matter to me, *nihil intērest meā*; it matters to the king, *intērest rēgis*; to whom does it matter? *cuius intērest*? What does it matter? *Quid intērest*?

**may**; I may (i.e. I am allowed, leave is given me), *licet mihi*.

**means**: by all means, *fiat*. See Ex. 25, 3. **meanwhile**, *intērea*.

**memory**, *memōria* (1).

**mend**, *rēficio*, *refeci*, *refectus*, *reficere*, p. 60.

**merchant**, *mercātor* (*mercatoris*).

**mercy**, *clēmētia*.

**message**, *nuntius* (2): I bring a message, *affero nuntium* (*attūli*, *allatus*).

**messenger**, *nuntius* (2).

**middle**, midst; in the middle of the water, *in mēdia aqua*.

**midnight**: at midnight, *mēdia nocte*.

**mile**, *mille passus* (4), i.e. a thousand paces; miles, *mīlia passuum*.

**mind**, *ānīmus* (2).

**miserable**, *mīser*, *mīsera*, *miserum*; miserable man that I am! *me miserum*!

**money**, *pēcūnia* (1); sum of money, *pecunia*.

**month**, *mensis* (*mensis*), m.

**more**, *plūs* (*plūris*); more wine, *plus vini*.

**morning**, in the, *māne*.

**morrow**: to-morrow, *māne*, indeclinable.

**mother**, *māter* (*matris*).

**mountain**, *mons* (*montis*), m.

**move**, *mōveo*, *mōvi*, *motus* (2).

**much**, *multus*; much wine, *multum vini*; he learns much, *multa discit*; I don't think much of the enemy, *non magni hostes facio*; for how much? *quanti*? for as much as, *tanti quanti*; for so much, *tanti*.

**murder**, *occido*, *occīdi*, *occisus* (3). See Trans. XVIII.

**must**: use the gerundive: I must go, *cundum est mihi*.

**my**, *meus*; voc. masc. *mi*.

**myself** (1), reflexively, *me*; I give myself up, *me dedo*; (2), emphatically, *ipse*; I myself did it, *ipse feci*.

**Name**, *nōmen* (*nōmīnis*); to name, *nōmināre*.

**Naples**, *Neapōlis* (*Neapolis*).

**nation**, *gens* (*gentis*), f.

**near**: as near as he could, see Ex. 21, 3; nearer, *propius*.

**necessity**. See Trans. XXI. 46.

**neither . . . nor**, *nēquē . . . nēquē*.

**never**, *nunquam*.

**news**: (a) bring news, *nuntiare* (1); (b) if he heard any news, *si quid nōvi audivit*; what news is there? *quid novi est*?

**next**, *proxīmus*; next to me, *proxīmus mihi*.

**night**, *nox* (*noctis*), f.; at midnight, *mēdia nocte*.

**Nile**, *Nīlus* (2), m.

**ninth**, *nōnus*.

**no**: no money, *nihil pecuniae* (nothing of money); or adj., *nullus*.

**noble**: of noble birth, *nobīli gēnere nātus* (i.e. born of a noble family).

**nobody**, *nēmo* (acc. *nēmīnem*, dat. *nēmīni*; for other cases use *nullus*, gen. *nullius*).

**nominate**, *nōmīnāre*.

**none** (meaning "no one"), *nēmo*;

**no one**, *nemo*. See **nobody**.

**nor**, *nēc*, *nēquē*. **not**, *nōn*.

**not even**, *ne . . . quidem*: see **even**.

**nothing**, *nihil*, *n.* indeclinable;

nothing good, *nihil boni*; nothing sad, *nihil triste*. See p. 157.

**notice**, *sentio*, *sensi*, *sensus* (4).

**now**, *nunc*.

**number**, *nūmērus* (2).

**Obey**, *pārēre* (2).

**object**: have or make objections, *rēcūsare* (1); I won't object to your making a speech, *non recusabo quominus orationem habeas*.

**of**, meaning "about," *de*; he speaks of you, *de te loquitur*.

**offer**: I offer congratulations, *grātūlor* (1), deponent with dative; to offer the enemy battle, *hostibus pugnandi potestatem facere*.

**often**, *saepe*; how often, *quoties*; so often, *tōties*.

**old age**, *senectūs* (*senectūtis*), *f.*

**old man**, *senex* (*senis*).

**on**, *in* with acc. when motion is implied; with abl. when it is not; on the proper day, *ad diem*; on the appointed day, *die constituto*; on this matter, *de hac re*.

**once**, *i.e.* once upon a time, *aliquando*; **at once**, *statim*.

**one**, *unus* (gen. *unūs*); the one . . . the other, *alter . . . alter*.

**only**, *solum*.

**open**: to open, *aperio*, *aperui*, *apertus* (4).

**opinion**, *sententia* (1).

**opportunity**, *occāsio* (*occasionis*), *f.*

**or** (in a double question), *an*: Did Caius come or Balbus? *utrum Caius venit an Balbus?* or not, *annon* in a direct question, *necne* in an indirect question.

**orator**, *orātor* (*oratōris*).

**order**: I order, *iūbeo*, *iussi*, *iussus* (2): by order, *iussu*. To give orders, *impērāre*; he gave the soldier this order, *hoc militi imperavit*; he gave orders to the soldiers to advance, *militibus imperavit ut progredierentur*; in order that, *ut* with subjunctive.

**ornament**, *ornāmentum*.

**other**: the other, *alter*.

**others**, *alii*; but the others, *cēteri*.

**ought**, *dēbeo* (2), and *oportet* (2) (I ought to go, *dēbeo ire*, or *oportet me ire*). The gerundive may also be used: *eundum est mihi*.

**our**, *noster*; our men, our soldiers, *nostri* (*militēs* understood).

**ourselves**: we ourselves have come, *ipsi venimus*.

**out of**, *e*, *ex*, with abl. (*ex* before vowels). **owe**, *dēbeo*.

**own**: my own book, *meus ipsius liber*.

**Pain**, *dōlor* (*dolōris*).

**Paris**, *Lutētia* (1).

**part** (*i.e.* district), *lōcus* (2); (*i.e.* portion), *pars* (*partis*), *f.*

**pass** (life), *agēre* (*vitam*).

**pass the winter**, *hiemo* (1).

**passage** (in a book), *lōcus* (2).

**patiently**, *pātienter*.

**pay**, *solvo*, *solvi*, *solutus* (3).

**peace**, *pax* (*pācis*), *f.*

**people**: many people, *multi* or *multi homines*; the people, *pōpulus* (2).

**perceive**, *intellēgo*, *intellexi*, *intellectum* (3).

**perhaps**, *fortasse*.

**peril**, *pēricūlum*.

**perish**, *per-eo* (a compound of *eo*: see p. 344).

**permission**: to give permission to somebody to do something,

*alicui aliquid faciendi potestatem facere.*

**permit**, *pātor*, deponent ; *passus*, *pāti* (3), p. 60.

**Persians**, *Persae* (1).

**person**, *hōmo* (*hominis*).

**persuade**, *persuādēre* (-*suasi*, -*suasum*), dat. (a) I persuaded Caius to come, *persuasi Gaiō ut veniret* ; but (b) I persuaded Caius that you had come, *persuasi Gaiō te venisse* ; I am persuaded (*i.e.* I have been convinced), *persuasum est mihi*.

**philosopher**, *philōsōphus* (2), m.

**pick**, *carpo*, *carpsi*, *carptus* (3).

**pitch** : to pitch a camp, *castra pōnere* (*pōsi*, *pōsitus*).

**place**, a, *lōcus*, m. ; take the place of a father, *parentis loco esse*.

**plain**, *campus* (2).

**plan**, *consilium*.

**plant**, *sēro*, *sēvi*, *sātum* (3).

**play**, to, *lūdo*, *lusi*, *lusum* (3).

**please**, *vōlo*, *velle*, *vōlui*, p. 340.

**pleasure**, *vōluptas* (*voluptātis*), f.

**poem**, *poēma* (*poematis*).

**poet**, *poēta* (1).

**Pompeius**, *Pompeius* (2).

**poor**, *pauper* (*paupēris*).

**possession** : to take possession of, *occūpare*.

**post**, *collōco* (1).

**practise**, *exerceo* (2).

**praise**, *laudo* (1).

**pray**, *orāre* ; I pray you to depart, *oro te ut abeas*.

**prefer**, 1, *antēpōno*, -*pōsi*, -*pōsitus* (3) ; he prefers virtue to wisdom, *virtutem sapientiae* (dat.) *antepōnit* (*i.e.* he puts virtue before wisdom) ; 2, *mālo* (see p. 342) ; he prefers to go at once, *navult statim ire*.

**prepare**, *pārāre*.

**presence** : in my presence, *me praesente* (from *praesens*), *i.e.* I being present.

**present**, to be, *adesse*.

**present**, a, *dōnum*.

**pretend**, *simūlo* (1) ; I pretended to know, *simulavi me scire*.

**prevent**, *impēdio* (4) ; nothing prevented me from coming, *nil impediit quominus venirem*.

**previous**, *sūpērior* (*superioris*).

**price** : at a higher price, *plūris* ; at a lower price, *minōris* ; at the same price as, *tanti quanti . . .* ; at so high a price, *tanti* ; at what price ? *quanti* ? at a high price, *magni* or *magno* ; at a very high price, *plurimi* or *plurimo* ; at a low price, *parvi* or *parvo* ; at a very low price, *minimi* or *minimo*.—As to whether the genitive or ablative should be used consult p. 237.

**priest**, *sācerdōs* (*sācerdotis*).

**prison**, *carcer* (*carceris*), m.

**prisoner**, *captivus* (2).

**promise**, *prōmitto*, *prōmisi*, *promissum* (3) ; he promises to do something, *promittit se aliquid facturum esse*.

**proper** : on the proper day, *ad diem*.

**property** : my property, *mea* or *res meae*.

**protection**, *praesidium* ; he is a protection to me, *mihi est praesidio*.

**punish**, *pūnio* (4) ; to be punished, *poenam dare* (*i.e.* to give or pay the penalty).

**purpose** : for the purpose of, *causā*, with gerund or gerundive.

**put**, *pōno*, *pōsi*, *pōsitus* ; to put on board ship, *in naves imponere* ; the ship puts out (to sea), *navis solvit* (literally, the ship looses itself from its moorings) ; to put to death, *interficere* (*interficio*, *interfeci*, *interfectus*) ; to put an army over a river, *exercitum flumen transportare* ; to put a book on the table, *imponere librum in mensam*.

**Quantity**, *numērus* (2).

**queen**, *rēgina* (1).

**questions**: see **ask**.

**quickly**, *cēlērīter*: superl. *celerrīme*.

**Rain**: it rains, *pluit* (3).

**raise**, *tollo*, *sustūli*, *sublatus* (3).

**rally**, *se colligere* (*colligo*, *collēgi*, *collectus*, 3).

**rampart**, *agger* (*aggeris*), m.

**rank**, *ordo* (*ordinis*), m.

**rather**: I would rather (*i.e.* I prefer), *mālo*, p. 342; I would rather not, *nōlo*, p. 341.

**reach** (the land), *cāpio*, *cēpi*, *captus*, *cāpēre*, p. 336.

**read**, *lēgo*, *lēgi*, *lectus* (3).

**ready**, *pārātus*.

**really**, in a question may be rendered by *num*; do you really think so? *num putas?*

**rear**: in the rear, *a tergo*.

**reason**, *causa* (1); for many reasons, *multis de causis*; what reason is there why you should not die? *quid causae est quin moriaris?*

**receive**, *accīpio*, *accēpi*, *acceptus*, *accīpēre*, p. 60.

**recognise**, *agnosco*, *agnōvi* (3): see Trans. XIX. p. 73.

**recover**, *convālesco*, *convalui* (3); no future participle; *ex morbo convalesco*, I recover from illness.

**refit**, *rēficio*, *refēcī*, *refectus*, *reficēre*, p. 60. [*quominus*.

**refuse**, *rēcuso* (1)—followed by **regard** as a friend, *hābēre numēro āmicorum* (*i.e.* to count in the number of one's friends).

**rejoice**, *gaudēre*, *gāvīsus sum* (dependent in the perfect); I rejoice at this, *hoc gaudeo*.

**relate**, *trādēre*, *tradidī*, *traditus* (3); it is related that Caesar was general, *Caesar traditur imperator fuisse*.

**remain**, *māneo*, *mansi*, *mansum* (2).

**remember**, *memoriā tēnēre* (*i.e.* to hold in the memory); *mēmīni*, perfect with present meaning; imperative, *memento*, p. 70, governing genitive of person; *mēmīni Caesaris*, I remember Caesar; gen. or acc. of thing; *mēmīni rem* or *rei*.

**remove**, *tollo*, *sustūli*, *sublatus* (3).

**repair**, *rēficio*, *refēcī*, *refectus*, *reficēre*, p. 60.

**report**, *nuntiāre*.

**request**: I make the same request of Balbus, *īdem pēto a Balbo*.

**require**: it requires great wisdom, *magnae sapientiae est*, see p. 175.

**resignation**, *aequo ānīmo* (*i.e.* with an even mind).

**resist**, *rēsistēre*, *restīti*, with dat.

**resolution**, *consilium*.

**resolve**: a resolve, *consilium*; to resolve, *constituere*.

**rest**, *i.e.* quiet, *quies* (*quīētis*), f.; the rest, *cētēri*.

**restore** (*i.e.* to give back), *reddo*, *reddidī*, *reddītum* (3).

**retain**, *tēneo*, *tenui*, *tentus* (2).

**return**: I go back, *rēdeo*, *redīvi* and *redīi*, *redītum* (4), p. 344; I give back, *reddo*, *reddidī*, *reddītus* (3).

**reward**, *praemium*.

**Rhine**, *Rhēnus*.

**rich**, *dīves* (*divītis*); comp. *divitior*, superl. *divitissimus*.

**riches**, *divītiae*.

**river**, *flūmen* (*flūmīnis*), n.

**road**, *via*.

**Roman**, *Rōmānus*.

**Rome**, *Rōma*.

**rose**. See Trans. XXI. 13.

**round**: to stand round, *circumstare*.

**rout**, *fūga* (1): see Ex. 85, 14.

**route**, *īter* (*itīnēris*), n.

**ruin**, *perdo*, *perdidī*, *perditum* (3).

**rule**, *rēgo*, *rexī*, *rectus* (3).

**run**, *curro*, *cucurri*, *cursum* (3).

**run away**, *fugio, fugere, fugi* (3), p. 60.

**run short**, *dēficio, deficere, defēci* (3).

**Sad**, *tristis*.

**safety**, *sālus (salūtis)*, f.

**sailing**, gerund of *nāvigo* (1).

**sailor**, *nauta* (1).

**sake**: for the sake, *causā*.

**same**, *īdem, eadem, idem*; I made the same inquiries as Caius, *eadem quæsiui quæ Caius*.

**save**, *conservare* (1).

**say**, *dico, dixi, dictus* (3); but, for: he said that he was not consul, write, *negavit se esse consulem* (he denied that he was consul).

**Scipio**, *Scipio (Scipiōnis)*.

**sea**, *māre (maris)*, n.

**seafaring**, *mārītīmus*.

**see**, *videō, vidi, visus*.

**seek**, *pēto, petivi* and *petii, petitus* (3).

**seem**, *videor, visus*.

**seize**, *occūpo* (1).

**self**: himself, herself, themselves, used reflexively, *se (sui, sibi)*; used for emphasis, *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*. Examples—1, reflexive: he hurt himself, *nocevit sibi*; 2, emphatic: he himself said it, *ipse dixit*.

**sell**, *vendo, vendidi, venditus* (3).

**senate**, *sēnātus* (4), m.

**send**, *mitto, misi, missus* (3).

**send before, or forward**, *praemittere*.

**serious**, *grāvis, grave*.

**serpent**, *serpens (serpentis)*.

**set**: **I set out**, or set off, *prōficiscor* (3), deponent, *profectus*; **I set fire to**, *incendo, incendi, incensus* (3); **I set free**, *libero* (1); **I set sail**, *navem solvo (solvere, solvi, solutus)*, 3).

**settle**, *constituo, constitui, constitutus* (3).

**severe**, *grāvis, grave*; severe trials, *i.e.* severe things.

**shave**. See Trans. XI.

**she, illa**; but the word may generally be omitted.

**sheep**, *ovis (ovis)*, f.

**ship**, *nāvis (navis)*, f.; a ship of war, *navis longa*.

**shocking**, *foedus, -a, -um*; shocking to see, *foedus visu* (supine).

**shore**, *litus (litōris)*, n.

**short**, *brēvis, breve*.

**should**: if it means "ought," use the gerundive.

**shout**, a, *clāmōr (clamōris)*, m.; to shout, *clāmāre*.

**show**, *dōceo, docui, doctus*.

**shower**, *imber (imbris)*, m.

**shrine**, *fānum*.

**shut**, *claudio, clausi, clausus* (3).

**Sicily**, *Sicilia*.

**side**: on every side, *undique*; to stand on Caesar's side, or side with Caesar, *cum Caesare stare*.

**silent**: I am silent, keep silence, *tāceo*.

**since**, *cum* with subjunctive.

**sing**, *cāno, cecinī, cantum* (3).

**sister**, *sōror (sorōris)*.

**six**, *sex*.

**size**, *magnitudo (-tudinis)*, f.

**slave**, *servus* (2).

**slay**, *interficio, -fēci, -fectus, -ficere*, p. 60.

**sleep**, *dormio* (4).

**small**, *parvus*.

**so**, *itā*; so quickly, *tam celeriter*; so great, so big, *tantus*; so many, *tot*; so often, *tōties*.

**soldier**, *mīles (militis)*.

**some**: (1) use *alii* for "some" if a second *alii* occurs in the sentence meaning "others"; as *alii manebant, alii abibant*, some stayed, others went away. (2) Otherwise the word for "some," "some one," "something," is, *āliquis, aliqua, ali-*

- quid* (but *aliqui, aliquae, aliquod*, if a substantive agrees with it: thus, *aliqui deus nobis subvenit*, some god has helped us).—Note especially the use of *aliquid* with a partitive genitive: something good, *aliquid boni*; some reward, *aliquid praemii*; some food, *aliquid cibi*. On the other hand, write *aliquid triste* for something sad; adjectives which make genitive in *-is* are not used in the partitive genitive, see p. 157.
- some one**, *āliquis*: see **some**.  
**something**, *āliquid*: see **some**.  
**son**, *filius* (2).  
**song**, *carmen* (*carmīnis*), n.  
**soon**, *mox*; as soon as, *sīmul atque*.  
**Spain**, *Hispania* (1).  
**spare**, *parco, peperi, parsum* (3), with dative; do not use the future participle.  
**speak**, *loquor* (3), deponent, *locutus*.  
**speech**, *oratio* (*oratiōnis*): make or deliver a speech, *orationem habeo*.  
**spot**, *lōcus* (2).  
**spring**, *vēr* (*veris*), n.  
**stand**, *sto, stēti, statum* (1); to stand around, *circumstare*.  
**start**, *prōficiscor* (3), deponent, *profectus*; to start for, *proficisci* (*ad*); to start the rout, *īnitium fugae facere*.  
**state**, *civitas* (*civitatīs*), f.  
**stay**, *māneo, mansi, mansum* (2).  
**stir**, to, *se mōvĕre*.  
**stone**, *lāpis* (*lapīdis*), m.  
**strategy**, *consilium*.  
**strength**, *vīres, virium* (f., pl.)  
**stupid**, *stultus*.  
**such**, *tālis, tale*; or "of such a kind," *eiusmodi*; such great, *tantus*; such long, *tam longus*.  
**suffer**, *pātior, dep. pāti, passus*, see p. 60.
- suffering**, *dōlor* (*dolōris*).  
**sufficiently**, *sātis*.  
**suitable**, *idōneus*.  
**Sulla**, *Sulla* (1).  
**sum**: a sum of money, *pēcūnia*; a considerable sum of money, *aliquantum pecuniae*; I buy for a small sum, *parca pecunia emo* (abl. of price).  
**summer** (subst.), *aestas* (*aestātis*), f.; adj. *aestivus*.  
**sun**, *sōl* (*solis*), m.  
**superior**: to be superior, *praestāre, praestiti, praestitum*; to surpass the rest in valour, *ceteris praestare virtute*.  
**supply**: a considerable supply of corn, *aliquantum frumenti*.  
**support**, *fēro, tūli, lātum*, p. 338.  
**surely**: use *num* or *nonne*, according to the sense.  
**surpass**, *praestāre, praestiti, praestitum*; to surpass the rest in valour, *ceteris praestare virtute*.  
**surrender**, to (themselves), *se dedĕre* (*dedidi, deditus*, 3), i.e. to give themselves up.  
**surround**, *circumdō, -dāre, -dedi*, (1).  
**sweet**, *dulcis, dulce*.  
**swim**, *nātāre*.  
**sword**, *ensis* (*ensis*), m.  
**system**, *rātio* (*ratiōnis*), f.
- Table**, *mensa* (1).  
**take**, or take up, *cāpio, cēpi, captus, capĕre*, see p. 60; to take possession of, *occūpo* (1); to take exercise, *corpus exercĕre* (2); to take away from (me), *auferre a (me)* (*abs-tuli, ab-latum*).  
**talent**, *tālentum*, (worth about £250).  
**talk**, *sermo* (*sermōnis*), m.; I talk, *loquor* (3), deponent, *locutus*.  
**task**, *opus* (*opĕris*), n.  
**tax**, *vectigal* (*vectigālīs*), n.  
**teach**, *dōceo, docui, doctus* (2).

**tear**, *lacrima* (1).

**tell**, *i.e.* I give some information (to some one), *dico* (*alicui*), *dixi*, *dictus* (3), imperative, *dic*; to tell, meaning to order or command, *iūbeo*, *iussi*, *iussus* (2).

**temple**, *templum*.

**ten**, *dēcem*.

**tenth**, *dēcimus*.

**territory**, *agri* or *fines*, *m*.

**than**, *quam*.<sup>1</sup>

**thanks**, *grātia*; I give you thanks, *gratias tibi āgo* (*agere*, *ēgi*, *actus*, 3).

**that**: if "that" is a pronoun (*e.g.* that man) it is translated by *ille*. If "that" means "in order that," *ut* with the subjunctive is used; but "that not" in this sense is *ne*. "So that" is also *ut*; "so that not," *ut non*. After verbs of saying, believing, hoping, etc., "that" is not translated, but the accusative with infinitive used.

**theft**, *furtum* (2).

**their**, *suus*, if the people meant are the subject of the sentence; if not, use genitive of *is*. So *sorores amiserunt suos annulos* would mean that the sisters have lost their own rings; while, if *earum* was put instead of *suos*, it would mean that the sisters had lost some other girls' rings.

**themselves** (used reflexively), *se*.

**then**, *tum*.

**there**, *ibi*.

**thick**, *densus*.

**thing**, *res* (5), *f*.

**think**, *pūto* (1); *crēdo*, *credidi*, *credītum* (3); I think nothing

of books, *nihili libros fācio* (literally, I value books at nothing); I think little (much) of this slave, *hunc sercum parvi (magnī) facio*.

**third**, *tertius*.

**thirty**, *trīginta*.

**this**, *is*, *ea*, *id*; but if "this" is contrasted with "that," *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*.

**thorn**. See Trans. XXI. 13.

**thought**, *mens* (*mentis*); I cannot collect my thoughts, *mentem colligere non possum*; see also Trans. I.

**three**, *tres*, *tria*.

**three hundred**, *trēcēti*.

**through**, *pēr* with acc.; but through hatred, *i.e.* owing to hatred, *odio* (*abl.*)

**throw**, *iācio*, *iēcī*, *iactus*, *iācere*, *p*. 60; throw away, *abicio*, *abiēcī*, *abiectus* (3).

**till**, *dum* with subj.

**till**, to, *cōlère*, *cōlui*, *cultus*.

**time**, *tempus* (*tempōris*), *n*.; in time, *tempōre*; for a long time, *dū*.

**timid**, *timīdus*.

**tired**, *fessus*.

**Titus**, *Titus*.

**to**: to a place (other than a name of a town), *ad* with acc.; to the city, *ad urbem*; to Rome, *Romam*; to (meaning in order to), *ut*; I came to see, *veni ut viderem*; he promised to come, *promisit se venturum*.

**to-day**, *hōdie*.

**to-morrow**, *crās*.

**top**: use *summus*; at the top of the oak, *summa quercu* (*i.e.* where the oak is highest).

**town**, *oppīdum*; *urbs* (*urbis*), *f*.; the doings of the town, *res urbānae*, *i.e.* town affairs.

**traveller**, *viātor* (*viātōris*).

**treason**, *prodītio* (*proditionis*), *f*.

**tree**, *arbor* (*arbōris*), *f*.

<sup>1</sup> Remember that *quam* is not a preposition: he is wiser than Balbus, *sapientior est quam Balbus* (not *Balbus*). In a negative sentence *quam* can be omitted and the ablative used: he is not wiser than Balbus, *non sapientior est Balbo*.

tribe, *gens (gentis)*, f.

tribune, *tribūnus*.

Troy, *Troia* (1).

true, *vērus*.

truth, *vērūm*.

try, *cōnor* (1), deponent; I try to help, *conor adiuvāre*; a man of tried valour, *homo spectatae virtutis*.

Tullius, *Tullius* (2).

turn (transitive), *verto, verti, versus* (3); they turn (intransitive), *se vertunt*; to turn into Latin, *Lātine reddere*; to turn aside, *avertere iter* (literally, to change the direction of the march), *averti, aversus* (don't leave out *iter*, for *averto* is transitive).

twelve, *duōdecim*.

twenty, *viginti*, indeclinable.

two, *duo*.

two hundred, *ducenti*, -ae, -a.

Ulysses, *Ulysses* (3).

uncover, *aperio, aperui, apertus* (4).

under: under your leadership, *say*, you being leader, in abl. abs.

undergo, *pātor, dep. passus, pati*, see p. 60.

understand, *intellēgo, intellexi, intellectus* (3).

unfit, *nōn idōneus*.

unite: to unite with somebody, *se coniungere cum aliquo*.

unless, *nisi*.

until, *dum* with subj.

unwilling, *invitus*; to be unwilling, *nōlo*, p. 341 (no fut. participle).

unwillingly: use the adj.; I did it unwillingly, *invitus fēci*.

urge, *hortari*, deponent; I urge you to depart, *hortor te ut ābeas*.

use, *utor* (3), deponent, *usus*, with the abl.

useful, *ūtilis, utile*.

useless, *inūtilis*.

usual: as usual, *ut fit* (i.e. as happens) or *ut fere fit*.

Vain: in vain, *frustrā*.

vainly, *frustra*.

valour, *virtūs (virtutis)*, f.; tried valour, *spectata virtus*.

value: I value, *fācio* (3, *facere, fēci, factus*, p. 60); I value the book highly (at a high price), *librum magni facio*; so highly, *tanti*; very highly, *plurimi*: see Section 44.

verse, *versus* (4), m.

very, use superl.

very well, *optime*.

Victoria, *Victōria* (1).

victory, *victōria*.

Virgil, *Vergilius*.

virtue, *virtūs (virtutis)*, f.

virtuously, *hōnestē*.

voice, *vox (vōcis)*, f.

Wage, *gero, gessi, gestus* (3).

waggon. See Trans. XVII.

wait, *exspecto* (1).

wall, *mūrus* (1).

want, i.e. to wish, *volo*, p. 340; not to want, *nolo*, p. 341.

war, *bellum*; a ship of war, *navis longa*. warlike, *bellicus*.

warn, *mōneo* (2).

waste (for instance, to waste time or money), *perdo, perdidi, perditum* (3); to waste or lay waste (the land), *vasto* (1).

water, *āqua* (1).

wave, *fluctus* (4).

way, *via* (1); when way means "habit" or "custom," it is not to be translated; it is not the way of a soldier, *non est militis*: see Section 47.

weather, *tempestas (tempestutis)*, f.

weigh: to weigh anchor, *ancōram tollere*.

well: to be well, *vālere* (2); to be



very well, *optimē vālere* ; it is well known, *constat*.

**what ?** *quid ?*—"what" with a substantive, *qui, quae, quod* (in questions direct or indirect). *Qui poeta ?* what poet ? *Quae femina ?* what woman ?—What (=that which), *id quod* or *ea quae*. I did what you ordered, *feci ea quae iussisti*. What wisdom ! *cuius sapientiae !*

**whatever**, *quidquid*.

**when** is either (1) interrogative or (2) relative : (1) interrogative (=at what time ? or, on what occasion ?), *ubi* or *quando*. When did you come ? *ubi* (or *quando*) *venisti ?* I ask when you came, *rogo ubi* (or *quando*) *veneris*. (2) Relative (=at the time when), *cum*. When you come I rejoice, *cum tu venis gaudeo*. Instead of *cum* a participle may often be used ; instead of *cum tu venis* we might have *te veniente*. *N.B.*—*Cum* is not to be used before Exercise 150.

**whence** : where from, *unde*.

**where** (=in which place), *ubi* (both interrogative and relative) ; where ? (=to what place ?) *quo ?*

**whether**, *num* (in a simple question), *utrum* (in a double question). *Rogavi num valeret*, I asked whether he was well ; *rogavi utrum nauta an miles esset*, I asked whether he was a sailor or a soldier. "Whether" is used only in indirect questions in English, therefore use the subj. in Latin.

**which ?** *quis ?*—which (of two) ? *uter ?*—which (relative), *qui* : see **who**.

**while**, *dum* with Indic. Present : see p. 299 ; a long while, *dū*.

**whither ?** *quo ?*

**who** : (1) relative, *qui, quae, quod* ;

(2) interrogative, who ? *quis ?* Direct question : *quis fecit ?* who did it ? Indirect question : *rogo quis fecerit*, I ask who did it.

**whole**, *tōtus (totius)*.

**why ?** *cur ?* why did you do it ? *cur fecisti ?* tell me why you did it, *dīc mihī cur feceris*.

**wicked**, *mālus* or (the superlative) *pessimus*.

**will** : against my will, use *invitus*, unwilling.

**willing**, *vōlens (volentis)* ; I am willing, *vōlo*.

**win**, *vinco, vīci, victus* (3).

**wind**, *ventus* (2).

**window**, *fēnestra* (1).

**wine**, *vīnum*.

**winter**, *hiems (hiēnis)*, f. ; to pass the winter, *hiēmāre*.

**wisdom**, *sāpientia* (1).

**wise**, *sāpiens (sapientis)* ; it is wise, *sapientis est* (it is the way of a wise man), see Section 47 ; the wise Caius, *Gaius, vir sapiens*.

**wisely**, *sāpienter*.

**wish**, *vōlo*, p. 340 ; has no future participle.

**with** : when it means "along with," *cum* with abl. ; with me, *mecum*, not *cum me* ; so *tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum*.

**withdraw** (soldiers) from the territory, *dēdūcere (mīlites) ā fīnibus* (*deduxi, deductus*).

**without**, *sīnē* with abl. ; may sometimes be translated by *quin*, as, no one can see it without laughing, *nemo videre potest quin rideat* : see Section 78.

**woman**, *mālier (mulieris)*, but *fēmīna* if man and woman are contrasted.

**wood**, *silva* (1).

**word**, *verbum*.

**work**, *ōpūs (opēris)*, n.

**world**, *orbis (orbis)*, m.

**worse**, *pēior* (*peiōris*).

**worthy**, *dignus*; worthy of praise,  
*dignus laude* (abl.)

**wound**, *vulnus* (*vulnēris*), n.; to  
wound, *vulnērāre*.

**write**, *scribo*, *scripsi*, *scriptus* (3).

**wrong**, *iniūria* (opposite to *iūs*,  
*iuris*, justice, right); the wrongs  
done by Caesar to the Gauls,  
*Caesaris iniuriae Gallorum*.

**Year**, *annus* (2).

**yesterday**, *hērī*.

**yield**, *cēdere*, *cessi*, *cessum*.

**you**, *tu*; pl. *vōs*.

**young man**, *iūvēnis* (*iuvenis*);

young child, *infans* (*infantis*);

younger, *minor* (*nātū*).

**your**, *tuus*, *vester*.

**yourself**: you did it by yourself, or,  
you yourself did it, *ipse fecisti*.

THE END



**THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE  
STAMPED BELOW**

**AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS**

**WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN  
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY  
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH  
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY  
OVERDUE.**

**JUL 26 1942**

27 Nov '53 HH

FEB 5 1954 LU

YB 41176

41172

*Cook*

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

